CITROËN

C4 CITROËN PICASSO
GRAND C4 PICASSO

HANDBOOK

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

MyCITROËN

Find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with the manufacturer.

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.

If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

http://service.citroen.com/ddb/

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



This handbook has been designed to help you make the most of your C4 Picasso in all circumstances and in complete safety.
Take the time to read through it so as to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

This handbook covers all of the variations in equipment available across the whole C4 Picasso range.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

Key

- safety warning
- additional information
- contributes to the protection of the environment

Key

This key will enable you to identify the special features of your vehicle:


C4 Picasso


Grand C4 Picasso


Grand C4 Picasso with 5 seats


Grand C4 Picasso with 7 seats

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

This document forms an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of the sale of the vehicle.

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,
a complete product range,
bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,
for a modern and creative approach to mobility.
We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,
getting to know each system,
each control, each setting,
makes your trips, your journeys
more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

Overview .

Eco-driving .

Instruments 1

Touch screen 11
Instrument panels 18
Indicator and warning lamps 22
Gauges and indicators 38
Adjustment buttons 46
Trip computer 49
Setting the date and time 52

Access 2

Electronic key - remote control 53
Keyless Entry and Starting 55
Central locking 61
Doors 62
Boot 64
Motorised tailgate 65
Hands-free tailgate access 69
Alarm 71
Electric windows 74

Ease of use and comfort 3

Front seats 76
Rear seats 84
Seat modularity 91
Steering wheel adjustment 93
Ventilation 94
Heating 96
Dual-zone manual air conditioning 97
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 99
Front demist - defrost 104
Rear screen demist - defrost 104
Scented air freshener 105
Interior fittings 107
Rear multimedia 115
Courtesy lamps 123
Interior mood lighting 124

Driving 4

Driving recommendations 125
Starting-switching off the engine with the electronic key 127
Starting-switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting 129
Electric parking brake 133
Hill start assist 140
5-speed manual gearbox 141
6-speed manual gearbox 141
Automatic gearbox 142
Gear shift indicator 147
Stop & Start 148
Memorising speeds 151
Speed limit recognition 152
Speed limiter 156
Cruise control 159
Dynamic cruise control 162
Dynamic cruise control with Stop function 169
Collision Risk Alert and Active Safety Brake 178
Assisted Lane Departure Warning System 183
Blind Spot Monitoring System 187
Fatigue detection system 190
Parking sensors 192
Reversing camera 194
360 Vision 195
Park Assist 197
Under-inflation detection 205

Lighting and visibility 5

Mirrors 208
Lighting control stalk 211
Automatic illumination of headlamps 216
Automatic headlamp dipping 217
Daytime running lamps 219
Direction indicators 220
Adjusting the headlamp beam height 220
Directional lighting 222
Wiper control stalk 223
Screenwash 225
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 226
Panoramic sunroof 228

Safety 6

General safety recommendations 229
Hazard warning lamps 230
Horn 230
Emergency or assistance 231
Electronic stability control (ESC) 233
Seat belts 236
Airbags 241
Child seats 245
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 247
ISOFIX mountings 254
Child lock 261

Practical information 7

Fuel 262
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 263
Snow chains 265
Very cold climate screen(s) 266
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 267
Towing a trailer 269
Energy economy mode 270
Changing a wiper blade 271
Roof bars 272
Bonnet 274
Petrol engines 275
Diesel engines 276
Checking levels 277
Checks 280
AdBlue® additive and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel) 282

In the event of a breakdown 8

Warning triangle 286
Temporary puncture repair kit 287
Spare wheel 294
Changing a bulb 304
Changing a fuse 313
12 V battery 318
Towing 322
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 324

Technical data 9

Petrol engines 325
Petrol weights 327
Diesel engines 329
Diesel weights 331
Dimensions 333
Identification markings 334

Alphabetical index

For the audio and telematic systems, refer to the supplement to the handbook or go to the following internet address: http://service.citroen.com/ddb/

Exterior



Electronic key / "Keyless Entry and Starting" system 53-60
- opening / closing
- anti-theft protection
- back-up control
- battery

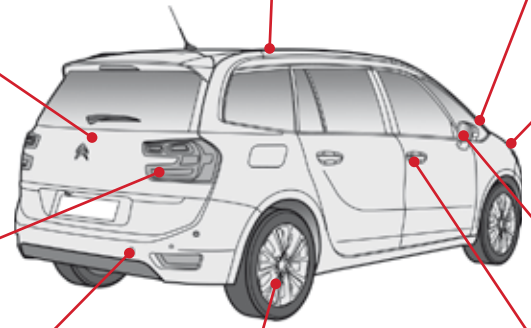
Boot 64-70
- opening / closing
- emergency release

Motorised tailgate 65-68
Hands-free tailgate access 69-70

Changing bulbs 308-312
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps
- foglamps

Parking sensors 192-193
Reversing camera 194
360 Vision 195-196
Park Assist 197-204
Towbar 126, 269
Towing (advice) 322-323
Towbar with quickly detachable tow ball 267-268

Panoramic sunroof 228
Roof bars 272



ESC: ABS, EBFD, EBA, ASR, DSC 233-235
Tyre under-inflation detection 205-207
Tyre pressures 334
Temporary puncture repair kit 287-293
Changing a wheel 294-303
- tools
- spare wheel
- removing / refitting

Snow chains 265

Wipers, screenwash 223-227
Changing a wiper blade 271

Exterior welcome lighting 219-220
Door mirror spotlamps 219
Cornering lighting 221
Directional lighting 222
Headlamp beam height adjustment 220
Changing bulbs 304-308
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Very cold climate screen(s) 266

Door mirrors 208-209

Doors 62-63
- opening / closing
- emergency control

Central locking 61
Alarm 71-73
Electric windows 74-75

Fuel tank, misfuel prevention 262-264

Interior

3rd row rear seats 89-90
Seat modularity / configurations 91-92

C4 Picasso boot fittings 117-118, 122
- rings, hooks
- boot lamp

Grand C4 Picasso boot fittings 119-122
- rings
- boot lamp
- concertina boards

Luggage cover roller 120-121
Warning triangle 286
Topping-up AdBlue® 283-285

2nd row rear seats 84-85
Child seats 245-253, 260
ISOFIX child seats 254-260
Child lock 261

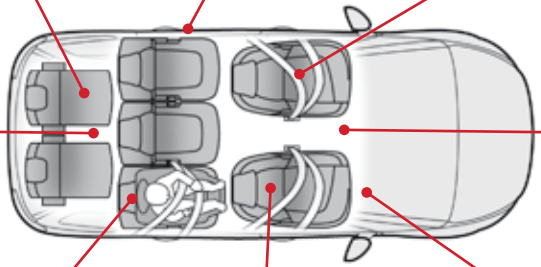
Interior fittings 113-114
Side blinds 114
Rear multimedia 115-116

Front seats 76-83
- manual
- electric

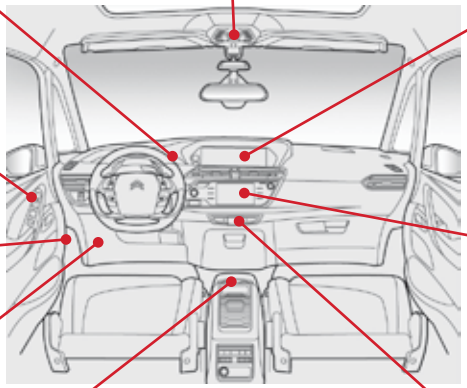
Seat belts 236-240

Front fittings 107-113
Mats 112

Airbags 241-244
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 242



Instruments and controls



Courtesy lamps 123
Rear view mirror 209
Child surveillance mirror 210
Panoramic sunroof 228
Emergency or assistance call 231-232

Instrument panels 18-21
Gear efficiency indicator 147
Lighting dimmer 47
Warning lamps 22-37
Indicators 38-46
- service indicator
- oil level indicator
- AdBlue® fluidrange indicator

Automatic gearbox 142-146

Door mirrors 208-209
Electric windows, deactivating 74-75

Opening the bonnet 274

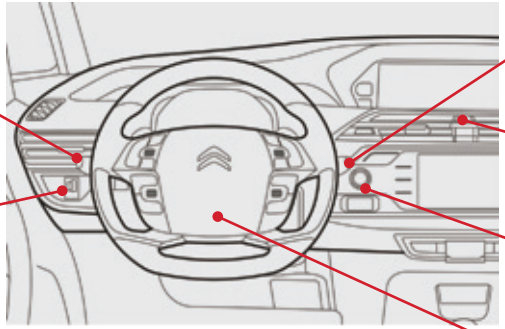
Dashboard fuses 313-316

5/6-speed manual gearbox 141

Touch screen 11-17
Equipment settings 13-17
Setting the date and time 52
Ventilation 94-95
Heating 96
Dual-zone manual air conditioning 97-98
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 99-103
Demisting / defrosting 104

Electric parking brake 133-139

Instruments and controls (cont.)



Lighting control stalk 211-220
Direction indicators 220

Headlamp beam height adjustment 220

Memorising speeds 151
Speed limit recognition 152-155
Speed limiter 156-158
Cruise control 159-161
Dynamic cruise control 162-168
Dynamic cruise control with Stop function 169-177
Collision Risk Alert and Active Safety Brake 178-182

Inter-vehicle distance 170, 173
Black panel 48
Modes 20-21

Wiper and screenwash control stalk 223-227
Trip computer 49-51

Hazard warning lamps 230

START/STOP button 127-132

Steering wheel adjustment 93
Horn 230

Maintenance - Technical data

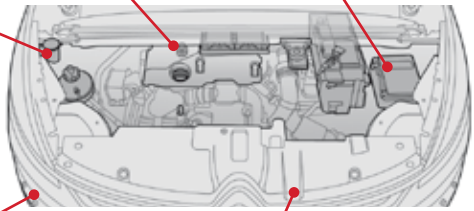
Running out of fuel,
Diesel (priming pump) 324

Checking levels 277-279
- oil
- brake fluid
- coolant
- screenwash/headlamp wash fluid

Checking components 280-281
- air filter
- passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- electric parking brake
- brake pads / discs

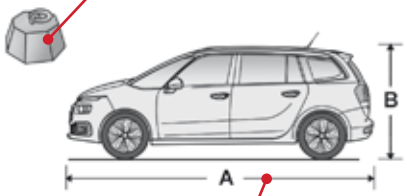
Changing bulbs 304-312
- front
- rear

12V battery 318-321
Load reduction, economy mode 270
Engine compartment
fuses 313-314, 317



Opening the bonnet 274
Under the bonnet, petrol 275
Under the bonnet, Diesel 276
Petrol engines 325-326
Diesel engines 329-330

Petrol weights 327-328
Diesel weights 331-332



Identification markings 334
Dimensions 333

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).
Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrogen oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Touch screen

The touch screen gives access to:
- the heating/air conditioning controls,
- the menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- the audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,

and, depending on equipment, allows:
- the display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information,
- the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice),
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

! **For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations that require close attention with the vehicle stationary.**
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

Use is possible in all temperatures.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

Use the buttons on either side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Certain functions may be displayed over 1 or 2 pages.
To deactivate/activate a function, press OFF/ON.
To modify a setting (lighting duration, etc.) or access additional information, press the symbol for the function.

i After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.

← Use this button to return to the previous page.

OK Use this button to confirm.

Menus



Air conditioning.
Allows control of the settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Heating**, **Manual air conditioning** and **Automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Connected navigation or Mirror Screen*.
See more in "Audio and telematics".

Radio Media.
See more in "Audio and telematics".

Telephone.
See more in "Audio and telematics".

Applications.
Allows the display of the trip computer, with the monochrome digital instrument panel.
See more in "Audio and telematics".

Driving.
Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".

Volume / mute.
See more in "Audio and telematics".

Upper bar

Certain information is always present in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Repeat of the air conditioning information, and access to the simplified menu (temperature and air flow adjustment only).
- Repeat of information from the **Radio Media** and **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions*.
- Notifications zone (SMS and email)*.

- Access to **Configuration**.

* Depending on equipment.

Driving menu

Vehicle settings tab

The functions are grouped into 4 families.

Families	Functions with CITROËN Connect Radio	Functions with CITROËN Connect Nav
Driving lighting	- "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of the automatic guide-me-home lighting. - "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of the exterior welcome lighting. - "Directional headlamps": activation/deactivation of the static intersection lighting/directional lighting. - "Daytime running lamps" (LED) depending on country of sale.	- "Directional headlamps": activation/deactivation of the static intersection lighting/directional lighting. - "Daytime running lamps": (LED) depending on country of sale.
Vehicle access	- "Unlock driver's door": activation/deactivation of the selective unlocking of the driver's door. - "Unlock boot only": activation/deactivation of the unlocking from the tailgate. - "Motorised tailgate": activation/deactivation of the motorized operation of the tailgate. - "Hands-Free Tailgate Access": activation/deactivation of the hands-free tailgate access function.	- "Unlock driver's door": activation/deactivation of the selective unlocking of the driver's door. - "Unlock boot only": activation/deactivation of the unlocking from the tailgate. - "Motorised tailgate": activation/deactivation of the motorized operation of the tailgate. - "Hands-Free Tailgate Access": activation/deactivation of the hands-free tailgate access function.

Families	Functions with CITROËN Connect Radio	Functions with CITROËN Connect Nav
Comfort	- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper linked to reverse gear. - "Mood lighting": activation/deactivation of the mood lighting. - "Mirror adaptation in reverse": activation/deactivation of the automatic tilting of the mirrors when reverse gear is engaged.	- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper linked to reverse gear. - "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of the automatic guide-me-home lighting. - "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of the exterior welcome lighting. - "Mood lighting": activation/deactivation of the mood lighting. - "Mirror adaptation in reverse": activation/deactivation of the automatic tilting of the mirrors when reverse gear is engaged.
Security	- "Collision risk alert": activation/deactivation of the collision risk alert. - "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of the speed limit recognition system. - "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.	- "Collision risk alert": activation/deactivation of the collision risk alert. - "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of the speed limit recognition system. - "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Driving functions tab

Corresponding function	Comments
Adjusting Speeds	Memorisation of speed settings for the speed limiter, cruise control or dynamic cruise control.
Under-inflation initialisation	Reinitialisation of the under-inflation system.
Diagnostic	List of current alerts.
Lane assist	Activation/deactivation of the "active lane departure warning" function.
Parking sensors	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Automatic headlamp dipping	Activation/deactivation of the "Automatic headlamps" function.
Stop & Start	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Blind spot sensors	Activation/deactivation of the function.
Panoramic visual aid	Activation/deactivation of the function then choice of options.
Active cruise control	Choice of the standard cruise control or the dynamic cruise control.
Traction control	Activation/deactivation of the function.

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Configuration

The functions available through the upper bar are detailed in the table below. Certain adjustments are accessible in the secondary page.

Button	Comments
	Turn off the screen.
	Adjustment of brightness.
	Choice and settings for three personalised profiles and one shared profile.
	Settings for the touch screen and instrument panel...
	Activation and adjustment of Wi-Fi settings.

Button	Comments
	Adjustment of the display settings (scrolling of text, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Select a colour scheme for the 12 inch colour instrument panel.
	Select the type of information displayed in the 12 inch colour instrument panel.
	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) - distance and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Choice of language used for the touch screen and the 12 inch colour instrument panel.
	Setting the date and time.

Monochrome digital instrument panel

Dials and screens



1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min), graduation depending on engine (petrol or Diesel).
2. Gear efficiency indicator, selector position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
5. Fuel gauge.
6. Service indicator, then total mileage recorder (miles or km).
   These functions are displayed in turn when the ignition is switched on.
7. Trip recorder (miles or km).
8. Recall of heating and air conditioning settings.

Control buttons

A. Main lighting dimmer buttons.

B. Recall of servicing information.
Resetting of the function selected to zero (service indicator or trip recorder).
Recall of the remaining driving range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Warning log (current warnings).

12-inch HD colour instrument panel

This instrument panel can be personalised. Depending on the display mode selected, some information can be hidden.

Dials and screens

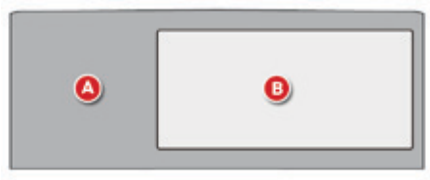


1. Rev counter (x 1000 tr/min or rpm) ("Dials" mode).
2. Gear efficiency indicator, selector position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
5. Fuel gauge.
6. Total distance recorder (miles or km).
7. Trip recorder (miles or km).
8. Repeat of the current media or telephone information.
9. Repeat of the trip computer information.
10. Exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp comes on if there is a risk of ice).

Control button

A. Recall of servicing information.
Recall of the remaining driving range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Resetting of the function selected to zero (service indicator or trip recorder).

Display zones



Whatever the display mode or colour scheme chosen, the instrument panel contains:

- a fixed display zone **A** with:
  - the speedometer,
  - the warning lamps,
  - the fuel gauge,
  - the various repeated information and alert messages.
- a configurable display zone **B**.

Most of the warning lamps do not have a fixed position.
The warning and indicator lamps are displayed from left to right in order of importance.
For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both on and off, there is just one dedicated location.

Personalisation of the 12 inch colour instrument panel

You can modify the appearance of the instrument panel, by choosing:

- a colour scheme,
- a display mode.

Choosing the language

This depends on the setting in the touch screen.
Certain languages are not available for this instrument panel; English is selected by default.

Choosing the colour scheme

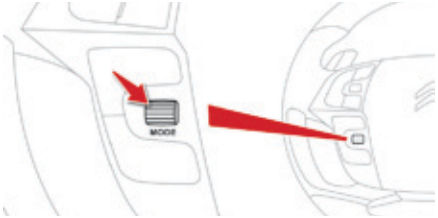
To modify it, with the vehicle stationary:



☞ Press this button in the "**Configuration**" menu of the touch screen.

The system restarts to take account of the modifications to the touch screen and the instrument panel.

Choice of display mode



Each mode corresponds to the type of information displayed in the configurable area.

☞ Turn the thumbwheel on the left of the steering wheel to display and run through the different modes in the right-hand part of the instrument panel,
☞ Once the display mode required has been selected, press the thumbwheel to confirm.

or

☞ Press the end of the lighting control stalk to display and run through the different modes in the right-hand part of the instrument panel,
☞ Once the display mode required has been selected, it is applied automatically after a few moments without any action on the control.



- "Dials": permanent display of the trip computer and rev counter.



- "Driving": display of the rev counter and information related to driving (inter-vehicle time, etc.).



- "Navigation": display of information related to the navigation in progress (map and instructions).

- "Minimal": no information displayed.



- "Personal": choice of information to be displayed in each of the 2 display zones (centre 1/3 and right-hand 1/3) from:
  - trip computer,
  - media,
  - navigation,
  - driving assistance,
  - rev counter,
  - coolant temperature indicator,
  - no information (empty).

Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver of the status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp) or the existence of a fault (warning lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds in the instrument panel when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.
When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.
If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The illumination of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The warning lamps may come on continuously (fixed) or flash.

! Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two modes: fixed (continuous) or flashing.
Only by relating the type of illumination to the operation of the vehicle can it be determined whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred. In the event of a fault, the illumination of the warning lamp may be accompanied by a message.
Refer to the tables on the following pages for more information.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on in the instrument panel, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.



Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Left-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed down.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk has been pushed up.	
	Sidelamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	Dipped beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	Main beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk has been pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Automatic headlamp dipping**	fixed.	The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position, pulled towards you, and the function is activated (**Driving** menu). The system is in dipped beam mode as there is sufficient ambient light and/or the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of main beams.	The camera, located at the top of the windscreen, authorises or prohibits the switch between dipped beams and main beams, depending on the ambient lighting and driving conditions. Pull the lighting stalk again to deactivate. For more information on **Automatic headlamp dipping**, refer to the corresponding section.
		fixed.	The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position, pulled towards you, and the function is activated (**Driving** menu). The system is in main beam mode as the ambient lighting and traffic conditions allow it.	
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward once to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps have been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.

For more information on the **Lighting control stalk**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The "**START/STOP**" switch has been pressed (ignition on).	Wait until the indicator lamp goes off before starting. Once it goes off, starting is immediate, on condition that you maintain pressure on the brake pedal for an automatic gearbox, or the clutch pedal is pressed fully down for a manual gearbox. The period of illumination of the indicator lamp is determined by the climatic conditions (up to about thirty seconds in extreme conditions). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	**Electric parking brake**	fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	Release the electric parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, briefly push the electric parking brake control lever. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Blind Spot Monitoring System**	fixed.	The system has been activated.	For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring System**, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Park Assist**	fixed.	The Park Assist function has been activated.	For more information on **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
AUTO	**Automatic wiping**	fixed.	The wiper control stalk has been pushed down. Automatic front wiping is activated.	To deactivate automatic wiping, push the wiper control stalk down again or put the wiper control stalk in another position.
	Passenger's airbag system	fixed.	The control switch, located at the passenger's end of the dashboard, is at the **"ON"** position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.	Turn the control switch to the **"OFF"** position to deactivate the passenger's front airbag. You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).
	Stop & Start	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable, or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation indicator lamps

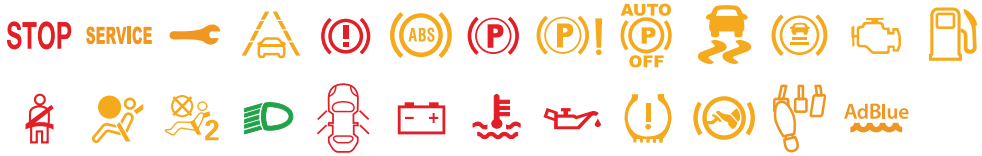
If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.
This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.



Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed.	The control switch, located at the right hand end of the dashboard is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is an operating fault with the airbags (Airbag warning lamp on).	Turn the control switch to the "**ON**" position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rearward facing position on the front passenger seat.
	**Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake**	fixed, accompanied by a message.	The system has been deactivated, via the vehicle configuration menu in the screen.	For more information on the **Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake** system, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	The Stop & Start has been deactivated.	Reactivate the function in the **Driving** menu.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.
Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further using the associated message.
If you encounter any problems, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	Illumination of this warning lamp is related to a serious fault detected with the engine, the braking system, the power steering, etc., or a major electrical fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
SERVICE or 	**Service**	temporarily, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or the start of saturation of the particle filter (as soon as the traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h), until the warning lamp goes off). For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service indicator spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**	fixed.	The system is not available	The system has been deactivated or is on automatic standby. For more information on the **Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**, refer to the corresponding section.
		flashing.	You are about to cross a solid lane marking without operating the direction indicators.	The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.
+ 		fixed, accompanied by the display of a message, an audible signal and the Service warning lamp.	The system has a fault.	Be vigilant and drive carefully. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. For more information on the **Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Braking**	fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top-up with brake fluid listed by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Electric parking brake**	flashing.	When driving: the electric parking brake is not fully released.	Fully release the parking brake by a quick press on the control lever. If the warning persist, stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
			When stationary: parking brake applied, the system does not guarantee immobilisation of the vehicle (when parking on a very steep slope, for example).	Secure the immobilisation of the vehicle by engaging a gear with a manual gearbox, by placing the gear selector in position **P** with an automatic gearbox, or by fitting a chock to one of the wheels.
	**Electric parking brake fault**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. The parking brake can be released manually. For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty. In the event of a fault, illumination of this warning lamp is accompanied by a warning message.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is no longer possible. The parking brake can be released manually. For more information on the **Electric parking brake** and in particular the reactivation of the automatic functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake**	flashing.	The system is operating.	The system brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
		fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Low fuel level**	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	When it first comes on there remains **approximately 6 litres of fuel** in the tank. You are then using the fuel reserve.	You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards "0". Fuel tank capacity: approximately 57 litres (petrol) or 55 litres (Diesel). Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Seat belt not fastened / unfastened**	fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
	**Airbags**	on temporarily.	This warning lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Passenger airbag system**	flashing.	The passenger airbag system has a fault.	Do not have a passenger seated in the front passenger seat. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 **Directional headlamps**	flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 **Door(s) open***	fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	A door or the boot is still open and the speed is lower than 6 mph (10 km/h).	Close the door or the boot.
	fixed, associated with a message identifying the door and accompanied by an audible signal.	A door or the boot is still open and the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).	
 **Battery charge**	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 **Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping-up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.
 **Engine oil pressure**	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Only with the monochrome digital instrument panel.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Under-inflation**	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. You must reinitialise the system after the adjustment of one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels. For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.
+ SERVICE		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The system has a fault: the tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Foot on the brake pedal***	fixed.	The brake pedal is not pressed.	With an automatic gearbox, press the brake pedal to move the gear selector out of position **P**.
	**Foot on the clutch***	fixed.	In the STOP mode of Stop & Start, changing to START mode is denied because the clutch pedal is not fully down.	You must declutch fully to allow the change to engine START mode.

* Only with the monochrome digital instrument panel.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
AdBlue	**AdBlue® (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Top-up the AdBlue® as soon as possible or go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ SERVICE		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must **top-up the** AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown** or go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must **top-up** the AdBlue® or call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. It is **essential** to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the fluid tank

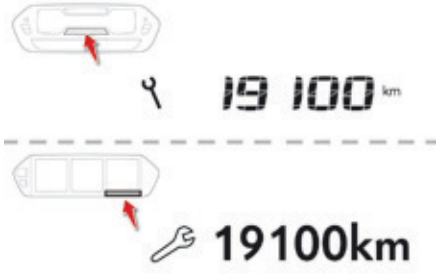
For topping-up or for more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
AdBlue + SERVICE + 	**SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop **without delay**, **to avoid a breakdown**.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you **must** call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Gauges and indicators

Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule.
The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset, according to the mileage covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, depending on the country of sale, the degree of deterioration of the engine oil may also be taken into account.

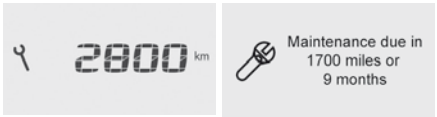


More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.
Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:

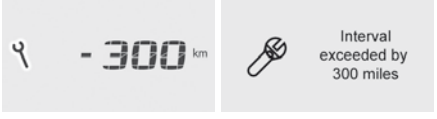


5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

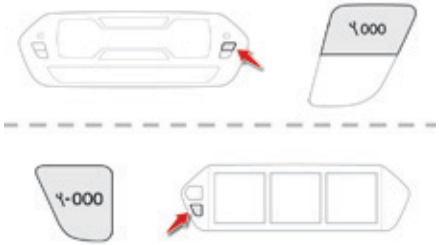
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.
Example: the service is overdue by 300 miles.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.
With BlueHDi Diesel versions, the **Service** warning lamp also comes on when the ignition is switched on.

Therefore, the spanner may come on if you have exceeded the period since the last service, as indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the spanner may also come on early, according to the level of deterioration of the engine oil, which depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.

Resetting the service indicator



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.
If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the display indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears.

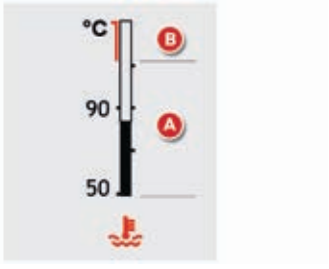
If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press the trip distance recorder reset button.
  The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Coolant temperature gauge*



With the engine running, when the needle is:
- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the maximum temperature and the central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.
To top-up the level:
- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap slightly to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top-up the level to the "MAX" mark.

! Be aware of the risk of burns when topping-up the cooling system. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the header tank).

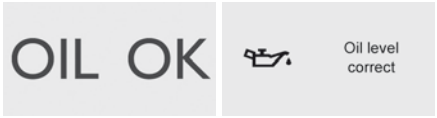
* Only with the 12 inch colour instrument panel.

Engine oil level indicator*

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

* Depending on version.

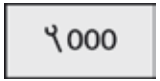
AdBlue® fluid range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.
In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range figure is the one displayed.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.





With the 12 inch colour instrument panel, pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)





When switching on the ignition, the AdBlue warning lamp comes on for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top-up AdBlue: Starting impossible in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 200 miles (300 km) until the fluid level has been topped-up.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® fluid topped-up.
You can also top-up the fluid yourself.
For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping-up, refer to the corresponding section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top-up AdBlue: Starting impossible in 350 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the fluid level has been topped-up.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® fluid topped-up.
You can also top-up the fluid yourself.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.

For more information on **AdBlue® and the SCR system**, and in particular on topping-up, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top-up AdBlue: Starting impossible").
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required.
If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



The AdBlue, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

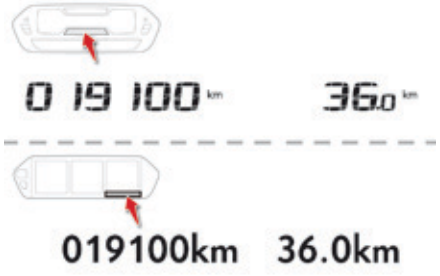
! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.
To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

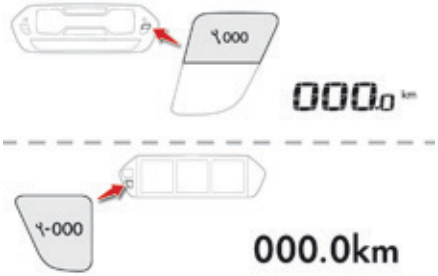
When travelling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Total distance recorder



It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder



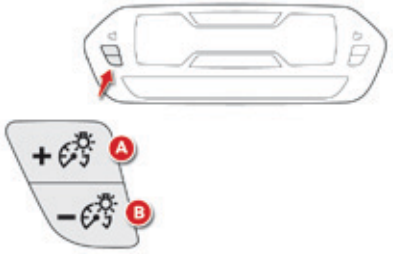
It measures the distance travelled since it was reset to zero by the driver.

☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer control

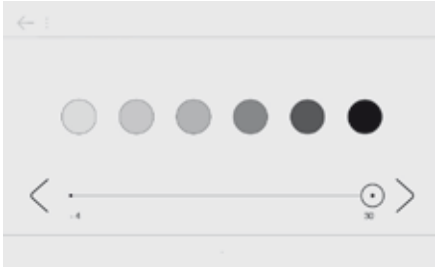
Allows the manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and touch screen to suit the ambient light level.
Operates only when the vehicle lighting is on, with the exception of the daytime running lamps.

Two buttons



With the exterior lighting on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls and the interior mood lighting or button **B** to reduce it.
As soon as the lighting reaches the required level of brightness, release the button.

Touch screen



- In the **Configuration** menu, select "**Brightness**".
- Adjust the brightness using the arrows or by moving the cursor.

Black panel (comfortable night driving display)

When driving at night, this function allows certain displays in the instrument panel to be switched off to avoid visual fatigue for the driver. The essential information, such as the speed of the vehicle, the warning lamps and the cruise control or speed limiter indications remain displayed in the instrument panel.

Using the steering mounted control



- With the vehicle lighting on, press this button to activate the black panel.
- Press this button again to deactivate it.

Black screen (touch screen)

- In the **Configuration** menu, select "**Dark**". The screen goes off.
- Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to switch it on again.

Trip computer
Monochrome digital instrument panel

System that gives you information on the journey in progress (range, fuel consumption, etc.).

The information is accessible in the **Driving** menu.

Information display in the touch screen



Permanent display:

☞ Select "**Trip computer**" in the **Applications** menu.

The trip computer information is displayed in tabs.

☞ Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

Temporary display in a new window:

☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk for access to the information and display the different tabs.

The current fuel consumption tab with:

- the range,
- the current fuel consumption,
- the Stop & Start time counter.

The trip **"1"** tab with:

- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed, for the first trip.

The trip **"2"** tab with:

- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed, for the second trip.

Trip reset



☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button or the end of the wiper control stalk.

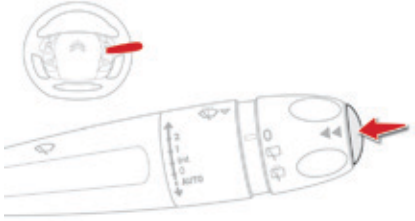
Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Trip computer
12 inch colour instrument panel

Information display in the instrument panel

The display of trip computer information is permanent when you select the "Dials" or "Personal" display mode.



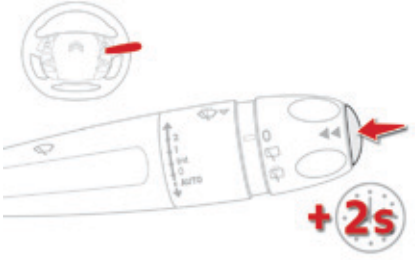
For all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper control stalk displays this information in a new window.

☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display the various tabs in succession.



- The current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter.
- Trip **"1"** with:
  - the average speed,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled, for the first trip.
- Trip **"2"** with:
  - the average speed,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled, for the second trip.

Trip reset



☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Trip computer

A few definitions

Range

(miles or km)
The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated over the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated since the last trip reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last trip reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)
Calculated since the last trip reset.

Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Setting the date and time

With CITROËN Connect Radio

- Select the **Settings** menu.
- Select "**System configuration**".



- Select "**Date and time**".

- Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".
- Choose the display formats.
- Change the date and/or the time using the numeric keypad.
- Press this button to confirm.

With CITROËN Connect Nav

The date and time settings are only available if the synchronisation with the GPS is deactivated.

- Select the **Settings** menu.
- Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



- Select "**Setting the time-date**".

- Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.
- Set the time or the date using the numeric keypad.
- Press this button to confirm.

Additional settings

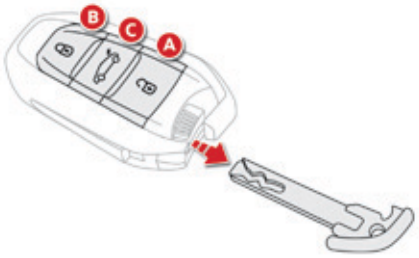
You can choose to:

- change the date and time display format (12hr / 24hr),
- change the time zone,
- activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country). The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Electronic key - remote control

System which permits remote locking or unlocking of the vehicle as well as opening the boot and, depending on version, operation of the alarm.
It also allows the location and starting of the vehicle as well as providing protection against theft.



A. Unlocking the vehicle.
B. Central locking the vehicle.
C. Unlocking the vehicle and, depending on version, release of the tailgate or opening of the motorised tailgate.

The electronic key includes an integral back-up emergency key.

Unlocking the vehicle

Complete unlocking



☞ Press this button.

Selective unlocking



☞ To unlock only the driver's door, press this button once.

☞ To unlock the other doors and the boot, press this button again.

The setting of selective unlocking is done in the **Driving** menu.
Select "**Unlock driver's door**".
Complete unlocking is activated by default.

Unlocking the vehicle and opening the boot



☞ Make a long press on this button to unlock the vehicle and, depending on version, release the tailgate or open the motorised tailgate.

Settings for the motorised tailgate can be adjusted in the **Driving** menu.
Motorised operation is activated by default.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds. The door mirror spot lamps come on. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on and the alarm is deactivated.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



☞ Press this button.
Holding the button allows the windows to be raised to the desired position.

! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct closing of the windows.
Be aware of children when operating the windows.

i The direction indicators come on for a few seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold and the alarm is activated.

i If one of the doors or the boot is not properly closed, locking does not take place.
Nevertheless, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after around 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked by mistake and no action is taken on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically after about thirty seconds.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is reactivated automatically.

i The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central locking button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



☞ With the vehicle unlocked, press this button.

☞ Within five seconds, press this button again to deadlock the vehicle.

Locating your vehicle

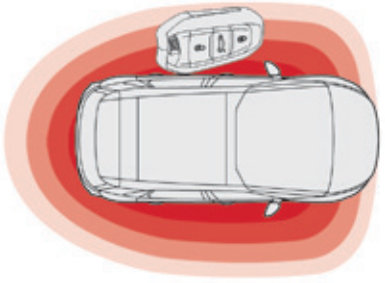
This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for about 10 seconds.

Keyless Entry and Starting

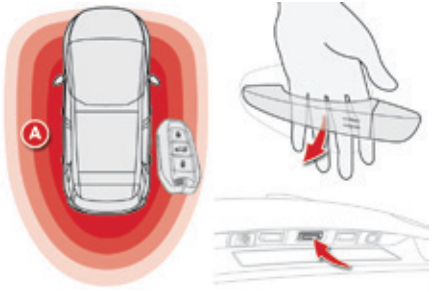


System that allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the electronic key on your person.

The electronic key can also be used as a remote control.
For more information on the **Electronic key - remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.
It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

Unlocking the vehicle



Complete unlocking

- With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate opening control (located centrally).

Selective unlocking

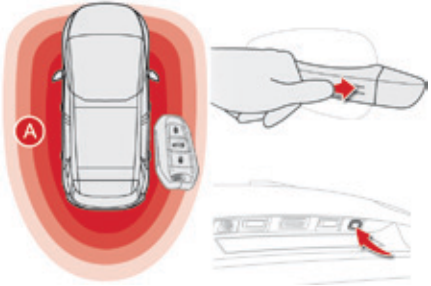
- To unlock only the driver's door, with the electronic key on your person, pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.
- To unlock the complete vehicle, pass your hand behind the front passenger door handle with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.

Activation or deactivation of selective unlocking is done in the **Driving** menu.
Select "**Unlock driver's door**".
By default, complete unlocking is activated.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the alarm is deactivated and the welcome lighting comes on.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle or press the locking button on the right of the tailgate.

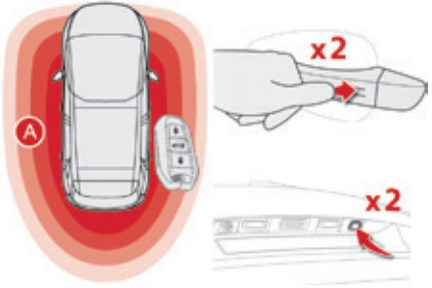
Maintaining pressure allows the windows to be raised to the desired position.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the keys is left inside the vehicle.

! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct operation of the windows.
Be aware of children when operating the windows.

i The direction indicators come on for a few seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold and the alarm is activated.

Deadlocking



! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central control button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

By the doors or tailgate:

☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) or the locking control located on the right of the tailgate to lock the vehicle.

☞ Within five seconds, press the door handle or the locking control located on the right of the tailgate again to deadlock the vehicle.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.
However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked by mistake and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock again automatically after about 30 seconds.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.

The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

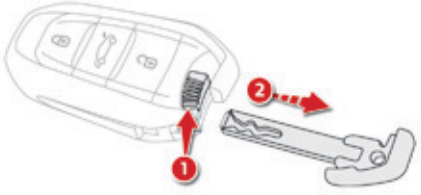
As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period.
Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on starting with **Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt...) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, …) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Emergency procedure

Emergency unlocking/locking using the integral key



The integral key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the electronic key cannot operate and in the event of a fault with the Keyless Entry and Starting system:

- cell battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, ...
- vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic signals.

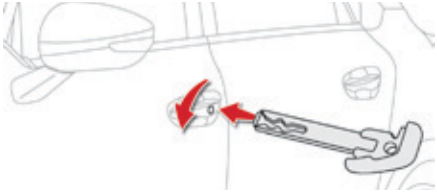
☞ To extract the emergency mechanical key from the electronic key, press button **1** and guide the key **2** out.

The integral key is also used to deactivate/ reactivate the passenger's airbag.

It provides a backup means of locking the passenger doors.

It also allows locking of the vehicle without activation of the alarm.

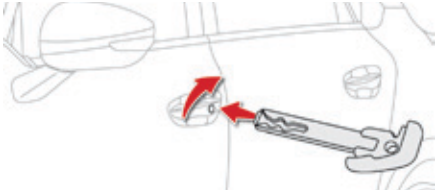
Unlocking



☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock the vehicle.

Depending on version, the direction indicators flash for a few seconds, the door mirrors unfold and the welcome lighting comes on.
For versions with alarm: the siren will sound on opening the door with the key (in the remote control). It stops when the ignition is switched on.

Normal locking



☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock the vehicle completely.

Deadlocking

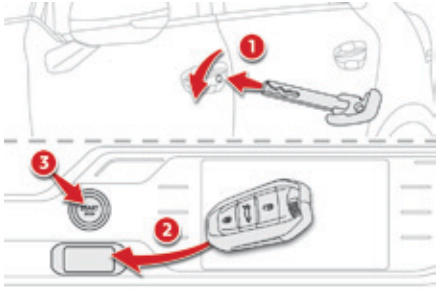
☞ Turn the key towards the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

☞ Turn the key towards the rear again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Depending on version, the direction indicators flash for a few seconds, the door mirrors fold.

For versions with alarm: it is not deactivated / activated when unlocking / locking the vehicle with the integral key.
The siren will sound on opening the door with the key (integral with the remote control). It stops when the ignition is switched on.

Remote control problem - reinitialisation

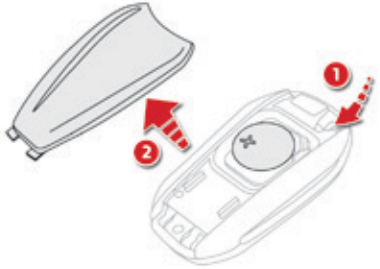


Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ Place the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.
- ☞ Place the electronic key in the reader.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing START/STOP.

The electronic key is fully operational again.
If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.
Battery replacement is signalled by the display of a message.

- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its location.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Lost electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Electronic key

The electronic key is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your electronic key out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
The electronic key cannot operate as a remote control when it is in the reader or even when the ignition is switched on.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution (with children on board), take the electronic key with you when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference

The electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, ...

Anti-theft protection

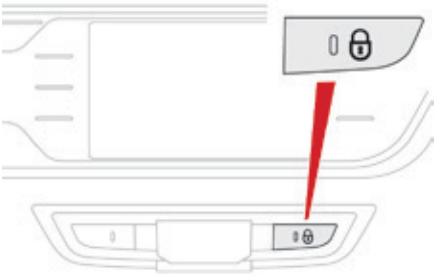
Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.
Don't forget to turn the wheel to lock the steering column.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have all of the keys in your possession paired by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that only your keys allow your vehicle to be unlocked and started.

Central locking

Manual central locking



- ☞ Press this button to operate the central locking of the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the vehicle.
- ☞ Pressing the button again unlocks the vehicle completely.

When locking / deadlocking from the outside

If the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the button is not active.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door handles to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, you have to use the remote control, the Keyless Entry and Starting system or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic central locking of doors (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically when driving, as soon as the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

To activate or deactivate this function (activated by default):

- ☞ with the ignition on, press this button until a message appears in the instrument panel.

If one of the doors or the boot is open, automatic central locking does not complete: the sound of the locks rebounding can be heard.

Transporting long or voluminous objects

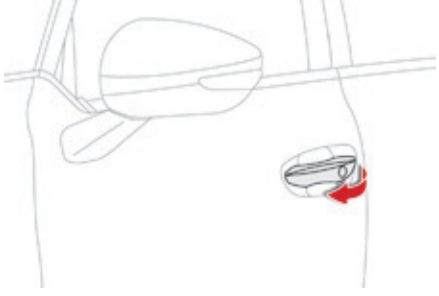
If you want to drive with the boot open but the vehicle's side doors locked, press the central locking control button to lock the doors.

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

Doors

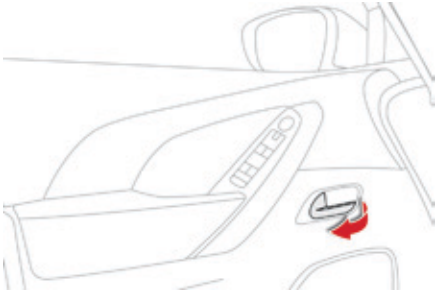
Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, pull the door handle.

From inside



☞ Pull the front or rear door lever to open the door.

Closing

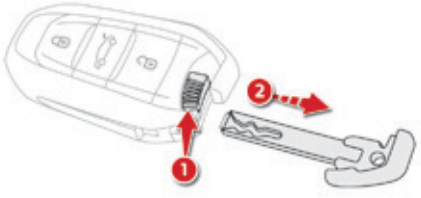
If a door is not properly closed:

- **with the engine running**, this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel (monochrome digital) for a few seconds,
- **with the vehicle moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp and a message, accompanied by an audible signal, appear in the instrument panel (monochrome digital and 12 inch colour) for a few seconds.

Back-up control

To manually lock and unlock the doors in the event of a central locking or battery failure.

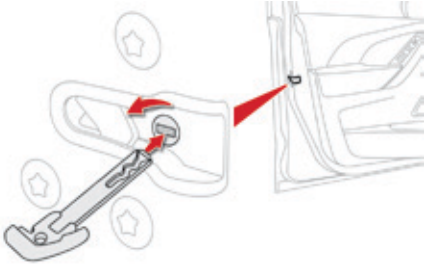
Driver's door (locking / unlocking)



☞ Insert the key into the lock barrel to lock / unlock the door.

You can also apply this procedure for the passenger doors.

Locking the passenger doors



☞ Open the doors.

☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

☞ Insert the key in the latch located on the edge of the door and turn it an eighth of a turn to the right for the right hand door, and to the left for the left hand door.
Locking is effective when the slot is horizontal.

☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

! To ensure complete locking of the vehicle, only disconnecting the battery inhibits opening of the tailgate from the outside.

Boot

Opening the tailgate

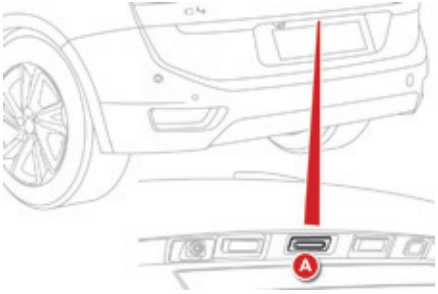
With the electronic key / remote control



- Make a long press on this button to release the tailgate. If the vehicle was locked, this action first unlocks the vehicle.
- Raise the tailgate.

When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

With the tailgate opening control



- With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the zone covered, press the tailgate control **A**.
- Raise the tailgate.

The tailgate is not designed to take a bicycle carrier.

Closing the tailgate

- Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
- Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

If the tailgate is not properly closed:

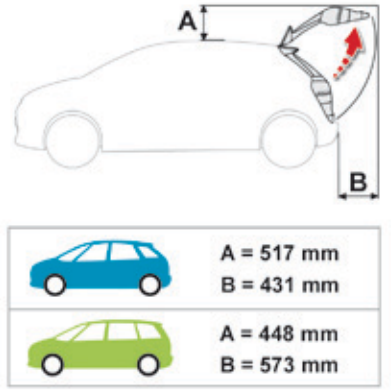


- **engine running**, this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel (monochrome digital) for a few seconds,
- **vehicle moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel (monochrome digital and 12 inch colour) for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

Motorised tailgate

General points

The motorised operation of the tailgate can be activated or deactivated by selecting "**Motorised tailgate**" in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

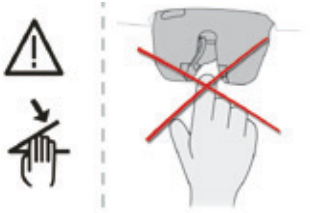


Tailgate operation commands must be made with the vehicle stationary.
Ensure that there is enough free space to allow the motorised tailgate to open.

Anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate includes a system for detecting obstacles, which automatically interrupts and reverses the movement by a few degrees, to allow the obstacle to be cleared.
Note that this anti-pinch system does not operate at the end of the closing movement (around 1 cm before complete closure).

! To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the tailgate:
- ensure that there is no person close to the rear of the vehicle,
- watch the behaviour of rear passengers, particularly children.



! Never place a finger in the locking mechanism of the motorised tailgate - Risk of serious injury!

Bicycle carrier / Towbar

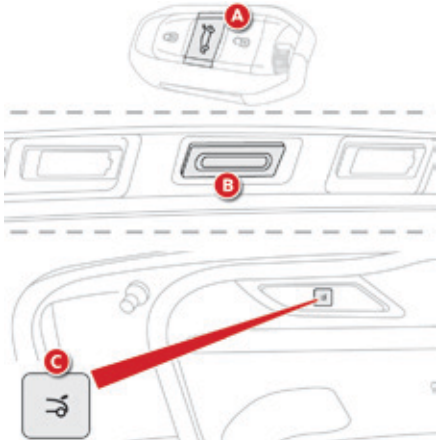
The tailgate is not designed to be fitted with a bicycle carrier.
If a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towbar with a wiring harness connected to a towbar socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate is automatically deactivated.
If using a towbar or bicycle carrier not approved by CITROËN, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

Operation

There are several ways of operating the motorised tailgate:

- using the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key **(A)**,
- using the exterior control on the tailgate **(B)**,
- using the interior control on the tailgate **(C)**,
- by a movement of your foot, if your vehicle has the hands-free tailgate access function.

For more information on **Hands-free tailgate access**, refer to the corresponding section.



Motorised opening

Opening the tailgate with the electronic key / remote control (A)



☞ Make a long press on the remote control button.

or

Opening the tailgate with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system "B"

☞ Press button **B** on the tailgate, with the electronic key in the zone covered.

When selective locking is activated, the electronic key must be near the rear of the vehicle.

Opening the tailgate

☞ After complete unlocking of the vehicle, press control **B** on the tailgate.

The instruction is confirmed by an audible signal.

By default, the tailgate opens completely or alternatively to the memorised position.

Motorised closing

There are two possibilities:

☞ Press and release the exterior control **B**.

or



☞ Press and then release button **C**.

The motorised tailgate has an anti-pinch system that interrupts closing if it encounters an obstacle.

Operation of the tailgate can be interrupted at any time:




- by pressing one of these two buttons,

or

- by pressing the exterior control **B**.

After interruption of an operation, another press on one of the controls resumes the movement, with the exception of a press on the remote control button, which only allows opening.

Repeated opening and closing of the tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.
Allow 10 minutes for the motor to cool down before operating the tailgate again.
If you are not able to wait, operate it manually.

Detection of obstacles

Should an obstacle (person or object) be encountered, the anti-pinch system interrupts the closing movement and raises the tailgate a few centimetres to clear the obstacle.

Memorising an opening position

Where height is restricted (garage with a low ceiling, ...) it is possible to limit and memorise the opening angle of the motorised tailgate.
This memorisation is done as follows:

- open the tailgate to the desired position,
- press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Memorisation of the maximum opening position of the tailgate is confirmed by an audible signal.
To cancel the memorised position:

- stop the tailgate in an intermediate position,
- press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Cancellation of the memorised position is confirmed by an audible signal.

Manual operation

The motorised tailgate can be opened and closed manually, even if motorised operation is activated.
However, any manual intervention must be done with the tailgate stopped.

When opening and closing a motorised tailgate manually, there is no assistance from gas-filled struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

Reinitialising the motorised tailgate

This operation is necessary where there is no movement - after detection of an obstacle, connecting or recharging the battery, ...

- ☞ Open the tailgate manually, if necessary.
- ☞ Manually close the tailgate fully.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Precautions in use

In wintry conditions

In the event of an accumulation of snow on the tailgate, clear the snow before commanding a motorised opening of the tailgate.
The formation of ice can block the tailgate and prevent its opening: wait until the ice melts with the heating of the passenger compartment.

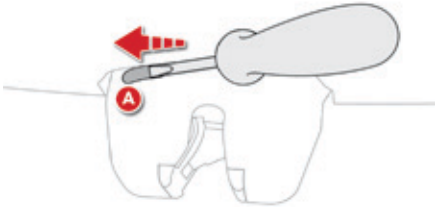
When washing the vehicle

When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, don't forget to lock your vehicle to avoid the risk of unexpected opening.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking



- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

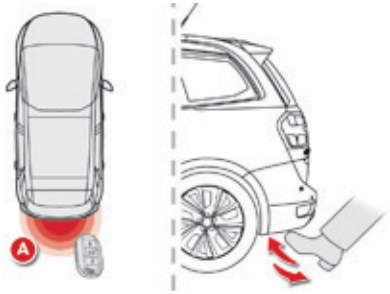
Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Hands-free tailgate access

The tailgate my be equipped with a hands-free function, to allow you to open or close the tailgate when your hands are full.
For more information on the **Motorised tailgate**, refer to the corresponding section.

"Hands-free" opening



☞ With your hands full and the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **A**, pass your foot rapidly below the rear bumper.

The instruction is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators and an audible signal.
The tailgate opens to the memorised position.

i Passing your foot below the bumper again while the tailgate is opening stops the movement.
Passing your foot below the bumper for a third time reverses the direction of movement.

i If the vehicle is locked, it is unlocked before opening the tailgate.

! Ensure that you are steady on your feet before passing a foot rapidly below the rear bumper.
Take care not to touch the exhaust system, which may be hot - Risk of burns!

"Hands-free" closing

☞ With your hands full and the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **A**, pass your foot rapidly below the rear bumper.

The instruction is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators and an audible signal.

i Passing your foot below the bumper again while the tailgate is closing stops the movement.
Passing your foot below the bumper for a third time reverses the direction of movement.

Deactivation

Hands-free tailgate access is activated by default.
This function can be activated or deactivated by selecting "**Hands-Free Tailgate Access**" in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Automatic locking

To have the vehicle lock itself after closing the tailgate by passing a foot below the bumper, activate "**Hands-free tailgate access self-locking**" in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Recommendations related to the "Hands-free tailgate access" function

If several passes of your foot below the rear bumper fail to open the tailgate, wait a few seconds before starting again.

The function is automatically deactivated in the event of heavy rain or accumulation of snow.

If the function fails to operate, check that the electronic key is not exposed to strong electromagnetic interference (a smartphone, ...).

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

The function may not work correctly if your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may only open or close, particularly if:

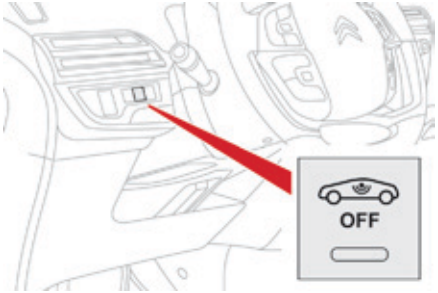
- your vehicle is fitted with a towbar,
- you hitch or unhitch a trailer,
- you fit or remove a bicycle carrier,
- you load or unload bicycles from a bicycle carrier,
- you place or lift something behind the vehicle,
- an animal approaches the rear bumper,
- you are washing your vehicle,
- a service is being carried out on your vehicle,
- you are accessing the spare wheel (depending on version).

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate "Hands-free tailgate access".

Ensure that no object or person might prevent the correct opening or closing of the tailgate. Be particularly aware of children when operating the tailgate.

Alarm

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:



- Exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet...

- Interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

! Self-protection function

The system checks for the disconnection of any of its components. The alarm is triggered if the battery, the button or the siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.

☞ Lock the vehicle using the remote control.

or

☞ Lock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
After a command to lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds, the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot, bonnet...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Press one of the unlocking buttons on the remote control:



short press



long press

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button is off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i In the case of automatic locking of the vehicle (which occurs after a period of 30 seconds if a door or the boot is not opened), the monitoring system is reactivated automatically.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- towing your vehicle,
- transport on a ferry.

Deactivating the volumetric monitoring



☞ Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds press this button until its indicator lamp is on fixed.

☞ Get out of the vehicle.

☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Only the exterior perimeter protection system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be done every time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

☞ Reactivate the full alarm system by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second again.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.
The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key (integral with the remote control) in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral with the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault in the system.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

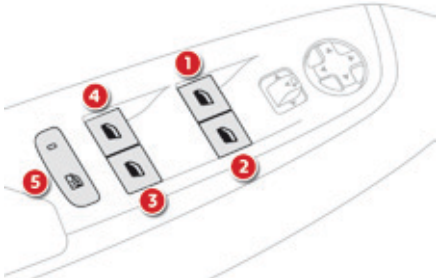
Automatic activation*

2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the system is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Right-hand rear.
4. Left-hand rear.
5. Deactivate the electric window switches located at the rear seats.

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.
Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.
In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed.
The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear windows



For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the rear windows irrespective of their positions.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation. It remains on, as long as the child lock is off (deactivated).
Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

For each window:

- lower the window completely, then raise it, it will rise in steps of a few centimetres with each action. Repeat the operation until the window closes completely,
- continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching this position, window closed.

! In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.
When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that nothing is preventing correct closing of the windows.
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.
Be aware of passengers or other persons present when closing the windows using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

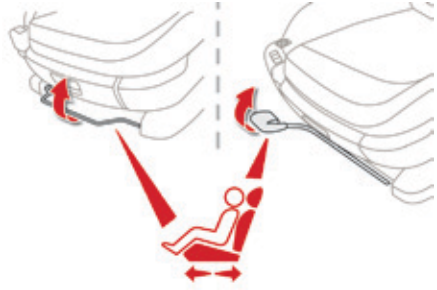
Front seats

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat backrest and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

! As a safety measure, seat adjustments should only be done when stationary.

Manual adjustments

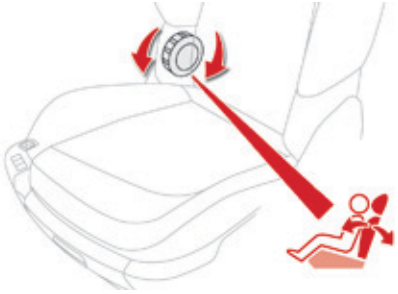
Forwards-backwards



☞ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

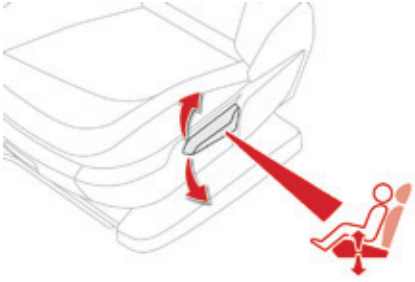
When the seat is in the desired position, push it forwards and backwards without raising the control bar to check that it has latched.

Driver's seat backrest angle



☞ Turn the knob to adjust the seat backrest.

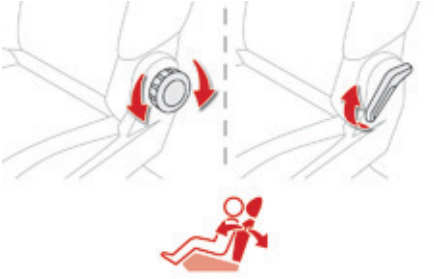
Driver's seat height



☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary, to obtain the desired position.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Passenger's seat backrest angle



☞ Pull the control upwards or turn the knob to adjust the backrest.

When the backrest is at the desired angle, release the control.

! When the backrest is at the desired angle, release the control lever. To ensure that the backrest does not suddenly fold forwards and hurt you, restrain it with your back or your hand while operating the control.

Table position for the passenger's seat backrest



! Check that there is no object that could interfere with the movement of the seat, both above and below.

☞ Place the head restraint in the low position, raise the armrest and fold the fixed table onto the back of the seat.

☞ Pull the control fully up and tip the backrest forwards.

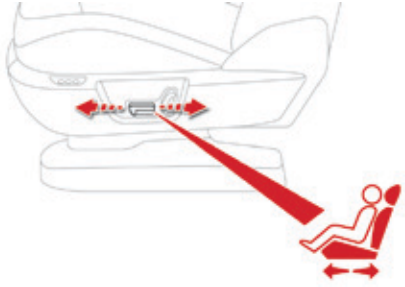
To return to the normal position, guide the backrest backwards until it locks.

This position, associated with the position of the rear seats, allows you to carry long objects inside the vehicle.

Front seats

Electric adjustments

Forwards-backwards (driver's seat)



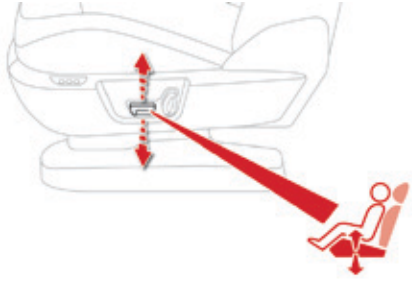
☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Seat backrest angle



☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

Seat cushion height and angle

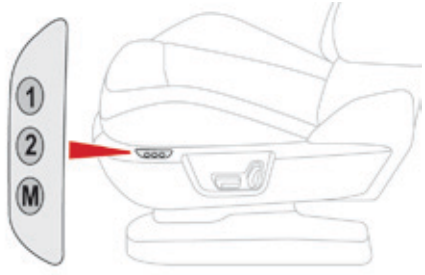


☞ Operate the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the desired height.
☞ Operate the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the desired angle.

i To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Storing driving positions



System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat.
Two positions can be stored and recalled, using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

Storing a position using buttons M / 1 / 2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.
Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

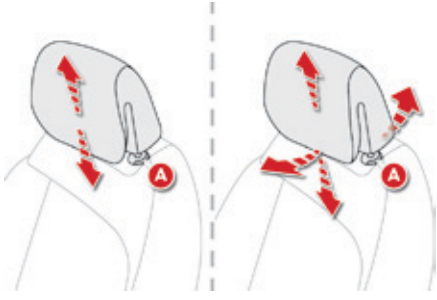
Recalling a stored position

- ☞ With the ignition on or the engine running, press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.
You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Additional adjustments

Head restraint height and angle (depending on version)



- To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the push the head restraint down at the same time.
- To adjust the angle of the head restraint, tilt its lower part forwards or backwards.

The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat backrest and press the lug **A** at the same time.

Relax head restraints



Depending on version, you can fold the sides to obtain a more comfortable position.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

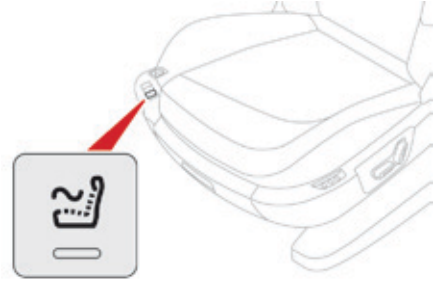
Electric lumbar adjustment



- Press the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

Massage function

Activation / Deactivation



☞ Press this button.

Its indicator lamp comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour.
During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes (6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes break).
After one hour, the function is deactivated, the indicator lamp goes off.
Deactivate the massage function by pressing this button; its indicator lamp goes off.

This function provides the front occupants with a lumbar massage. It only operates when the engine is running or in STOP mode of the Stop & Start system.

Adjustment of intensity

Press this button to select one of the two levels of massage intensity offered.

Electric leg rest

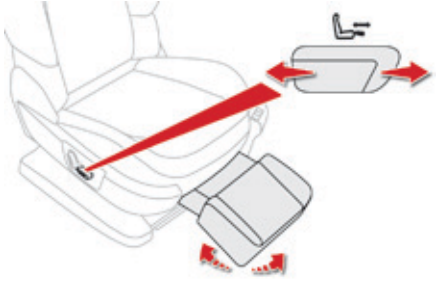
Manual passenger seat



☞ Press the front or rear part of the control to unfold or fold away the leg rest.

The movement stops when you release the control.

Electric passenger seat



☞ Push the control forwards or backwards to unfold or fold away the leg rest.

The movement stops when you release the control.

Before operating the leg rest, ensure that nothing could interfere with its movement.

Heated seats



☞ Use the adjustment thumbwheel to switch on and select the desired level of heating:
0: Off.
1: Low.
2: Medium.
3: High.

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

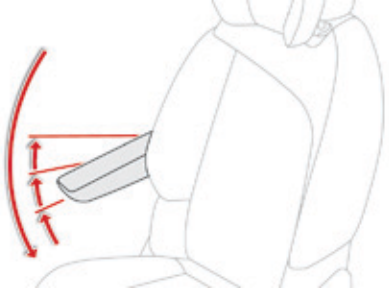
Do not use the function if the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the level of heating as soon as possible.
Once the seat and passenger compartment are at a comfortable temperature, you can switch off the function; reducing electric current consumption also reduces fuel consumption.

Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for those that do not have normal perception of heat (illness, taking medicines, ...).
There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.
Do not use the system:
- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:
- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Front armrest



Comfort system for the driver and front passenger.

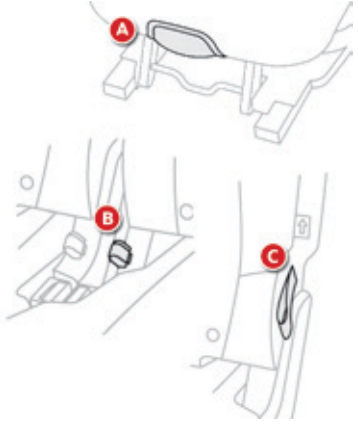
Height adjustment

- ☞ Fully lower the armrest.
- ☞ Raise it to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ Once in the high position, lift to release it and return it to the low position.

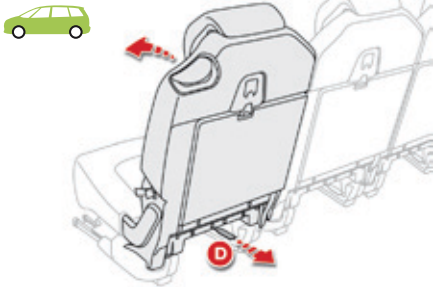
Second-row seats

The 3 seats in the 2nd row are independent of each other and are all the same width. Their backrests can be folded to vary the load space in the boot.





A. Forwards and backwards adjustment: raise the lever.
B. Backrest angle adjustment: pull the strap and guide the seat to the rear.
C. Folding the seat: pull the strap up to release the seat.
D. Folding the seat from the rear: pull the strap then push the seat forward.



Forwards-backwards adjustment



☞ Raise the lever **A**, located at the front of the seat cushion, and adjust the seat to the desired position.

"Comfort" position



☞ Pull the strap **B** and guide the seat to the rear.

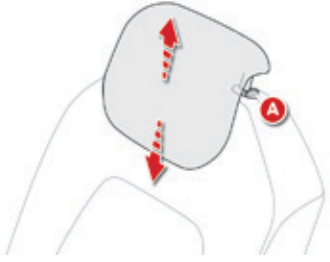
The backrest reclines and the seat base pivots slightly.

Returning the seat to the initial position

☞ Pull the strap **B** and guide the seat forward.

! Supervise any movements of seats when made by children.

Rear head restraints



The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions:

- high, position for use,
- low, stowed position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press lug **A** then the head restraint.

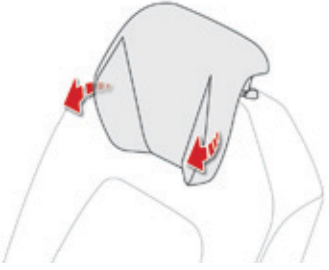
To remove it:

- move the head restraint to the high position,
- press lug **A** pulling the head restraint upwards at the same time.

To refit it:

- engage the head restraint rods in the apertures, keeping them in line with the seat backrest.

Relax head restraints



Depending on version, the sides can be folded to obtain a more comfortable position.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

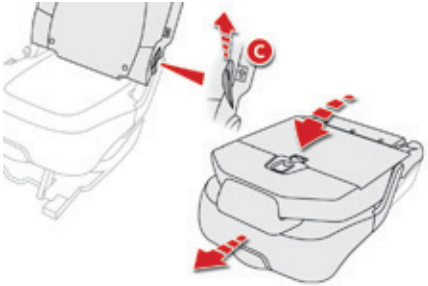
Flat floor

Each seat can be folded onto the floor to vary the space available in the boot.

Folding a seat

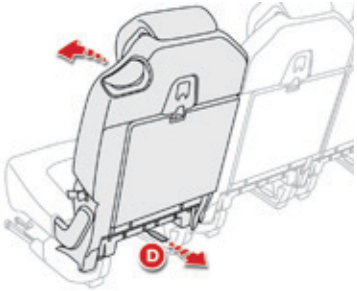
☞ Place the seats in the fully back position.

From the outside



☞ Pull firmly upwards on strap **C**, as indicated by the arrow, to release the seat; keep pulling until the seat is fully folded.
Push the seat backrest gently forwards so that the backrest folds onto the seat cushion. The assembly lowers onto the floor.

From the boot, when loading for example



You can fold the second-row seats from the boot, after first folding the third-row seats.

☞ Pull on the strap **D** to release the seat in question then push forwards lightly on the backrest.
To avoid any damage to the mechanism, the strap **D** unclips if too much force is applied. Simply clip it in place again for the system to be operational again.

Repositioning a seat

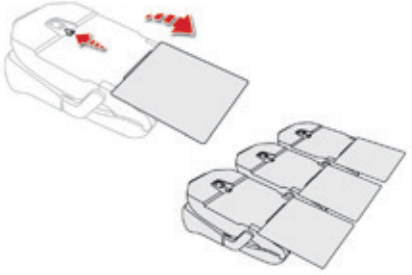


☞ If necessary, straighten the continuity panels for the seats in the 2nd row and lock them in place.

☞ Raise the backrest and push it rearwards until it locks in position

! Before operating the rear seats, check that the outer rear seat belts are not loose, to avoid damaging them. The centre belt must be stowed. Fix the tongues of the three belts to their anchorage points.

Continuity panels



Each seat has a continuity panel at the bottom of the backrest, that once unfolded:

- provides a continuous load surface in the boot, whatever the position of the seats,
- avoids objects sliding under the seats in the 2nd row.

! These continuity panels are not designed to support a weight greater than 30 kg.

Releasing / locking the continuity panels

☞ Before unfolding the continuity panels, check that the seats in the 2nd row are fully back.

☞ Slide the continuity panel latch upwards to release.

☞ Straighten the continuity panel, then slide the latch downwards to lock it.

Access to the third-row seats

Access to the third-row seats is via the outer second-row seats.

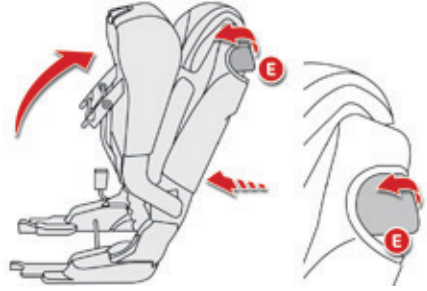


- ☞ Pull the lever **E**. The seat is released and the seat cushion comes up against the backrest.
- ☞ Hold the lever **E** in the raised position, pushing forwards. The whole seat slides towards the front seat.

Space becomes free behind the seat, the third-row passengers can get to their seats.

i Before operating the seats, ensure that the tables on the backs of the first-row seats are folded away.

Leaving the vehicle from the third-row seats



- ☞ Lift the lever **E**. The seat is released and the seat cushion comes up against the backrest.
- ☞ Push the seat backrest, still holding the lever **E** in the raised position.

Repositioning a seat, from the outside, with the door open

If there are passengers seated in the third row:

- ☞ manually return the assembly as far as possible rearwards; the seat does not return to the fully back position, so as to retain legroom for the third-row passengers,
- ☞ fold the seat cushion until it locks.

Ensure that there is no object on or under the seat that you want to move.

! In the event of a failure of this system (lever **E**), the passengers in the third row can also leave the vehicle after first folding the backrests of the second-row seats using the strap **D**.
Do not allow children to operate the seats without supervision.

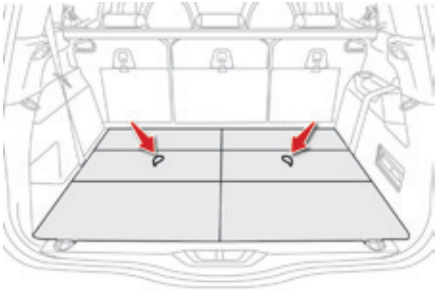
Third-row seats

Concertina boards

Two rigid concertina boards, which cannot be separated from the vehicle, cover the 2 third-row seats, when these are in the folded position.

i Each of the two floor panels can support a load of 100 kg.

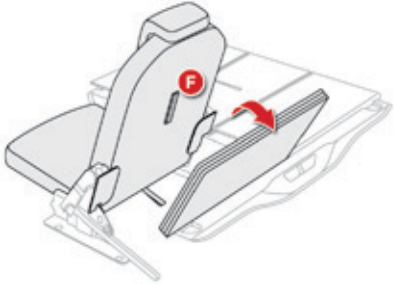
Folding the concertina boards



Pull on the control, the 3 sections of the board will fold like a concertina.
When the third-row seats are upright, these concertina boards can be left either:
- flat behind the seats,
- in the vertical position,

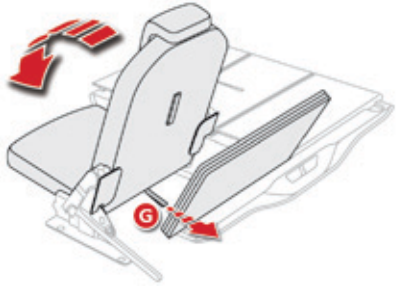
thereby leaving a storage area available.

Repositioning the seats



- ☞ Remove the luggage net.
  For more information on the luggage net and the **Interior fittings**, refer to the corresponding section.
- ☞ Return the second-row continuity panels to their initial position and lock them in place.
- ☞ Fold the concertina boards and position them vertically.
- ☞ Pull on the strap **F** located behind the seat backrest. The backrest pivots rearwards, pulling the seat base with it. The seat locks in the open position.

Folding the seats



- Return the second-row continuity panels to their initial position and lock them.
- Lower the head restraints.
- Correctly position the concertina board vertically behind the seat.
- Check that the seat belts for the 3rd row seats are correctly fixed to the loops and are not folded.
- Pull the strap **G**, located at the bottom of the seat backrest. The seat unlocks.
- Next push the backrest gently forwards. The backrest pivots, folding onto the seat base. The seat base then folds into the stowage area provided for that purpose.
- Reposition the concertina boards over the folded seats.

! Before moving the third-row seats, return the rigid floor plates of the second-row seats to the upright position and lock them in place.
Do not try to fold a third-row seat that has not first had the backrest fully locked in place.
Do not leave objects either on or underneath the seat bases of the third-row seats when you are folding them.
Do not leave your hand on the control **G** as you fold the seats, as you risk trapping your fingers.
Do not allow children to operate the seats without supervision.

Seat modularity and configurations

Examples of configurations



5 seats



3 seats



4 seats

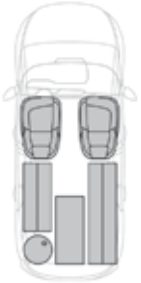


Maximum loadspace

Examples of seat configurations



7 seats



Maximum loadspace



4 seats



6 seats



5 seats

For easy modification of your interior vehicle space, all the rear seats can be individually folded: onto the second-row floor, and under the third-row floor. You can then have a load floor that is continuous up to the front seat backrests.
The seats must only be folded and unfolded with the vehicle stationary.

Steering wheel adjustment



- **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Ventilation

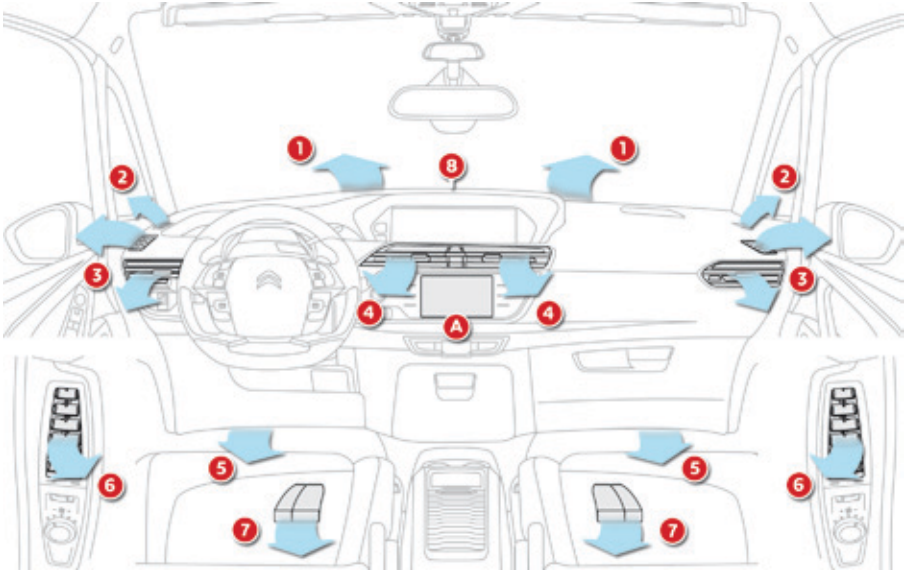
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).



Control panel

The controls of this system are accessible in the **Air conditioning** menu of the touch screen **A**.
The demisting/defrosting controls for the windscreen and rear screen are located on the left of the touch screen.

Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.
2. Front quarter light demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
   Adjustable side air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets for the front footwells.
6. Side vents for the 2nd row.
7. Air outlets for 2nd row footwells.
8. Sunshine sensor.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

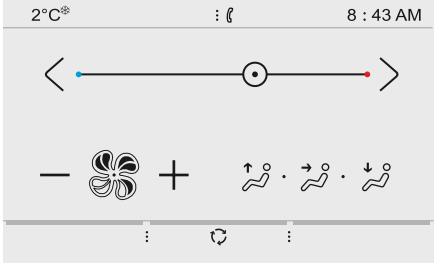
The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.
To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Heating

The heating system works only when the engine is running.
Press the button for the **Air conditioning** menu to display the page for the system controls.



Temperature adjustment



☞ Press one of the arrows, or move the cursor from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your wishes.

Air flow adjustment



☞ Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the speed of the booster fan.

The symbol for air flow (a fan) fills progressively according to the air flow setting made.
By reducing the air flow to the minimum, you are stopping ventilation of the passenger compartment.

> Avoid driving for too long without ventilation (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Air distribution adjustment

The air distribution in the passenger compartment can be adjusted by combining the use of several vents.



Windscreen.



Footwells.



Centre and side vents.

The air distribution can be varied by using more than one button: illumination of the button indicates that air is distributed in that direction; no illumination indicates that air is not distributed in that direction.
Pressing all three buttons gives an even distribution in the passenger compartment.

Air intake / Air recirculation

The recirculation of interior air prevents exterior odours and smoke entering the passenger compartment.
This function also allows the air in the passenger compartment to be heated or cooled more quickly.

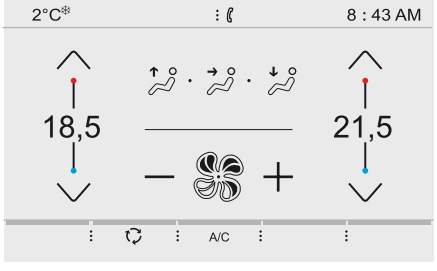


☞ Press this button to select the exterior air intake mode to the passenger compartment.

When the indicator lamp is off, air is taken from outside the vehicle. When the indicator lamp is on, the air inside the passenger compartment is recirculated and the intake of air from outside the vehicle is inhibited.

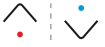
Dual-zone manual air conditioning with temperature regulation

The air conditioning system only works with the engine running.
The temperature at the nozzles and vents is regulated by the system according to the temperature in the passenger compartment and the temperature setting.
Press the button for the **Air conditioning** menu to display the system controls page.



Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature independently.



Press one of these buttons to reduce (blue) or increase (red) the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

It is recommended that a difference between left and right of more than 3 should be avoided.

Air flow adjustment



Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the speed of the air booster fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) fills progressively according to the quantity of air wanted.
By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

Avoid driving for too long without ventilation (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Air distribution adjustment

These buttons are used to arrange the distribution of air in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.



Windscreen.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.

The air distribution can be adapted by using several buttons: illumination of the button confirms the presence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated, the button going off indicates the absence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated.
For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be used simultaneously.

Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. The recirculation of interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

i This function allows hot or cold air to be delivered selectively and more quickly.



☞ Press this button to choose how air enters the passenger compartment.

When the indicator lamp is off, air is taken from outside the vehicle. When the indicator lamp is on, air is recirculated from inside the vehicle, the intake for air outside the vehicle is inhibited.

i Avoid driving for too long with recirculation of interior air (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed. It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on

A/C ☞ Press this button to activate the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air conditioning function is activated.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

Switching off

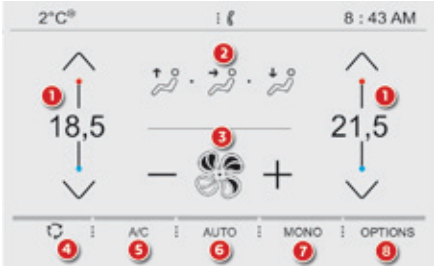
A/C ☞ Press this button again to deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp is off, the air conditioning function is deactivated.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

This air conditioning system operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with the ignition on. Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.

Press the button for the **Air conditioning** menu to display the controls for the air conditioning system.



1. Driver/passenger side temperature adjustment.
2. Air distribution adjustment.
3. Air flow adjustment.
4. Air intake / air recirculation.
5. Air conditioning On / Off.
6. Automatic mode.
7. Mono function.
8. Access to the secondary page.

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature independently.



☞ Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the value.

It is recommended that you avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

Air flow adjustment



☞ Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the speed of the booster fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively in relation to the quantity of air requested.
By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.
"- - -" is displayed.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Air distribution adjustment

The air distribution in the passenger compartment can be adjusted by combining the use of several vents.



Windscreen.



Footwells.



Centre and side vents.

The air distribution can be varied by using more than one button: illumination of the button indicates that air is distributed in that direction; no illumination indicates that air is not distributed in that direction.
In AUTO mode, all three buttons are off.

Air conditioning On/Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate efficiently in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It allows you:
- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- in winter, above 3 °C, to improve demisting.

Switching on

A/C ☞ Press this button to switch on the air conditioning.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air conditioning system is on.
The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow is set to off.

Switching off

A/C ☞ Press this button again to switch off the air conditioning.

When the indicator lamp is off, the air conditioning system is off.

Air intake/Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air avoids misting of the windscreen and side windows.
Air recirculation prevents exterior odours and smoke from entering the passenger compartment.
This function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.



☞ Press this button to choose the mode for air entry to the passenger compartment.

When the indicator lamp is off, the intake of exterior air is active.
When the indicator lamp is on, air recirculation is activated, the intake of exterior air is inhibited.

! Avoid prolonged operation of the air recirculation function (risk of misting and of deterioration of the air quality).

Automatic comfort programme

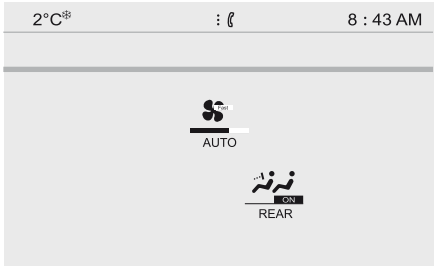
AUTO ☞ Press this button to activate or deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp in the button is on, the air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level selected.
You can always choose to modify a setting manually. In this case the indicator lamp in the button is off.

☞ Press this button again to activate the automatic comfort programme again.

It is possible to modulate the intensity of the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of the mode settings offered in the secondary page of the **Air conditioning** menu.

OPTIONS ☞ Press this button to go to the secondary page.



To change the current setting, press the button to display the different modes in turn:

"SOFT": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

"NORMAL": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

"FAST": provides strong and effective air flow.

This setting is associated with AUTO mode only. However, on deactivation of AUTO mode, the last setting remains on.
Changing the setting does not reactivate AUTO mode if deactivated.

i In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the system has warmed up, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach more quickly the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference.

"Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger's side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).

In the **Air conditioning** menu:

MONO ☞ Press this button to activate / deactivate the "Mono" function.

The function is deactivated automatically when the passenger uses their temperature setting buttons.

"Rear" function

This function gives rear passengers access to the adjustment controls and allows:

- the distribution of air conditioned air to the vents for the 2nd row of seats,
- the distribution of ambient air to the vents for the 3rd row of seats.

From the secondary page of the **Air conditioning** menu:

☞ Press this button to activate / deactivate the "Rear" function.

Settings for passengers in the 2nd row of seats



☞ Turn the upper knob to open or close the rear vent.

☞ Turn the lower knob to reduce (to the left) or increase (to the right) the air flow.

Settings for passengers in the 3rd row of seats



- Press the vent cover.
- Adjust the flow of air to the two vents using the four-position knob (off, low, medium, high).
- Direct the vent by turning the cover.

Ventilation with ignition on function

With the ignition on, you can use the ventilation system and have access to the **Air conditioning** menu to adjust the air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment. This function is available for a few minutes, depending on the state of charge of the battery of your vehicle.

This function does not activate the air conditioning.
You can make use of the residual heat in the engine to warm the passenger compartment using the temperature setting buttons.

Front demist - defrost



☞ Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

☞ To switch it off press this button again or adjust the setting for air flow or distribution. The indicator lamp goes off.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Rear screen demist - defrost

Switching on

☞ Press this button to demist/ defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors.

The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again.

The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

Switch off the heating of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as you judge it possible, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

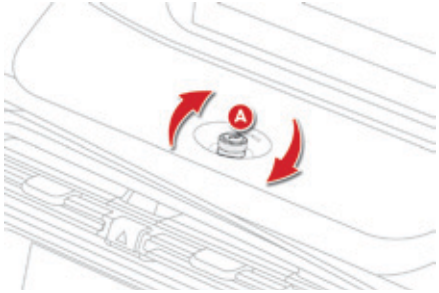
i The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

Scented air freshener

Allows a fragrance to be distributed in the passenger compartment via the central air vents.

The air freshener contains an empty cartridge when your vehicle is delivered. You therefore need to insert a cartridge in order to use the air freshener.

Adjustment of flow

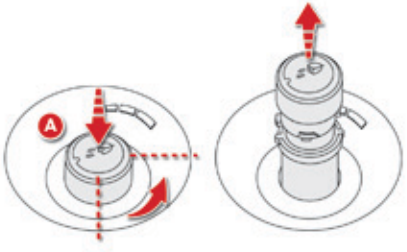


- Rotate the button **A** to adjust (to the left to reduce, to the right to increase) or stop (maximum to the left) the flow of scented air.

The central air vents have to be open.

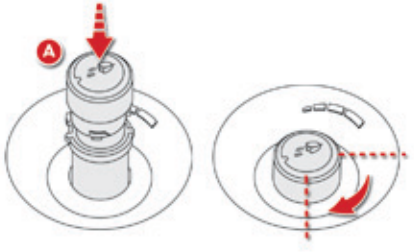
A cartridge lasts on average 3 months, based on one hour's usage per day.

To remove the air freshener



- Press the button **A**, rotating it a quarter turn to the left as far as it will go.
- Remove the air freshener from the dashboard.
- Replace the cartridge (see "Replacing a cartridge").

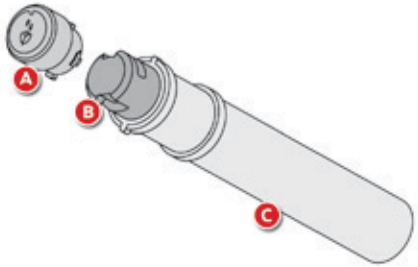
To insert the air freshener



After fitting or changing a cartridge:

- place the air freshener back in its housing.
- rotate it a quarter turn to the right.

Replacing a cartridge

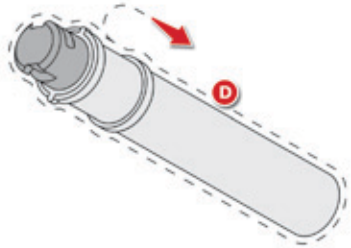


The recharge for the air freshener consists of a cartridge **B** and its sealed container **C**.

- ☞ Remove the protective film **D**.
- ☞ Place the head of the cartridge **B** on the button **A** of the air freshener.
- ☞ Rotate it a quarter turn to lock it on the button and remove the container.
- ☞ Insert the air freshener into its housing.

You can change cartridges at any time, keeping the used cartridges in their original containers.

Air freshener button

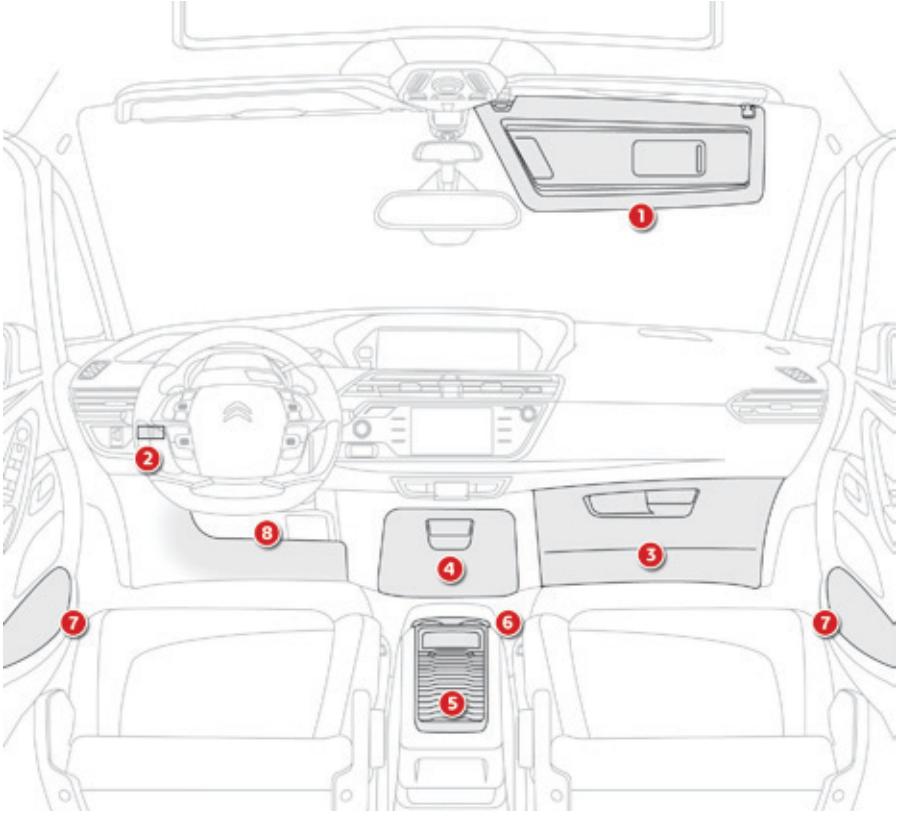


The air freshener button **A** is independent of the cartridge. Cartridges are supplied without the air freshener button **A**.
The button of the air freshener **A** can only be fitted to the centre of the dashboard with a cartridge attached.
Therefore always keep the air freshener button **A** and one cartridge.
Replacement cartridges are available, depending on country, either on the Internet site or from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Locations are provided in the glove box for storing cartridges and containers.

! For safety, use only cartridges that are provided for this purpose.
Retain the containers for storing used cartridges.
Do not recharge or dismantle the cartridges.
Keep them out of reach of children and animals.
Avoid all contact with the skin and with the eyes.
In the event of ingestion, consult a doctor and show them the product packaging or label.
Do not install or remove a cartridge while you are driving.

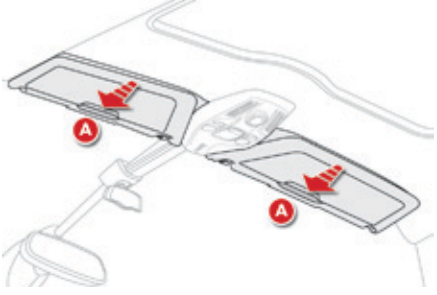
Front fittings

1. Sun visor.
2. Card holder.
3. Glove box.
4. Central storage.
   It contains the power and audio sockets.
5. Raised console with closed storage, low console or removable console.
6. Cup holder.
7. Door pockets.
8. Storage below the steering wheel. (Handbook pack).



Sliding sun visor

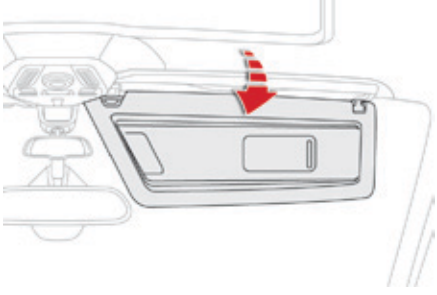
Sliding blinds



Sliding blinds are provided for your protection against bright sunlight. They can be adjusted manually.

☞ Slide the blind to the desired position by pushing at **A**.

Sun visor rails



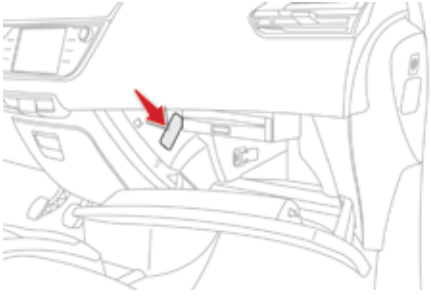
The blinds are extended on the sun visor rails. Fold the visor downwards, to protect against dazzle to the face.

If dazzle is coming from the side windows, detach the visor from its housing above the centre of the windscreen and pivot it to the side.

The visors are fitted with a locking system on their central housing when the blind is reeled in. To detach the visor or to reposition it, it must be in a vertical position.

i Do not attach or suspend heavy objects on the slide rail of the sun blind.

Glove box



Depending on equipment, it may contain a CD player.

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

It is illuminated when the lid is opened.

It is cooled by a manual directional ventilation nozzle.

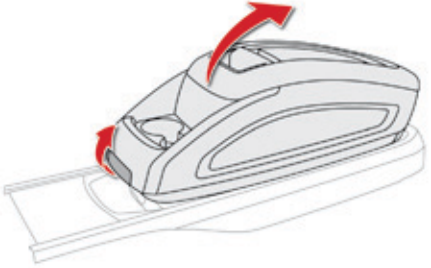
It is connected directly to your vehicle's air conditioning system and is supplied with cool air whatever the temperature setting for the passenger compartment.

The refrigeration of your glove box operates only with the engine running and the air conditioning on.

Removable console

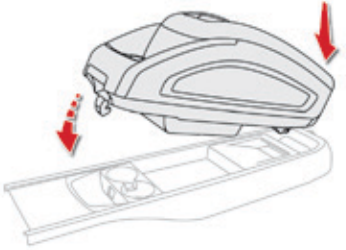
The removable console is a portable storage space secured to the lower centre console.
It has a sliding lid, an open storage space and two cup holders.

Releasing the removable console



- Raise the locking control located at the front of the console.
- With one hand, lift the front part of the console.
- With the other hand, grasp the rear part to release the removable console.

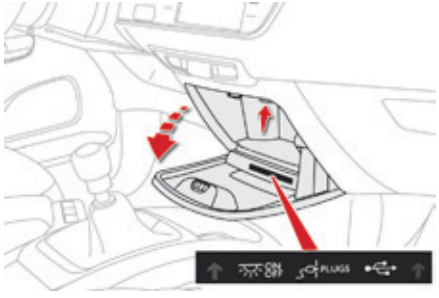
Refitting the removable console



- Carry out these operations in reverse order. Ensure that the console has locked into place.

When not fixed to its carrier, the removable console should be stowed in the boot. It could become a projectile in the event of a sudden stop or violent impact.

Central storage compartment



☞ To open the central storage compartment, pull the grip and lower the cover.

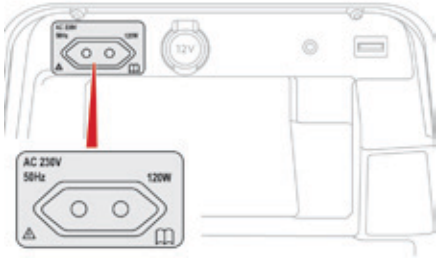
It is illuminated on opening.

A button on the upper part allows the lighting to be deactivated.

Depending on equipment, it may contain:

- one 230 V socket,
- one 12 V socket,
- one USB port,
- one auxiliary socket

230 V / 50 Hz power socket



A 230 V / 50 Hz socket (maximum power: 120 W) is fitted in the central storage box.

To use the socket:

☞ open the central storage box,

☞ check that the warning lamp is on green,

☞ connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, baby food warmer...).

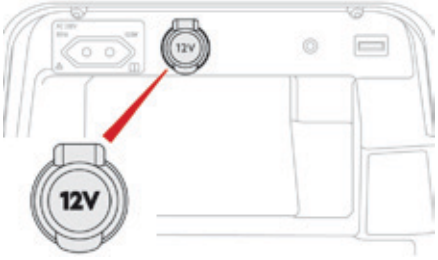
This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode with Stop & Start.

In the event of a fault with the socket, the green warning lamp flashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension or multi-way connector).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload...), the current supply to the socket will be cut off; the green warning lamp goes off.

12 V socket

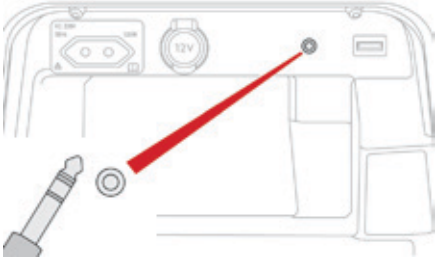


☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

! Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (otherwise there is a risk of damaging your portable device).

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

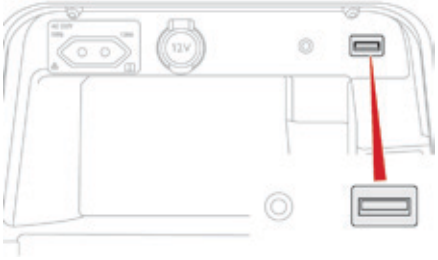
Auxiliary socket



The auxiliary socket is located in the central storage box.
It permits the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type, to listen to your music files using the vehicle's speakers.
The management of the files is done using your portable device.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio and telematics" supplement.

USB port

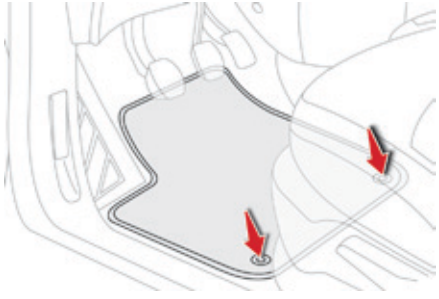


The USB port is located in the central storage compartment.
It allows the connection of a portable device or a USB memory stick.
It plays the audio files transmitted to your audio system and heard via the vehicle's speakers.
You can manage these files using the steering mounted or touch screen controls.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically. A message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.
The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

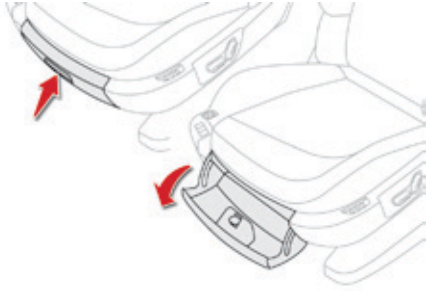
! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

Storage boxes

Depending on equipment, storage boxes are located under the front seats.

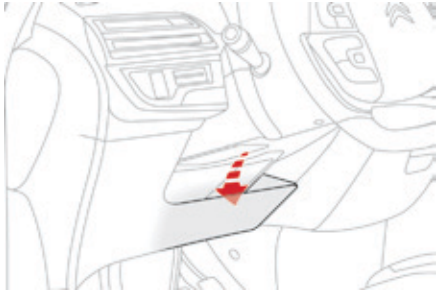
Opening



- ☞ Raise the grip and lower the storage box cover.

! Do not place heavy objects in the boxes.

Storage below the steering wheel



This storage compartment below the steering wheel is intended for stowing your vehicle's handbook pack.

Rear fittings

Aircraft-style rear tables

Rear table stowed



Rear table opened



These tables, fitted to the backs of the front seats, incorporate a cup-holder recess **A** and a retaining strap **B**.

- ☞ Pull the table downwards to open.
- ☞ To stow the table, raise it until the latch locks.

For safety reasons, these tables collapse downwards if excessive pressure is exerted on them.

Individual reading lamps

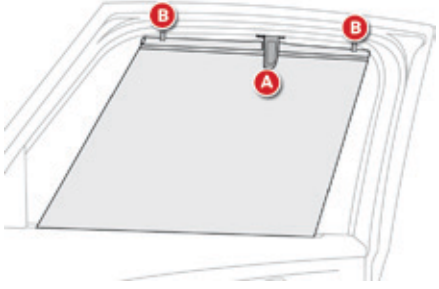


Reading lamps **C** may be fitted in the front seat backrests, behind the tables. They illuminate the surface of the tables without disturbing the other passengers.

They can be used only while the table is down.

- ☞ Press the "On/Off" button to turn the lamp on or off.

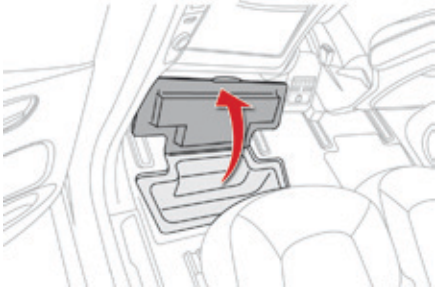
Side blinds



Fitted to the windows for the 2nd row seats, they protect the passenger compartment from the sun's rays.

☞ Pull the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hook **B**.

Storage wells



There are two storage wells under the rear passengers' feet.
To open them, lift the cover at the cut-out.

12 V socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

! Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (otherwise there is a risk of damaging your portable device).

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Rear multimedia



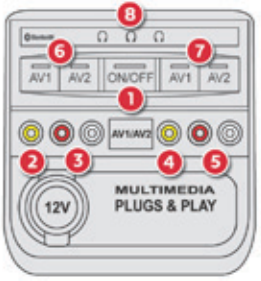
This multimedia system allows rear passengers to connect one or two external portable systems (audio or video player, games consoles, DVD player...). The sound is played through two Bluetooth® wireless headphone sets, while the video content is displayed in two 7-inch screens built into the backs of the front seat head restraints.

i This system operates only with the engine running.

Description

The pack includes:

- the connection and control panel fitted on the rear face of the centre console,
- two 7-inch screens built into the front head restraints (with protective covers),
- two wireless Bluetooth technology headphone sets with rechargeable batteries,
- a 12 V charger with two outlets allowing the simultaneous charging of two headphones.



1. Power switch
2. AV1 video input (yellow RCA socket)
3. Stereo audio input A (red and white RCA sockets)
4. AV2 video input (yellow RCA socket)
5. Stereo audio input B (red and white RCA sockets)
6. Selection of display in the left-hand screen (AV1 or AV2)
7. Selection of display in the right-hand screen (AV1 or AV2)
8. Connection indicator lamps for the Bluetooth audio headphones (blue)

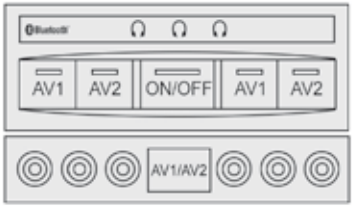


1. Screen power switch
2. Display adjustment buttons



Each headphone set has a switch, a connection indicator lamp (blue) and a channel selector (A or B).

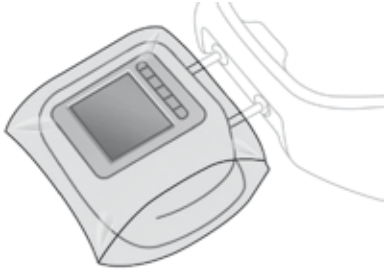
Operation



- With the engine running, connect your portable system to the RCA connectors (e.g. with AV1 on the left).
- Press the switch on the control panel, the indicator lamp comes on and the AV1 indicator lamps come on.
- Make a long press on the switch, its indicator lamp flashes in blue.
- Make a long press on the control panel switch, the pairing with the headphone set is complete when the blue indicator lamps on the headphones and on the system are on continuously.
- Repeat the operation for the other headphone set.
- Press the screen switch if you have a video source.
- Start playing your portable system.

- It is possible at any time to modify the source for the video display (using button **6** or **7** on the control panel: the indicator lamp for the source selected comes on) as well as the audio channel (using the selector on the headphones).

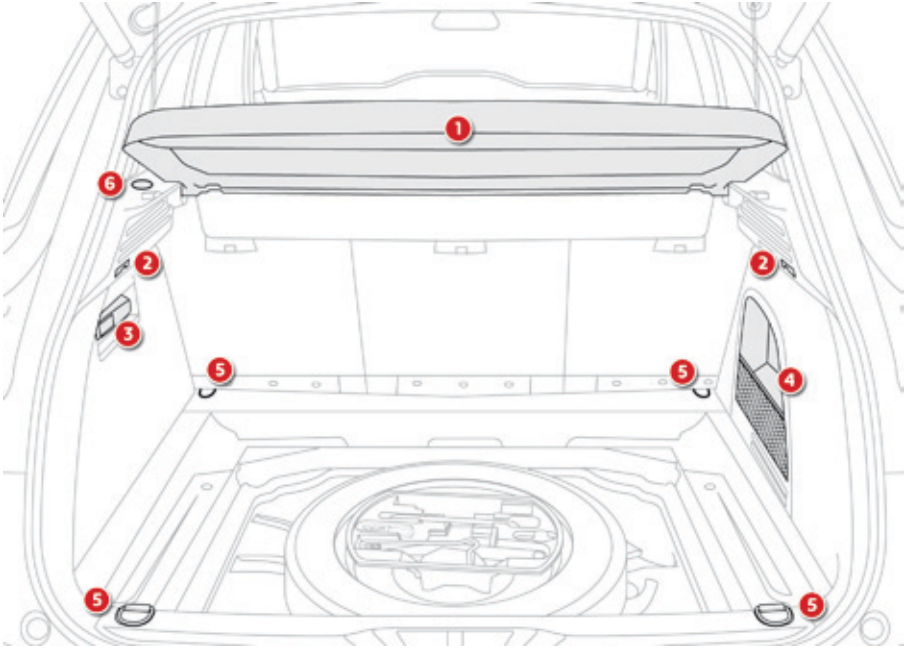
The Multimedia system allows the connection of a third Bluetooth headphone set, not supplied.



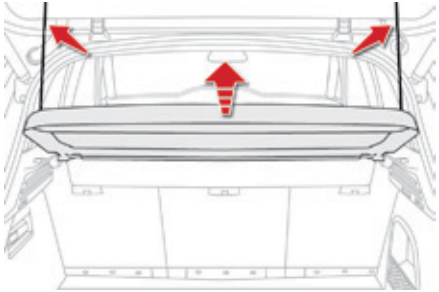
If your seat is in the table position, position a cover to avoid damaging the screen.
These covers also conceal each screen.

Boot fittings

1. Rear parcel shelf
   (see details on a following page)
2. Hooks
   (see details on a following page)
3. Torch
   (see details on a following page)
4. Storage net
5. Lashing eyes
6. 12 V socket (maximum power: 120 Watts)



Rear parcel shelf



To remove the shelf:

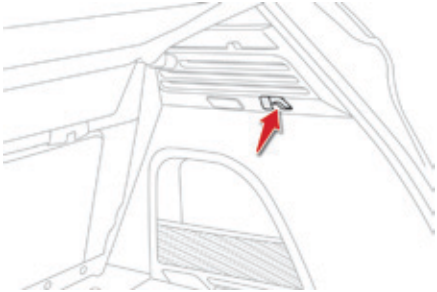
☞ unhook the two cords,

☞ raise the shelf slightly, then remove it.

There are several options for storing the shelf:

- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat at the base of the boot.

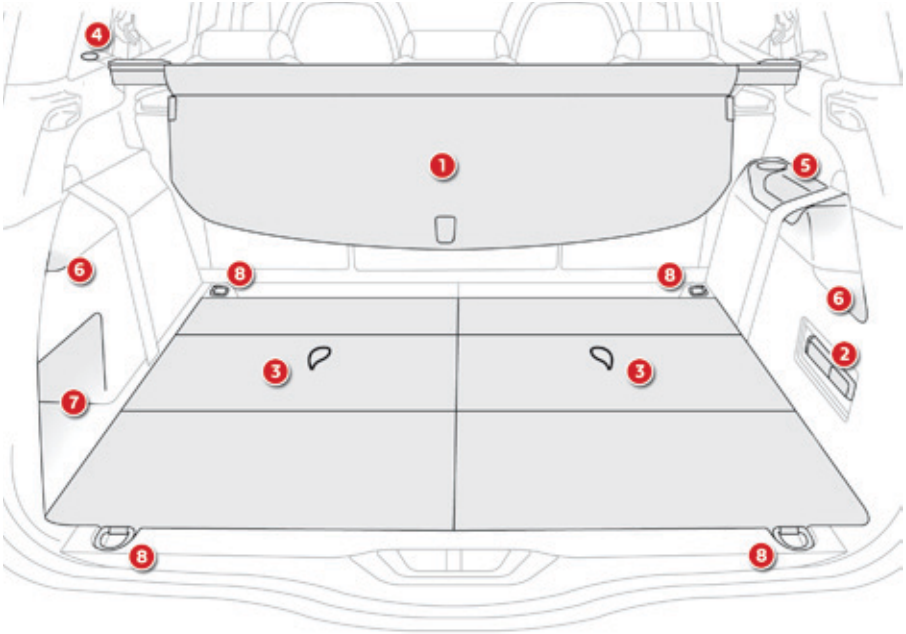
Hooks



The hooks can be used to secure shopping bags.

Boot fittings

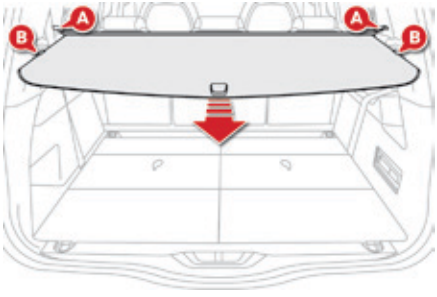
1. Luggage cover blind
   (see details on a following page)
2. Torch
   (see details on a following page)
3. Concertina boards
4. 12 V socket (maximum power: 120 Watts)
5. Armrest with cup holder and storage space
6. Location for stowing the luggage cover blind
7. Open storage
8. Lower lashing eyes



Luggage cover roller

In the 5-seat configuration, it is installed behind the second-row seats, with the third-row seats folded away.
In the 7-seat configuration, it is stowed behind the third row seats.

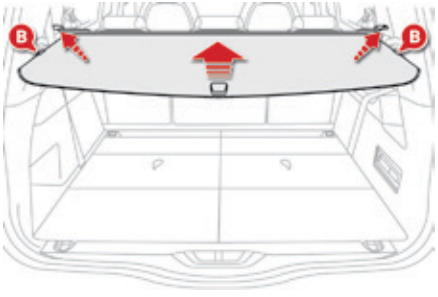
Installation



- Position the left and right hand ends of the roller in cut-out **A**, with the mobile flap at the front.
- Pull out the blind until it reaches the boot pillars.
- Insert the guides of the blind into the rails on the pillars **B**.

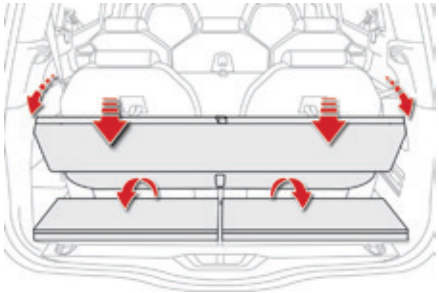
The mobile flap allows passengers in the second row to place their seats in the "comfort" position.

Removal



- Disengage the roller guides from the rails in the pillars **B**.
- Guide the blind as it is reeled in.
- Unlock the roller by pressing one of the grips located at the ends of the reel support.

Stowing behind the 3rd row seats



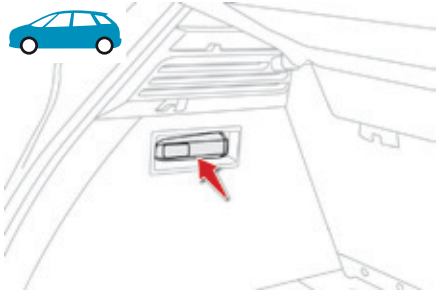
- ☞ Ensure that the 3rd row seats are folded.
- ☞ Fold the first two concertina boards.
- ☞ Install the roller in the space above the arm rest, one side after the other, inclining it slightly.
- ☞ Slide the roller as far as it will go, up to the cut-outs provided at the back of the boot, with the two flaps directed downwards.
- ☞ Unfold the third row seats.

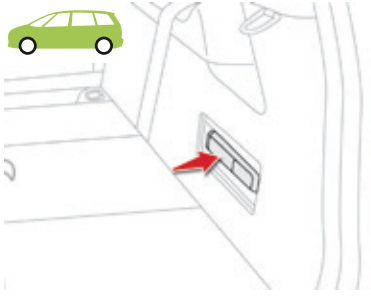
The folded concertina boards can be positioned horizontally or vertically.

To fold the 3rd row seats with the roller stowed at the rear, it is necessary to raise the concertina boards in order to allow access to the seat locking controls (red straps).

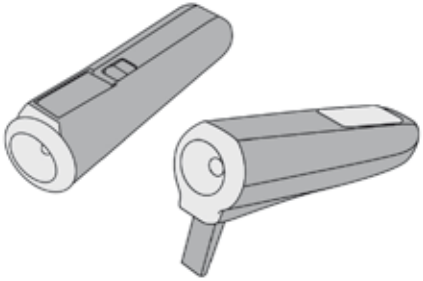
Torch

This is a removable lamp, fitted in the side of the boot, which can be used to illuminate the boot or as a torch.





Operation



This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.
It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.

! Observe the polarities when fitting the batteries.
Never replace the rechargeable batteries with single-use batteries.

Use

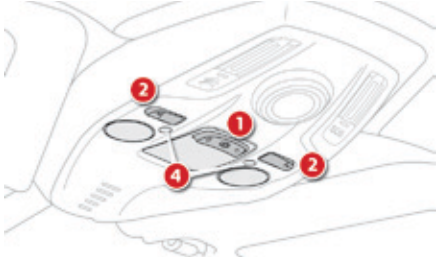
- ☞ Extract the torch from its location by pulling it from the front.
- ☞ Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

Storing

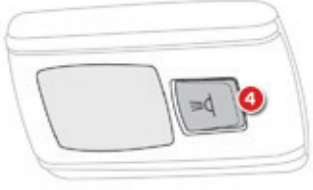
- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the rear.
If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

i If the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

Courtesy lamps







1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps
3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear map reading lamps

Front - rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the electronic key is removed from the reader,
- when opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is used, in order to locate your vehicle.

Illumination of the door mirror spot lamps is only possible if the courtesy lamp is in this position.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

Front - rear map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

! Take care to avoid leaving anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

i With the "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on



At night, the illumination of the dashboard, centre console and courtesy lamp comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.
The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

The interior mood lighting can be activated or deactivated in the **Driving** menu, by selecting the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Comfort**" and "**Mood lighting**".

Footwell lighting



The soft lighting provided by the footwell lamps improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on

Its operation is identical to that of the courtesy lamps. The lamps come on when one of the doors is opened.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Risk of fire!
As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, do not park or run the engine over areas where inflammable substances and materials are present: grass, leaves, etc.

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

When towing

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

For more information on **Weights**, refer to the corresponding section.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

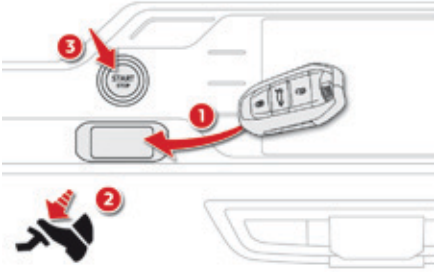
☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on **Adjusting the headlamp beam height**, refer to the corresponding section.

The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Starting-switching off the engine with the electronic key

Starting the engine



- Place the gear selector lever at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox or neutral with a manual gearbox.
- Insert the electronic key in the reader.
- Press the brake pedal for vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or fully declutch for vehicles with a manual gearbox.

START STOP

- Briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button.
  The steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less immediately (see the advice for Diesel versions).

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message appears in the instrument panel screen. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering; a message warns you when this is needed.

For **Diesel vehicles**, in temperatures below zero the engine will not start until the preheater warning lamp has gone off.
If this warning lamp comes on after pressing "START/STOP", you should hold the brake or clutch pedal down until the warning lamp goes off and do not press the START/STOP button again before the engine starts.

Switching off the engine

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- Place the gear selector lever at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or neutral with a manual gearbox.



- Briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button
  The engine stops and the steering column locks.
- Remove the electronic key from the reader.

If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Emergency stop





In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without any conditions. To do this, press the "START/STOP" button for about three seconds.
In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Electronic key left in the reader

If the electronic key is left in the reader, on opening the driver's door a message appears to warn you.

Starting-switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

Starting the engine

The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" electronic key in the recognition zone is essential.
It is not necessary to place the electronic key in the back-up reader.



- With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral.
- Press the clutch pedal fully.

or

- With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector on **P** or **N**.
- Press the brake pedal fully.

START STOP

- Briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.
See the advice below for Diesel versions.

If the electronic key is not detected, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into the recognition zone so that the engine can be started.
In the event of a problem, refer to the section "Key not detected / Back-up starting".

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message appears in the instrument panel screen.
In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering; a message warns you when this is needed.

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle while the engine is running.

Diesel vehicles

In temperatures below zero, the engine will not start until the preheater warning lamp has gone off.
If this warning lamp comes on after pressing "**START/STOP**", you should hold the brake or clutch pedal down until the warning lamp goes off and do not press the "**START/STOP**" button again before the engine starts.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ Place the gear selector at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or neutral with a manual gearbox.

START STOP

- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine stops and the steering column locks.

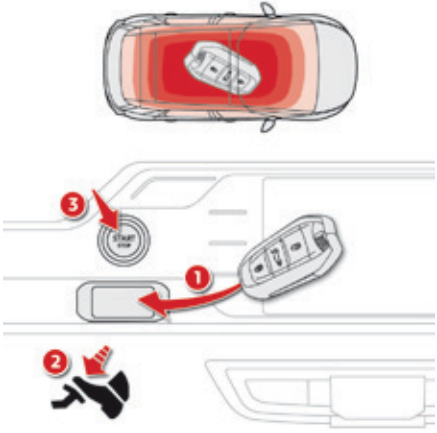
i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

! Do not leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Key not detected

Back-up starting



When the electronic key is in the recognition zone and, after pressing the "START/STOP" button, the engine does not start:

- ☞ Place the gear selector at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox or neutral for vehicles with a manual gearbox.
- ☞ Insert the electronic key in the back-up reader.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal on vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or fully declutch with a manual gearbox.
- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button.

The engine starts.

Back-up switch off



When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.



☞ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off



In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions.
Press the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds.

In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Switching the ignition on (without starting)

With the electronic key in the reader or the Keyless Entry and Starting key inside the vehicle, pressing the "START/STOP" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.



- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
- ☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and so allow the vehicle to be locked.

i With the ignition on, the system goes into energy economy mode when necessary to maintain the state of charge of the battery.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.
In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by a message in the instrument panel screen. In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a CITROËN dealer if required.

Electric parking brake



The system provides, in automatic operation, the application of the parking brake on switching off the engine and release as the vehicle moves off.
The driver can take over at any time to apply or release the parking brake, by operating the control lever:

- by briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply the brake,
- by briefly **pushing** the control lever, while pressing the foot brake, to release.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

! The technology adopted for the electric parking brake does not allow the fitment of 15 inch wheels.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and in the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake.

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.
The indicator lamp in the control lever flashes during manual application or release.
After the parking brake has been applied, the simultaneous flashing of the two indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever alerts you to the need to fully secure your vehicle by engaging a gear (with a manual gearbox) or by placing the gear selector in position **P** with an automatic gearbox, or by fitting a chock to one of the wheels. (E.g. parking on a very steep slope or on a slope with a low battery).

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake no longer works. As a safety measure, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear (with a manual gearbox) or placing a chock at one of the wheels.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Label on door panel



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed, not flashing.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

! When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear (with a manual gearbox) or place the gear selector at position **P** with an automatic gearbox.
For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake:

☞ press the brake pedal,

☞ while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

i If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary: briefly pull the control lever.

Confirmation of the command is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic operation

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.
The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- Manual gearbox: fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1st or reverse gear; press the accelerator pedal and let up the clutch pedal.
- Automatic gearbox: select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press the accelerator.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

! When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

i With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off** by pressing the START/STOP button.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

! With the engine stalled or in STOP mode of Stop & Start, automatic application does not take place.

i In automatic mode, you can manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Special cases

In some situations, you may need to operate the parking brake manually.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.



Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions, it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied (risk of freezing).
To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or fit a chock to one of the wheels.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the parking brake released

☞ Switch off the engine.
Illumination of the warning lamps in the instrument panel and control lever confirm application of the parking brake,

☞ Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.

☞ Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake.



The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

☞ Switch off the ignition.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, such as very cold weather or towing (caravan, recovery), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
- ☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
- ☞ Release the control lever.
- ☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ☞ Pull the control lever in the apply direction for 2 seconds.



Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

From this point the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation.
Reactivation of automatic operation is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off.

Emergency braking

! The emergency braking should only be used in an exceptional situation.

In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc.) a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled. It is interrupted if the control lever is released.
The ABS and DSC systems provide stability of the vehicle during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed.



If a failure of the ABS and DSC systems occurs, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

Operating faults

The various alert situations are described in the table below.
In the event of a fault with the electric parking brake it is recommended that you contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and this warning lamp: SERVICE	- Automatic release is not available. - If you attempt an automatic release, a help message is displayed on acceleration when the parking brake is applied, prompting you to use manual release.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps: SERVICE 	- Secondary braking does not have full power. - If automatic release is not available, a help message is displayed on acceleration when the parking brake is applied, prompting you to use manual release.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps: SERVICE 	- Automatic application is not available: use the control lever. - The electric parking brake can only be used manually. - If automatic release is also not available, a help message is displayed on acceleration when the parking brake is applied, prompting you to use manual release.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps: SERVICE 	- If manual application and release do not work, the control lever is faulty. - The automatic functions must be used in all circumstances: they are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever. - You can no longer immobilise the vehicle with the engine running.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps: 	The parking brake is faulty, the manual and automatic functions may not operate. **When stationary**, to immobilise your vehicle: - Pull and hold the control lever for about 7 to 15 seconds, until the warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. If this procedure does not work, you should make your vehicle safe: - Park on a level surface. - Engage a gear with a manual gearbox, or place the gear selector at position **P** with an automatic gearbox. - If possible, fit a wheel chock. Call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and these warning lamps: 	- The parking brake does not have its full performance to securely hold the vehicle in all situations. You should make your vehicle safe: - Park on a level surface. - Engage a gear with a manual gearbox, or place the gear selector at position **P** with an automatic gearbox. - If possible, fit a wheel chock. Call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. The flashing of the **P** warning lamps on starting the vehicle indicates that the parking brake is not correctly applied. As soon as possible, stop the vehicle and try to completely release the parking brake, using the control lever, with your foot on the brake pedal.
Display of the message "**Battery fault**" and this warning lamp: 	- The state of charge of the battery is very low and requires immobilisation of the vehicle in a safe place: engage a gear with a manual gearbox or fit a chock to one of the wheels. - Once the battery is completely discharged, the controls do not operate: to release the parking brake, call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

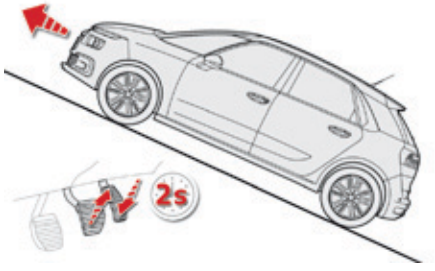
Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when moving off on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
This system only operates when:
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain conditions of slope are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

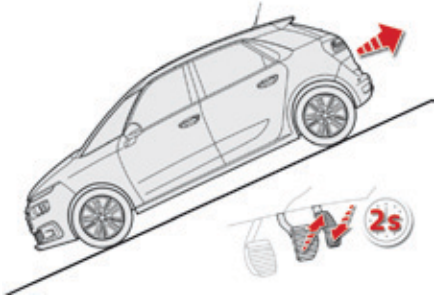
The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

! Do not get out of the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase. If you have to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp (and the warning lamp **P** in the lever of the electric parking brake) are on fixed (not flashing).

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal:
- provided you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in position **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.

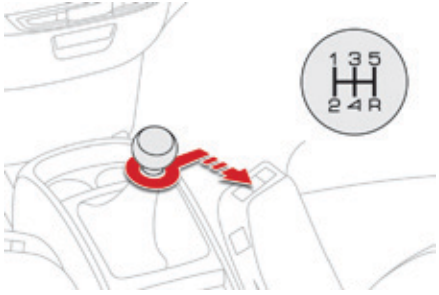
Operating fault



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an alert message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



- With the clutch pedal fully down, place the gear lever in neutral.
- Push the gear lever to the right then backwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

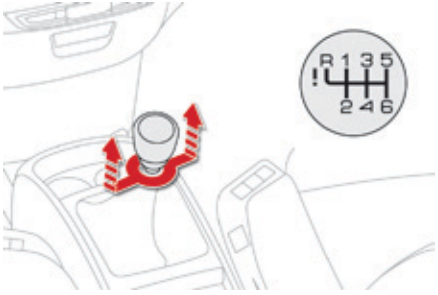
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

- Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this advice may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engagement of 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear



- Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox

This gearbox offers two driving modes.

- **automated** mode for automatic management of the gears by the gearbox, without any action on the part of the driver,
- **manual** mode for sequential gear changing by the driver using the steering mounted paddles.

It is possible to change from one mode to the other at any time.
With the automated mode, you can temporarily take control of the gear changes at any time.

Gear selector lever



P. Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake applied or released.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.
- Reversing, vehicle stationary and engine at idle.

N. Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake applied.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

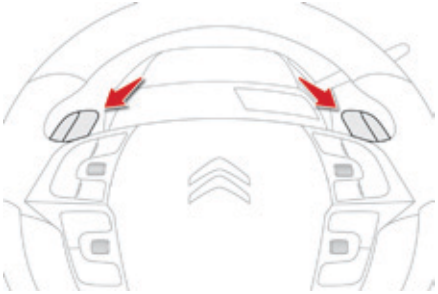
M. Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.

To come out of position **P**, move the gear selector to the right to the desired position, while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.

To select position **P**, move the gear selector to the highest position (towards **R**), then push it forwards and then to the left.
Only engage it when the vehicle is at a complete stop. In this position, the front wheels are locked. Ensure that the gear selector is correctly positioned.

To move the gear selector, switch on the ignition or start the engine.
If the battery is not sufficiently charged, it is not possible to move the gear selector.

Steering mounted control paddles



+. Control paddle for changing up, to the right of the steering wheel.

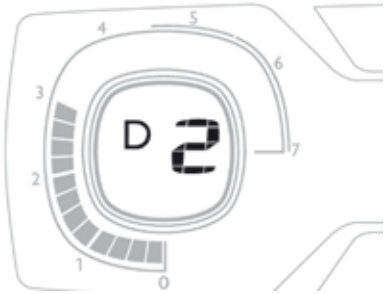
☞ Pull the "**+**" paddle towards you to change up.

-. Control paddle for changing down, to the left of the steering wheel.

☞ Pull the "**-**" paddle towards you to change down.

i The steering mounted control paddles cannot be used to select neutral or to select or come out of reverse.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the gear selector, the symbol corresponding to its position is displayed in the instrument panel.

P. Park.

R. Reverse.

N. Neutral.

D. Drive (automatic operation).

1 to 6. Gears engaged in manual operation.

-. Invalid value in manual operation.

Moving off

☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N**.

☞ Start the engine.

i If these conditions are not met, there is an audible signal accompanied by a message.

i If **P** is displayed in the instrument panel, although the gear selector is in another position, place the gear selector in position **P** to be able to start the engine.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.

☞ Select automated mode (position **D**), manual mode (position **M**) or reverse (position **R**).

i If you do not press the brake pedal to come out of position **P**, this warning lamp or symbol appears in the instrument panel, accompanied by the message "Place automatic gearbox in position P", flashing of **P** in the instrument panel and an audible signal.

- ☞ Check that the symbol displayed in the instrument panel agrees with the position of the selector.
- ☞ Progressively release the brake pedal.
- ☞ If the parking brake is released, the vehicle moves off.
  If the parking brake is applied and automatic operation is activated, accelerate away.

! If the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time. Braking and acceleration should be done only with the right foot. Pressing both pedals together risks damaging the gearbox.

i When the engine is running at idle, brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle will move even if the accelerator is not pressed.

! Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out a maintenance operation with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

i Never select position **N** when driving. If position **N** is engaged in error when moving, allow the engine to idle, then engage position **D** to accelerate.

i Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is at a complete stop with the brake applied.
When you want to engage reverse, to avoid jolts, do not accelerate immediately after engaging **R**.
Changing into position **R** is accompanied by an audible signal.

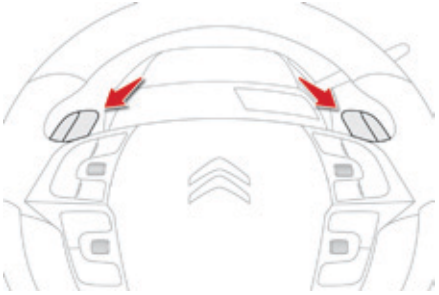
Automated mode

D ☞ Select position **D**.

D and the gear engaged are displayed in the instrument panel.
The gearbox operates in auto-active mode, without any action from the driver. It continuously selects the most appropriate gear according to the following conditions:
- optimisation of fuel consumption,
- driving style,
- relief of the road,
- vehicle load.

For maximum acceleration, without touching the gear selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically and maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically for more effective engine braking.
When you take your foot off the accelerator pedal suddenly, the gearbox does not change up, so as to improve safety.

Temporary manual control of the gears



You can temporarily take control of gear changes using the **"+"** and **"-"** steering mounted control paddles. If the engine speed allows, the instruction to change gear is acted on.
This function allows you to anticipate certain situations such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend.
After a few moments with no action on the control paddles, the gearbox manages the gears automatically again.

Manual mode

☞ Select position **M**.
☞ Use the **"+"** and **"-"** steering mounted control paddles to change gear.

The gears engaged are displayed successively in the instrument panel.
When stationary or at very low speed, the gearbox automatically engages **1st** gear.
In manual mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator pedal when changing gear.
The change from one gear to another is only effected if the conditions of vehicle speed and engine speed allow; otherwise the automatic laws of operation are imposed temporarily.
If the engine speed is too high or too low, the display of the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the new gear engaged is displayed.

Invalid value in manual operation

This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

i It is possible to change mode at any time, by moving the gear selector from **D** to **M** or the other way round.

Parking the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can change to position **P** or **N** to be in neutral.
In either case, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.
If the lever is not in position **P**, on opening the driver's door or approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition there is an audible signal and a message appears:

☞ move the gear selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Whenever parking, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, if automatic operation has been deactivated.

In all circumstances, ensure that the gear selector is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

In the event of a battery failure, use the chock to immobilise the vehicle.

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a fault with the gearbox, the service warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

In this case the gearbox goes into back-up mode and stays in 3rd gear. You may then feel a noticeable jolt when going from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This jolt does not present any risk to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) while also observing legal speed limits.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Gear shift indicator

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.
With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

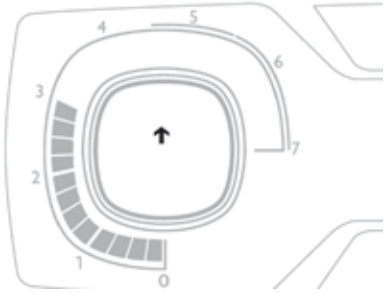
Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears.
You can follow this instruction without going through the intermediate gears.

On BlueHDi Diesel 135 and 150 versions with manual gearbox, in certain driving conditions the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode with Stop & Start). In this case, **N** is displayed in the instrument panel.

The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. This is because the configuration of the road, traffic density and safety remain important factors in the choice of the best gear.
The gear shift indicator system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.
On vehicles with manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the recommended gear.

The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (gradient, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).
The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear.
- changing down.

This function cannot be deactivated.

Stop & Start

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically.

- **With a manual gearbox,** at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), or vehicle stationary (with PureTech 130, THP 165 and BlueHDi 100, 115 and 120 versions), when you place the gear lever in neutral, and you release the clutch pedal,
- **With an automatic gearbox,** with the vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector lever at position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the START/STOP button.

For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
The Stop & Start system does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering...

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the START/STOP button.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the START/STOP button,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is selected,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

This indicator lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically.

- **With a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector at position **D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox (2 mph (3 km/h) with PureTech 130, THP 165 and BlueHDi 100, 115 and 120 versions) and 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

In this case this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Manual deactivation/ reactivation

In some circumstances, such as the need to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be necessary to deactivate the Stop & Start system.
The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is on.
If the engine is in STOP mode, it then restarts.
The Stop & Start system is automatically reactivated every time the ignition is switched on.

Deactivation of Stop & Start is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select "Stop & Start" to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp.

Select "Stop & Start" again to reactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp.

! Using the dynamic cruise control deactivates the Stop & Start system.

Opening the bonnet
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.



Driving on flooded roads
Before driving through a flooded road, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, this indicator lamp flashes for a few moments then comes on continuously, accompanied by a message.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall.
All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.
Depending on version, an alert message may also be displayed, asking you to place the gear selector lever at position **N** and put your foot on the brake pedal.
It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the "START/STOP" button.

The Stop & Start system requires a battery of advanced technology and special characteristics.
All work on this type of battery must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

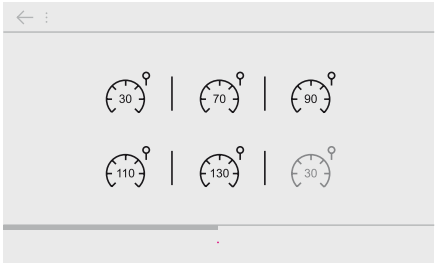
Memorising speeds

This function allows speeds to be saved, which can then be offered to set the two systems: the speed limiter (to limit the speed of the vehicle) or the cruise control (for a vehicle cruising speed).
You can memorise up to six speed settings for each of the two systems. By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

Memorising

This function is accessible in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

☞ Select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Speed settings**".



☞ Select the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings.

☞ Press the button corresponding to the speed setting you want to modify.

☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.

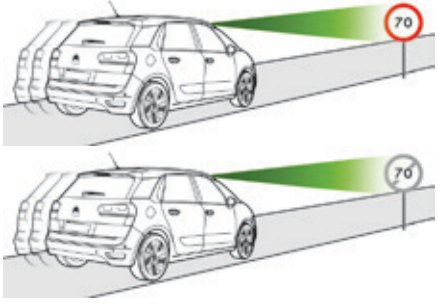
! As a safety measure, the driver must carry out these operations when stationary.

Speed limit recognition

This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.
Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.
For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

Principles



Using a camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs.
The system also takes account of information on speed limits from the navigation system mapping.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving assistance system and does not always display speed limits correctly.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.
The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic.
It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera.

Display in the instrument panel



1. Indication of the speed limit.
   or
2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.

Display of the speed



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



MEM The driver can, if desired, adjust the speed of the vehicle according to the information given by the system.

It is necessary to update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate information on speed limits from the system.

Activation / Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.
Select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Security**" and "**Recommended speed display**".

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.
The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

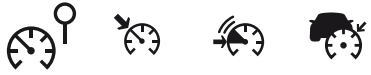
- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- trailer, caravan,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers,
- ...

The system may be disrupted or not work at all in the following situations:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area ahead of the camera dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

Memorising the speed setting

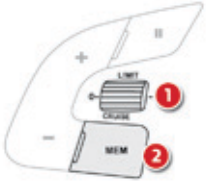
This memorisation is in addition to the display of **Speed limit recognition**.



The driver can choose to adapt the speed setting to the speed limit suggested, by pressing the memorisation button at the speed limiter controls, with the standard cruise control, the dynamic cruise control or the dynamic cruise control with Stop function.
This speed setting then replaces the previous speed setting for the speed limiter and/or cruise control.

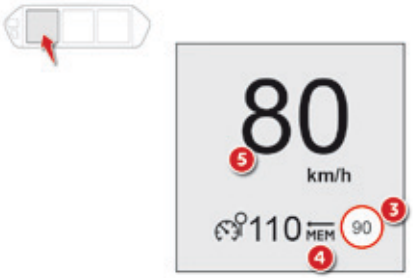
> For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control**, **Dynamic cruise control** or **Dynamic cruise control with Stop function**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Display in the instrument panel



3. Speed limiter indication.
4. Memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed



☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. Speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.



On detection of a speed limit sign, the system displays the speed limit value and offers to make it a new speed setting.
"**MEM**" flashes in the screen for a few seconds.

i If the difference between the speed setting and speed displayed by the recognition system is less than 6 mph (10 km/h), the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.



MEM ☞ Make an **initial** press on this button to request saving of the speed suggested.



MEM ☞ Press this button **again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.

After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

Speed limiter - "LIMIT"

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

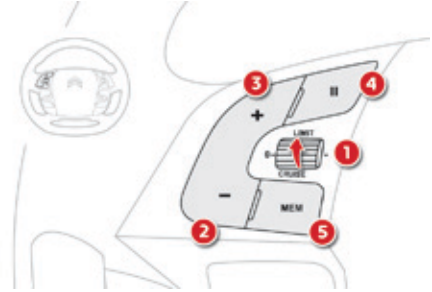
Once the programmed speed limit is reached, additional pressure on the accelerator pedal has no effect.

Switching on the speed limiter requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).
The speed limiter is **paused** by operation of the control.
The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly beyond the point of resistance.
To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal until the vehicle returns to the programmed speed limit.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

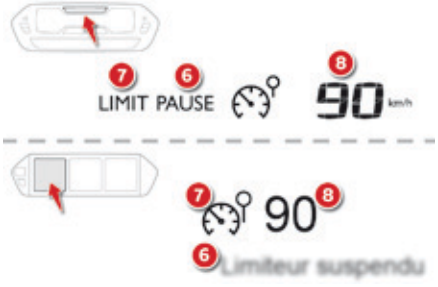
Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Lower programmed speed.
3. Raise programmed speed.
4. Speed limiter on / pause.
5. Display the list of memorised speeds or, Accept the speed proposed by the speed limit recognition.

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.
For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

Displays in the instrument panel



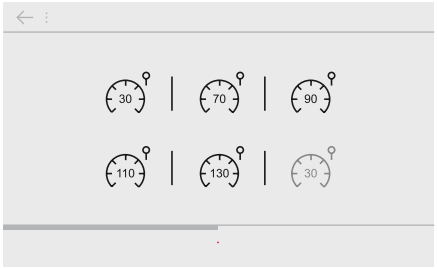
6. Speed limiter on / pause indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Speed limiter setting.

Switching on / Pause



- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (Pause).
- ☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4**, if the speed displayed is suitable (by default, the last speed programmed).
- ☞ You can temporarily stop the speed limiter by pressing button **4** again: the display confirms that it has been stopped (Pause).

Adjusting the speed limiter setting



You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
Once the function is selected, you can modify the speed setting by:

- using buttons **2** and **3**, raising or lowering the speed displayed:
  - ☞ by successive short presses, to modify by + or - 1 mph (km/h),
  - ☞ by a maintained press, to modify in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).
- pressing button **5**:
  - ☞ the six speeds memorised are displayed in the touch screen,
  - ☞ press the button corresponding to the limit speed chosen.

The value is displayed in the instrument panel. The selection screen closes after a few moments.

- by pressing button **5**, if your vehicle has speed limit recognition:
  - ☞ the speed to memorise is displayed in the instrument panel,
  - ☞ press button **5 again** to save the speed.

The value is then displayed in the instrument panel.
For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

☞ Press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**, to exceed the programmed speed limit.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.
An audible signal accompanies the flashing of the programmed speed when exceeding the speed is not due to an action by the driver (steep hill...).
As soon as the vehicle's speed returns to the programmed value, the limiter operates again: the display of the programmed speed becomes steady again.

Switching off

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"0"** position. The display of speed limiter information disappears.

Operating fault

Flashing of the dashes indicates a fault with the speed limiter.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! On sharp acceleration, as when descending a steep hill, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
The limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed programmed speed flashes.
An audible signal accompanies the flashing of the programmed speed when exceeding the speed is not due to an action by the driver.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

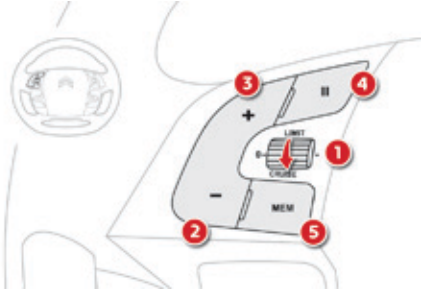
Cruise control - "CRUISE"

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

Switching on the cruise control requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
As well as engagement of:
- fourth gear or higher on a manual gearbox,
- second gear or higher in manual mode on an automatic gearbox,
- position **D** on an automatic gearbox.

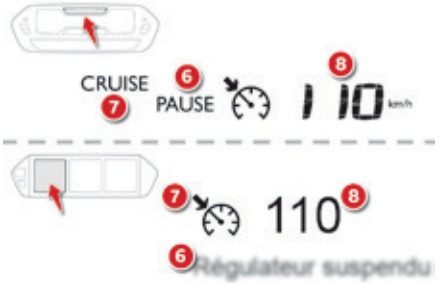
The system remains active after changing gear on vehicles with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start.
The cruise control is **paused** by pressing button **4** or the brake pedal or on triggering of the ESC system for safety reasons.
It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal.
To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal until the programmed cruise speed is reached again.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the programmed speed / Lower the programmed speed.
3. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the programmed speed / Raise the programmed speed.
4. Pause / resume cruise control.
5. Display the list of memorised speeds or, Accept the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

Displays in the instrument panel



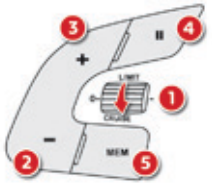
6. Cruise control pause / resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selection indication.
8. Speed setting.

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.
For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

The cruise control system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. You are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

Switching on



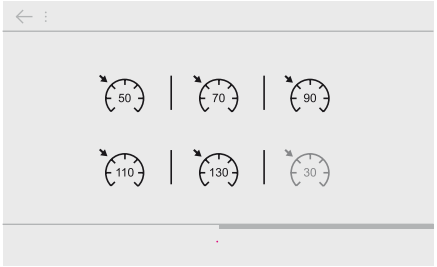
☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position: the cruise control mode is selected but is paused.
☞ Press button **2** or **3**: your vehicle's current speed becomes the cruise speed.

The cruise control is activated (ON).

Pause

You can pause the cruise control at any time by pressing button **4**: the screen confirms the pause.

Modification of the cruise speed (speed setting)



Once the cruise control is switched on, you can modify the cruising speed in one of the following ways:

- using buttons **2** or **3**:
  ☞ by successive short presses, to modify the speed by + or - 1 mph (km/h),
  ☞ by a long press, to modify the speed in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h),
- by pressing button **5**:
  ☞ the six memorised speeds are displayed in the touch screen,
  ☞ choose a value: it is displayed in the instrument panel.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.
The modification is then accepted.

- by pressing button **5**, if your vehicle has speed limit recognition:
  ☞ the speed to memorise is displayed in the instrument panel,
  ☞ press button **5 again** to save the speed.

The value is then displayed in the instrument panel.
For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

Exceeding the programmed speed

If the cruise speed setting is exceeded, the displayed speed flashes.
The display becomes steady again once the vehicle returns to the cruise speed setting.

Switching off

☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the **"0"** position. The display of information related to the cruise control disappears.

Operating fault

Flashing of the dashes indicates a fault with the cruise control.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.
Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.
On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
On steep climbs or when towing, the programmed speed may not be reached or maintained.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Dynamic cruise control

System that allows, in addition to maintaining your vehicle's speed at a value that you have defined, the inter-vehicle time you have selected between your vehicle and the one in front to be maintained.

Choice of the type of cruise control

The choice between the "dynamic" and "standard" cruise control is done in the **Driving** menu.



☞ Place the cruise control thumbwheel at "CRUISE".

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Active cruise control**" to activate or deactivate the dynamic cruise control.

For more information on the **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Principles of operation

Using a radar with a range of about 100 metres, located at the front of the vehicle, this system detects a vehicle running in front of your vehicle.
It automatically adapts the speed of the vehicle to that of the vehicle in front.
If the vehicle in front is running more slowly, the system progressively reduces the speed of your vehicle using just engine braking (as if the driver had pressed the "**-**" button).
If your vehicle is too close to or approaching the vehicle in front too quickly, the dynamic cruise control is automatically deactivated.
The driver is then alerted by an audible signal, accompanied by a message.

If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the dynamic cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.
If the driver operates a direction indicator to the left (left-hand drive) or the right (right-hand drive), to overtake a slower vehicle, the dynamic cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

General points

The dynamic cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires that the speed of the vehicle be between 25 and 90 mph (40 and 150 km/h), as well as the engagement of:

- fourth gear or higher with a manual gearbox,
- second gear or higher with an automatic gearbox in manual mode,
- position **D** with an automatic gearbox.

The system remains active after changing gear on vehicles with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start.

The dynamic cruise control can be **paused** manually or automatically:

- by pressing button **4**,
- by pressing the brake pedal,
- in the event of operation of the ESC, for safety reasons,
- in the event of operation of the electric parking brake control lever,
- when an inter-vehicle time threshold is reached (calculated according to the relative speeds of your vehicle and the vehicle in front and the inter-vehicle time setting chosen),
- when the distance between your vehicle and the one in front becomes too small,
- when the speed of the vehicle in front is too low,
- when the speed of your vehicle becomes too low.

The dynamic cruise control operates by day and at night, in fog or in moderate rainfall.

The system does not act on the braking system, but works only with engine braking. The regulation range is limited: there will no longer be any adjustment of speed if the difference between the programmed speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front becomes too high (18 mph (30 km/h)).

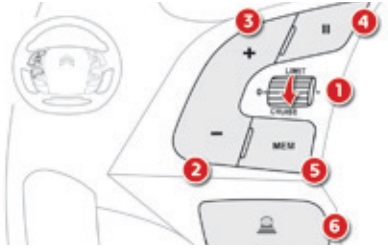
If the difference between the programmed speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front is too great, the speed cannot be adjusted: the cruise control is automatically deactivated.

If the speed setting selected is above 90 mph (150 km/h), the system switches to standard cruise control operation, with no adjustment of the inter-vehicle safe distance (a message appears in the instrument panel).

The dynamic cruise control cannot in any circumstances replace the observation of speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
It is recommended that you always keep your feet close to the pedals.

The inter-vehicle time setting is kept in memory on switching off the ignition.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise speed setting / Lower the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise speed setting / Raise the speed setting.
4. Pause / Resume the cruise control.
5. Display the list of memorised speeds, or Accept the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.
6. Select the inter-vehicle distance ("**Close**", "**Normal**", "**Distant**")

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and its memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Switching on

The **dynamic** cruise control must be selected in the **Driving** menu.

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position: cruise control mode is selected, but is paused.

☞ Press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

The cruise control is activated (ON).

By default, the inter-vehicle time is set at 2 seconds.

Otherwise, the last speed value set will be used for operation of the system.

i As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a speed setting close to the current speed of your vehicle.

Modification of the cruise control speed

- using buttons 2 or 3:
  - ☞ by successive short presses, to modify by steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h),
  - ☞ by a maintained press, to modify by steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).
- by pressing button **5**:
  - ☞ the six memorised speed settings are displayed in the touch screen,
  - ☞ choose a speed setting: it is displayed in the instrument panel.

The selection screen closes after a few moments. The modification is then taken into account.

- by pressing button **5**, if your vehicle has speed limit recognition:
  - ☞ the speed to memorise is displayed in the instrument panel,
  - ☞ press button **5 again** to save the speed.

The speed setting is then displayed in the instrument panel.

For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and its memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

Modification of the inter-vehicle distance

Press button **6** to choose a new inter-vehicle distance setting from the 3 available (**"Close"**, **"Normal"**, **"Distant"**).
This value remains in memory, whatever the state of the system.

In the event of the presence of a vehicle detected by the radar, if the speed selected is much higher than the speed of that vehicle, the system is not activated and the alert message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed until driving conditions are safe to allow activation of the system.

Exceeding the speed setting



It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.
Then simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.
If the speed setting is unintentionally exceeded, descending a steep hill for example, the speed setting in the instrument panel flashes as a warning.

Displays in the instrument panel



The information is grouped together in the instrument panel.

6. Indication of cruise control pause/resume.
7. Indication of selection of cruise control mode, or
   vehicle speed adjustment phase.
8. Cruise speed setting, or
   adjusted speed lower than the cruise setting.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and the messages displayed for the different driving situations.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Symbol	Display in the instrument panel	Associated message	Comments
			No vehicle detected: the system operates as a standard cruise control.
			Detection of a vehicle, at the limit of the range of the radar: the system operates as a standard cruise control.
		"SPEED ADJUSTED"	Detection of a vehicle that is too close or running at a speed lower than your vehicle's cruise speed setting. The system uses engine braking to slow your vehicle and then hold it at the speed of the vehicle in front so as to maintain the programmed inter-vehicle time. The regulation range is limited to a maximum difference of 20 mph (30 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed of the vehicle ahead.
		"SPEED ADJUSTED"	When the adjusted speed reaches the control limit (speed setting - 20 mph (30 km/h)), the adjusted speed flashes together with the speed setting, to signal that automatic deactivation of the system is imminent.
		"Cruise control paused"	If the system exceeds the limit of speed adjustment possible by the system and in the absence of any reaction by the driver (operation of the direction indicator, change of lane, reduction of the speed of the vehicle), the system is automatically paused. The display of the deactivation message is accompanied by an audible signal.

! When the dynamic cruise control is automatically paused, it can only be reactivated when safe conditions are restored. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed while reactivation is not possible.
When the conditions allow, it is recommended that the system be reactivated by pressing button **2** or **3**, which will make the current speed of your vehicle the new cruise speed setting, rather than by pressing button **4** (on/pause) which reactivates the system using the old cruise speed setting, which may be very different from the current speed of your vehicle.

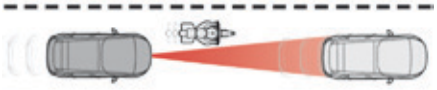
Limits of operation

The dynamic cruise control uses only engine braking to slow the vehicle. Consequently the vehicle loses speed slowly, as when releasing the accelerator pedal.
The system is paused automatically:
- if the vehicle in front slows down too much or too suddenly, and the driver does not brake,
- if a vehicle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front,
- if the system does not slow the vehicle enough to continue to maintain a safe distance, for example when descending a steep hill.

The regulation range is limited to a maximum difference of 20 mph (30 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front. Above this, the system goes into pause if a safe distance is not maintained.

i Severe weather conditions (very heavy rain, accumulations of snow in front of the radar) can interfere with the operation of the system, resulting in the display of the message "SYSTEM INACTIVE: Visibility reduced". The function remains unavailable until the message disappears.

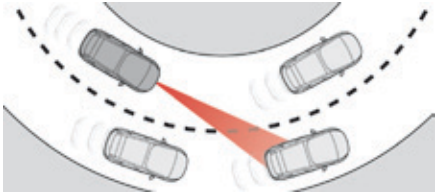
As the radar's field of view is quite narrow, it is possible that the system may not detect:



- vehicles of reduced width, such as motorcycles,



- vehicles not running in the middle of the lane,



- vehicles entering a corner,
- vehicles changing lane at the last moment.

The cruise control does not take account of:
- stationary vehicles,
- vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

! When the cruise control is working, take care if making a maintained press on one of the cruise control programmed speed modification buttons: this can lead to a very quick change in the speed of your vehicle.
Do not use the dynamic cruise control on slippery surfaces or in heavy traffic.
When descending a steep hill, the cruise control may not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
When ascending a steep hill or when towing, it might not be possible to attain or maintain the programmed speed.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- ensure that mats are secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

! The operation of the radar, located in the front bumper, may be disturbed by accumulations of dirt (dust, mud, etc.) or in certain weather conditions (snow, ice, etc.).
The message "SYSTEM INACTIVE: Visibility reduced" is displayed to signal that the system has been put into standby.
Clean the front bumper regularly.
When painting or touching up the paint on the front bumper, consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could hinder the operation of the radar.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the dynamic cruise control, you are alerted by an audible signal and the display of the message "Driving aid functions fault".
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dynamic cruise control with Stop function

This system provides two functions:

- automatic regulation of the speed of the vehicle to a value programmed by the driver,
- automatic adjustment of the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead, even to the point of stopping your vehicle completely.

It manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle by automatically acting on the engine and the braking system.

To do this, the system has a radar, located in the front bumper.

Principles

This system detects a vehicle running in front of your vehicle, travelling in the same direction.

It automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front, to maintain a constant distance.

If the vehicle in front is running more slowly, the system slows, or even stops your vehicle, using engine braking and the braking system.

If the braking system is used to decelerate the vehicle, the brake lamps come on.

If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.

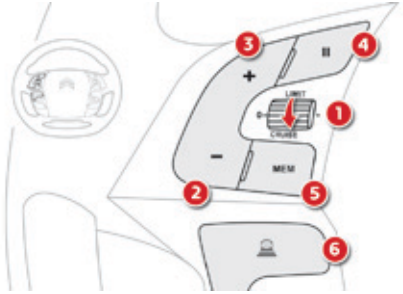
If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the dynamic cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

! The dynamic cruise control is a driving aid that cannot in any circumstances replace the observation of speed limits and safe distances, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

It is recommended that you always keep your feet close to the pedals.

The driver must be ready to take back control of their vehicle at any time, using the brake or accelerator pedal as appropriate.

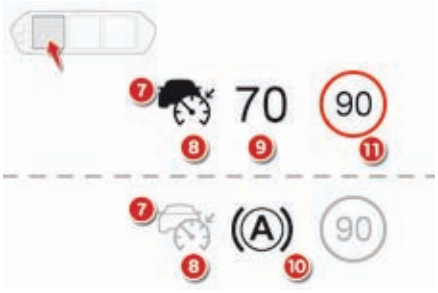
Steering mounted controls



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting / Lower the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting / Raise the speed setting.
4. Pause / Resume cruise control.
5. Use the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.
6. Display and adjust the inter-vehicle distance setting.

For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

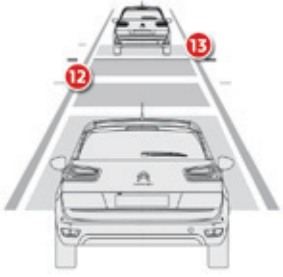
Displays in the instrument panel



7. Indication of the presence / absence of a target vehicle.
8. Indication of cruise control activation / deactivation.
9. Speed setting.
10. Indication that vehicle is held stationary.
11. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

If a vehicle is detected, the symbol **7** is filled with the colour associated with the cruise control mode. By default, the symbol **7** is empty.

In cruise control activated mode, the symbol **8** appears in green. By default, the symbol **8** appears in grey.



12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.
13. Position of the vehicle detected by the radar.

This information is visible in the instrument panel in "DRIVING" display mode.

Switching on



The cruise control is **switched on** manually, it requires a vehicle speed of between 18 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h).
An automatic gearbox must be in position **D** or **M**.

- ☞ With the ignition on, turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position: cruise control mode is selected, but not started (grey).
- ☞ Vehicle moving, press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

The cruise control is activated (green).
By default, the inter-vehicle distance is set at **"Normal"** (2 dashes).

Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.
Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

i When the cruise control is operating, Stop & Start is automatically deactivated.

Pause

The dynamic cruise control can be **paused** manually by:

- action by the driver:
  - on button **4**,
  - on the brake pedal,
  - on the electric parking brake control,
  - when changing from **D** to **N** with an automatic gearbox.
- or automatically, if operation of the ESC system is triggered for reasons of safety.

i Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused. The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system by exceeding 18 mph (30 km/h) and pressing button **2**, **3** or **4**.
If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a few minutes.

When the cruise control is paused, it can only be reactivated when all of the safety conditions are met. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed while reactivation is not possible.
Wait until the speed of the vehicle is close to the speed setting before reactivating the system - by pressing button **2** or **3** - in order to set your current speed as the new speed setting.

Modification of the speed setting



Engine running and cruise control on (green), you can modify the speed setting.

Modification from the current speed

- By successive short presses on button **2** or **3**, to raise or lower the setting in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h),
- By a maintained press on button **2** or **3**, to raise or lower the setting in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).

Take care: a prolonged press on button **2** or **3** will cause a very quick change in the speed of your vehicle.

Modification from the speed limit recognition system

- The speed to be memorised is displayed in the instrument panel.
- Make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is then displayed in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

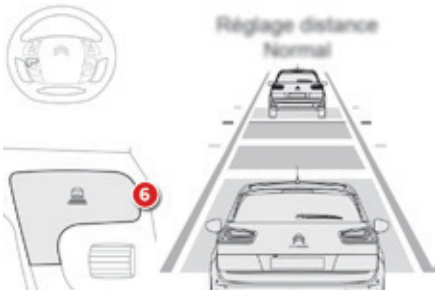
As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed setting close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Exceeding the programmed setting

It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control no longer manages the braking system during this period.
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

If the programmed speed setting is exceeded, the display of the speed setting disappears and a message "Cruise control suspended" is displayed until the accelerator pedal is released.

Modification of the inter-vehicle distance setting



Three predefined inter-vehicle distance settings are offered:
- **"Distant"** (3 dashes),
- **"Normal"** (2 dashes),
- **"Close"** (1 dash).

Engine running and cruise control selected (grey), you can modify the inter-vehicle distance setting:
- ☞ press button **6** to display the selection screen for inter-vehicle distance,
- ☞ press button **6** repeatedly to cycle through the predefined settings.

The selection screen closes after a few seconds.
The modification is then taken into account.

This setting remains in memory, whatever the state of the system and when the ignition is switched off.

Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all of the information available in the instrument panel, you must first select the "DRIVING" display mode.
The following table describes the alerts and the messages displayed for the different driving situations.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Indicator	Display	Associated message	Comment
	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control paused"	System paused. No vehicle detected.
	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control paused"	System paused. A vehicle has been detected.
70	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. No vehicle detected.
70	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. A vehicle has been detected.
or		"Cruise control suspended"	System activated. The driver has temporarily taken control of the vehicle by accelerating.

Indicator	Display	Associated message	Comment
70		"Take back control of the vehicle"	The driver should take control of the vehicle by accelerating or braking, depending on the circumstances.
70		"Take back control of the vehicle"	The system cannot manage the critical situation alone (emergency braking of the target vehicle, rapid insertion of another vehicle between the two vehicles). **The driver must immediately take back control of the vehicle.**
(70) or (70)		"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable"	The system refuses to activate the cruise control (speed outside the operating range, winding road).
(A) or (A)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected and the actual distance from the target vehicle	"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds)	The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised. The driver should accelerate to move off again. The cruise control remains paused until the driver reactivates it with the speed of the vehicle above 18 mph (30 km/h).

Limits of operation

The system cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

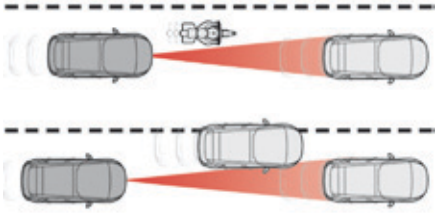
The radar does not detect:
- Pedestrians, cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).
- Vehicles crossing a junction.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Pausing of the cruise control is required in the following situations:
- Vehicles on a bend.
- Approaching a roundabout.
- Following a narrow vehicle.

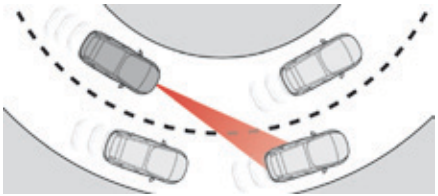
Reactivate the cruise control as soon as the conditions permit.

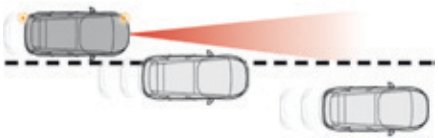
Cases in which the driver is encouraged to immediately take back control:
- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle ahead.
- Sharp cutting in of a vehicle between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

The system must not be activated:
- If the "space-saver" spare wheel is being used (depending on version).
- When towing.



! Be particularly vigilant in the presence of:
- Motorcycles.
- Vehicles which are not in the centre of the traffic lane.





! The cruise control operates by day and at night, in fog or moderate rainfall.
However, it is strongly recommended that you always keep a safe distance from vehicles ahead, depending on the driving conditions, the weather and the road surface.

Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and at an adequate safe distance.
Do not use the cruise control in urban areas, heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded surfaces, in snow, if the front bumper is damaged or if the brake lamps are faulty.
In certain circumstances, it may not be possible for the speed setting to be maintained or even attained: loaded vehicle, ascending a steep hill, etc.
The system is not intended for the following situations:

- the front end of the vehicle has been modified (addition of driving lamps, paint on the bumper),
- driving on a racing circuit,
- running on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- ensure that mats are secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The operation of the radar, located in the front bumper, may be disturbed by accumulations of grime (dust, mud...) or in certain weather conditions (snow, ice...).
The message "SYSTEM INACTIVE: Visibility reduced" is displayed to signal that the system has been put into standby.
Clean the front bumper regularly.
When painting or touching up the paint on the front bumper, consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could hinder the operation of the radar.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the cruise control, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp and the display of a message in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Collision Risk Alert and Active Safety Brake

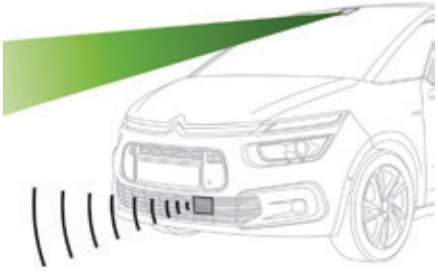


This system includes three functions:
- Collision Risk Alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).

Collision Risk Alert: it warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.
Intelligent emergency braking assistance: it completes the braking action taken by the driver if this is inadequate.
Active Safety Brake: it intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
If the driver fails to act, the system contributes towards avoiding a collision or limiting its severity by reducing the speed of your vehicle.

Conditions for activation and operation

The vehicle is fitted with a radar located in the front bumper and a camera at the top of the windscreen.



The system is active from about 4 mph (7 km/h) and is deactivated below about 3 mph (5 km/h).
It takes account of:
- vehicles running in the same direction or stationary,
- pedestrians present in the traffic lane (bicycles, motorcycles, animals and objects on the road are not necessarily detected).

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.
This system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Limits of operation

In the following cases, it is recommended that the system be deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu:

- when towing a trailer or caravan,
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- when the vehicle is being towed, with the engine running,
- when a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version),
- following impact damage to the windscreen close to the detection camera,
- if the front bumper has been damaged,
- if the brake lamps are not working.

! Because of limits in the operation of the system, it is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
Consequently, the driver must always remain attentive and able to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Collision Risk Alert

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.



Level 1: visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the inter-vehicle time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.



Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the time before collision. It takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operation of the vehicle (cornering, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.

i Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert is never displayed if the "**Close**" threshold has been selected.

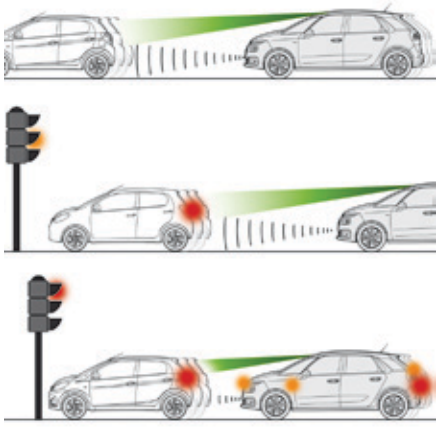
Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be warned of the presence of a vehicle moving or stationary in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.
The current threshold can be modified **only** via the **Driving** menu in the touch screen.
You can select one of three thresholds:

- "**Distant**",
- "**Normal**",
- "**Close**".

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.
Using a radar and a camera, this function acts on the vehicle's braking system.

If the radar and the camera have confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

Important: if operation of the automatic emergency braking is triggered, you should take back control of your vehicle and **brake** with the pedal to add to or finish the automatic braking action.

The driver can take back control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

The triggering of the braking may be adjusted according to the driver's driving actions (such as steering wheel movements, actions on the accelerator pedal, etc.).

Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of the automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, the engine may stall.
With an automatic gearbox, in the event of the automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed to stop the vehicle moving off again.

Special features of the function

The speed of the vehicle must be between 3 mph (5 km/h) and 87 mph (140 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.
The speed of the vehicle must not be higher than 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
The speed of the vehicle must not be higher than 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
The ESC system must not be faulty.
The ASR function must not be deactivated.
The seat belts of all occupants must be fastened.
Driving at a steady speed on fairly straight roads is required.

! Following an impact, the function is put out of service automatically, consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will complete the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Deactivation / Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.
The system can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle settings menu in the screen.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Check that the sensors (camera and radar) are not covered by dirt, mud, frost, snow...
If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could mask the camera's view.
Clean the front bumper, removing mud, snow, ...

If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

There may be interference in the operation of the camera or it may not work at all in the following situations:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, ...),
- dazzle (headlamps of an approaching vehicle on the other side of the road, low sun, reflection on a wet road, leaving a tunnel, alternating between light and shade, ...),
- camera or radar masked (mud, frost, snow, ...).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

Assisted Lane Departure Warning System

Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the ground, this system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of involuntary crossing of a line.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

Conditions for operation

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).
The carriageway must have at least one lane marking (solid or broken) on the ground.
The driver must hold the wheel with both hands.
The change of trajectory is not accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.
The ESC system must be activated.

! This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle in all circumstances. The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven on. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.
The driver must hold the steering wheel in a way that allows control to be taken back in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (where there are no lane markings, for example).
It is necessary to observe the driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

Operation

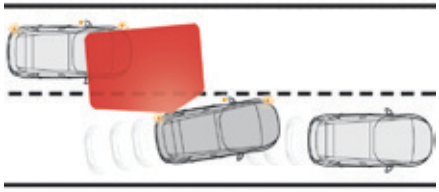
Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected, it makes the correction to the trajectory necessary to return the vehicle to its initial path.
The driver will then notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i If the driver wishes to maintain the trajectory of the vehicle, they can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example).
The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.

While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.



However, with the "Blind Spot Monitoring System" activated, if the driver starts changing lane and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory of the vehicle even though the direction indicators are on.
For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring System**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

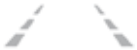
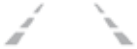
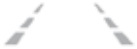
Activation / Deactivation

Activation / deactivation of the system is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen. Select the "**Driving functions**" tab then "**Lane assist**".

The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all of the information needed in the instrument panel, you must first select the "DRIVING" display mode.
The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed according to the driving situation.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.

State of the system	Warning lamp	Associated display and message	Comment
OFF			System deactivated.
ON			System active, conditions not met: - speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), - no lane marking recognised, - ESC deactivated or operation triggered, - "dynamic" driving.
ON			Automatic deactivation / standby of the system (for example: detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).
ON			Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON			The system corrects the trajectory on the side concerned or the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON	 	 "Take back the wheel".	- If, during correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver. - During correction of the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and a solid line is crossed: the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of trajectory.

Limits of operation

! The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or above 112 mph (180 km/h),
- connected electrically to a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- operation of the direction indicators,
- driving in a tight corner,
- crossing of the inside line of a corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

! The system may not operate correctly or at all in the following situations:
- conditions of poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog),
- dazzle (headlamps of on oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade),
- area of the windscreen in front of the camera dirty, misted, frosted, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- road markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- narrow, winding roads.

Risk of undesirable operation

Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following situations:
- driving on a road surface in poor condition,
- unfavourable weather conditions,
- driving on slippery surfaces (ice).

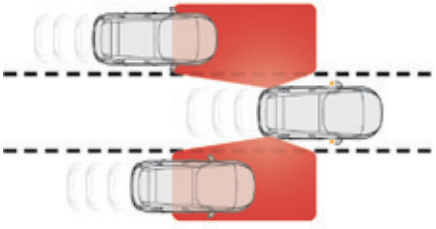
The system is not designed for the following driving situations:
- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving with a trailer,
- driving on a rolling road,
- driving on unstable surfaces.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Monitoring System



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Activation / Deactivation

Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Blind spot sensors**".

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.
The state of the system remains in memory on switching off the ignition.

To deactivate the system, select "**Blind spot sensors**" again in the "**Driving functions**" tab. The indicator lamp goes off.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane. This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

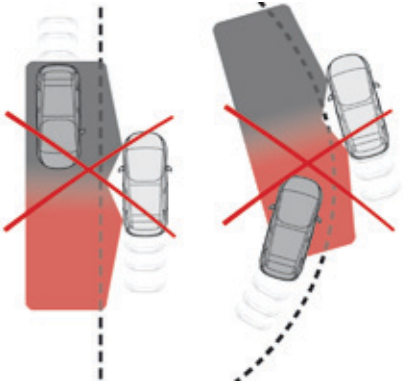
i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

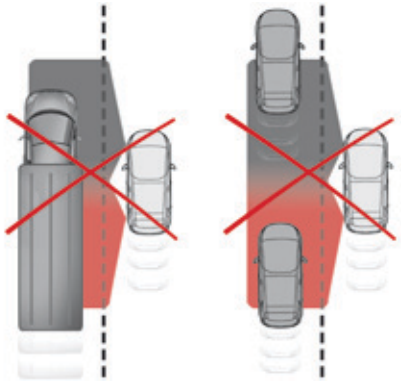
Operation

The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, bicycle - is detected.

The following conditions must be met for this:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic is flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.





No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking (or being overtaken by) a very long vehicle (lorry, coach, etc,) which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp and the display of a message.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).
In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

High pressure jet wash
When washing your vehicle, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

Assisted Blind Spot Monitoring System*

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you cross a lane marking with the direction indicators on, to help you avoid a collision.

Conditions for operation

The following systems must be activated:
- Blind Spot Monitoring System,
- Assisted Lane Departure Warning System.

For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring System** and the **Assisted Lane Departure Warning System**, refer to the corresponding sections.

* Depending on version.

Fatigue detection system

It is recommended that you take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.
Depending on version, the function either has the "Driving time warning" only, or this combined with the "Fatigue detection system".

Activation / Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated in the touch screen tablet.

In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Security**" and "**Fatigue Detection System**".

! The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
Do not take the wheel if you are tired.

Driving time warning

The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

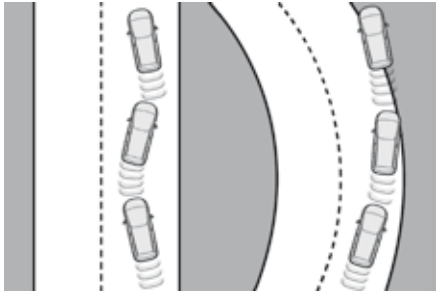


This alert takes the form of the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

i As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.
The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Fatigue detection system



Depending on version, the "Driving time warning" may be combined with the "Fatigue detection system".

Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).



Once the system considers that the behaviour of the vehicle suggests a certain level of fatigue or inattention by the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.
The driver is then alerted by the message "**Take care!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

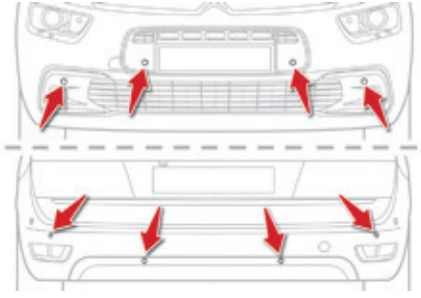
After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message "**Take a break!**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, ...),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, ...),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, masked (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, ...),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, ...

Parking sensors



This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, gate) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.
Certain types of obstacle (e.g. stake, roadworks cone) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

! This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.
This is confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right-hand or left-hand) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen or the instrument panel which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is near, the "Danger" symbol is displayed.

Front parking sensors

As an addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle remains below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation / Activation of the front and rear parking sensors

The parking sensors can be deactivated in the touch screen.

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Parking sensors**".



This indicator comes on in the instrument panel.
A new selection reactivates the function.

The system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towbar (vehicle fitted with a towbar installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist system is measuring a space.
For more information on **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault

SERVICE

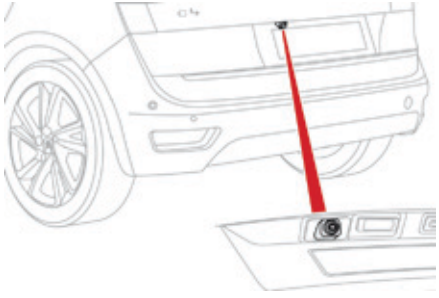
In the event of a malfunction of the system, when reverse gear is engaged, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments then stays on continuously.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

High pressure jet wash
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance within 30 cm of the sensors.

Reversing camera

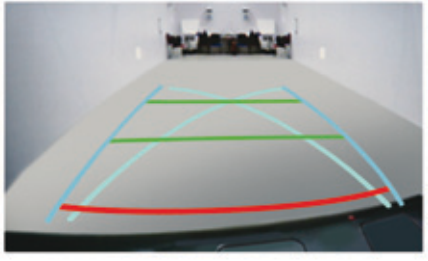


The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
Depending on version, the image is displayed in the touch screen or the instrument panel.

i The reversing camera function may be supplemented by parking sensors.

! The reversing camera cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! **High pressure jet washing**
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance within 30 cm of the camera lens.



The superimposed representation of guide lines helps with the manoeuvre.

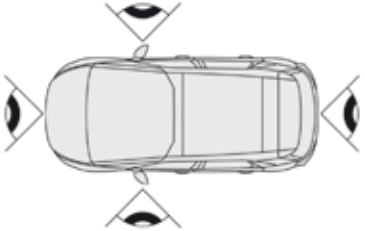
i They are represented by lines marked "on the ground" and do not allow the position of the vehicle to be determined relative to tall obstacles (e.g. other vehicles).
Some deformation of the image is normal.
It is normal to be able to see part of the number plate at the bottom of the screen.

The blue lines represent the general direction of the vehicle (the difference corresponds to the width of your vehicle without the mirrors).
The red lines represent a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The green lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The turquoise blue curves represent the maximum turning circle.

! Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

i Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

360 Vision

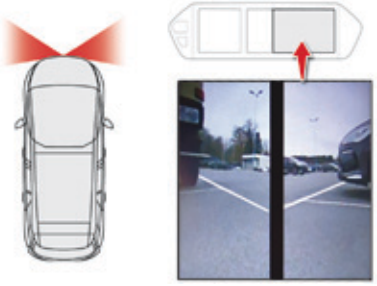


This system provides a view in the instrument panel of the near surroundings of your vehicle, using cameras mounted at the front and rear of your vehicle and under the door mirrors.
Depending on the angle of view chosen (front view, rear view or 360° panoramic view), 360 Vision provides special visual assistance in particular driving conditions such as when entering a blind junction or manoeuvring in areas of reduced visibility.
Once activated, this function operates up to 9 mph (15 km/h). Above 18 mph (30 km/h), the function is deactivated automatically.

! This system is a visual aid which in no circumstances can replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The images provided by the cameras may be deformed by the relief. The presence of areas in shade, in sunny conditions, or of low ambient light may darken the image and reduce contrast.

Forward vision

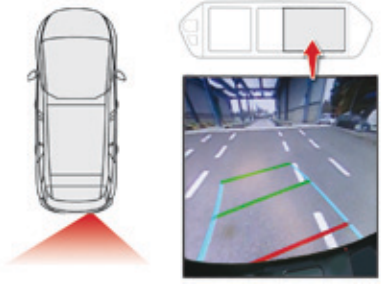
The camera located in the front bumper is activated and views of the areas located at front left and front right appear simultaneously in the instrument panel.



Rear vision

The camera located in the tailgate is activated and the view of the area behind your vehicle is displayed in the instrument panel and behaves like a reversing camera, whatever the position of the gear selector lever.
The blue lines represent the width of your vehicle (excluding mirrors): they move according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper, and the two green lines, 1 m and 2 m from the rear bumper, respectively.

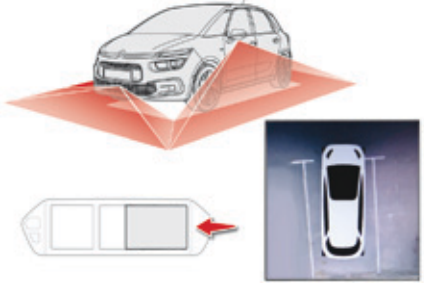
i Rear vision is displayed automatically when engaging reverse, regardless of the state of the system.



360 vision

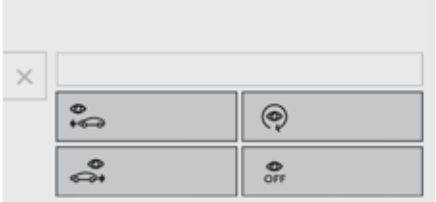
The cameras located in the front and rear bumpers and under the door mirrors are activated and a reconstruction of the view from above your vehicle in its immediate surroundings is displayed in the instrument panel.

Opening a door or the tailgate disturbs the 360 and rear views.
Fitting the very cold conditions screen affects the image transmitted by the front camera.



Operation

Activating the function



With the engine running:

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Panoramic visual aid**".

With this menu displayed, select one of the three views:

"Front camera".

"360° camera".

"Rear camera".

The view selected is displayed in the instrument panel.

The display in the instrument panel disappears above 9 mph (15 km/h).

Deactivating the function

☞ Accelerate so as to exceed 18 mph (30 km/h).

or

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Panoramic visual aid**.

☞ Select "Camera OFF".

Check the cleanliness of the camera lenses regularly.
High pressure jet wash
When washing your vehicle, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the camera.

Park Assist

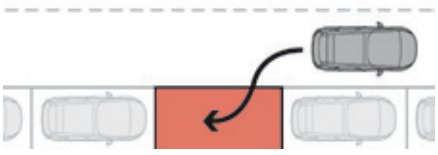
This system provides active assistance with parking. It detects a parking space then operates the steering to park in the space.
It operates the steering while the driver manages the accelerator, brakes, gears and clutch (manual gearbox). During phases of entry into and exit from a parking space, the system provides visual and audible information to the driver in order to make the manoeuvres safe. It may be necessary to move forwards and backwards more than once.

The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

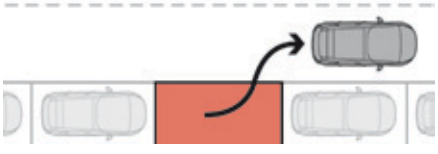
! This manoeuvring assistance system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must remain in control of their vehicle ensuring that the space remains clear throughout the manoeuvre.
In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

i The Park Assist system cannot work with the engine off.

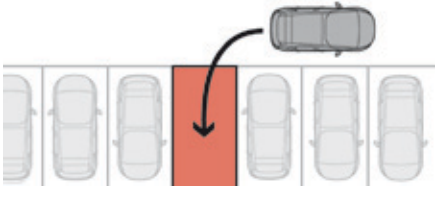
The Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:



A. Entry into a parallel parking space



B. Exit from a parallel parking space



C. Bay parking

! During a manoeuvre, the steering wheel turns quickly: do not hold the steering wheel, do not place your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel and take care with loose and bulky clothing (scarves, ties, handbags...) - Risk of injury!

i When Park Assist is activated, it prevents a change to STOP mode of Stop & Start. In STOP mode, activation of Park Assist restarts the engine.

i The Park Assist system takes control of the power steering for a maximum of 4 manoeuvre cycles. The function is deactivated after these 4 cycles.
If you think that your vehicle is not positioned correctly, you should then take control of the steering to carry out the manoeuvre.

! The sequence of manoeuvres and the driving instructions are displayed in the instrument panel.



The assistance is activated: the display of this symbol and a speed limit indicate that the steering manoeuvres are controlled by the system: do not touch the steering wheel.



The assistance is deactivated: the display of this symbol indicates that the steering manoeuvres are no longer controlled by the system: you must take control of the steering.

! You should always check the surroundings of your vehicle before starting a manoeuvre.

i The parking sensors function is not available during parking space measurement. It intervenes later when manoeuvring to warn you that your vehicle is approaching an obstacle: the audible signal becomes continuous when the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres away.
If you have deactivated the parking sensors, they are automatically reactivated during assisted parking manoeuvres.

! Activation of Park Assist deactivates the Blind Spot Monitoring System.

Operation

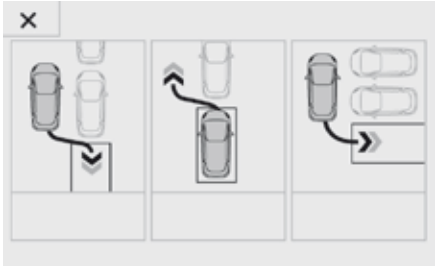
Assistance with parallel parking manoeuvres



☞ When you have identified a parking space:

☞ Press this button.

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm activation of the function.



☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Enter parallel parking space**" in the touch screen.

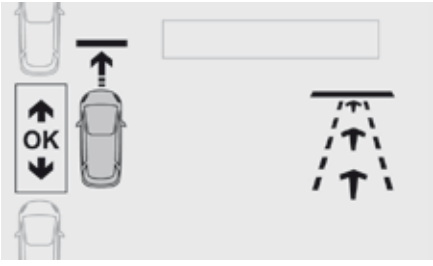
i To enter a parallel parking space, the system does not identify spaces that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



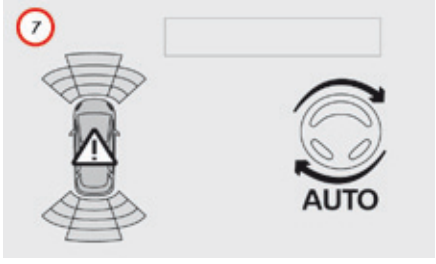
☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.



☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.
Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the indication of the end of the manoeuvre.



☞ At the end of the manoeuvre, the operating indicator lamp goes out in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

Assistance in exiting from a parallel parking space



☞ When you want to leave a parallel parking space, start the engine.

☞ With the vehicle stationary, press this button.

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm activation of the function.

☞ Press on "**Exit parking slot**" in the touch screen.



☞ Operate the direction indicator for the exit side chosen.

☞ Engage reverse or forward gear and release the steering wheel.



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the indication of the end of the manoeuvre.



The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are clear of the parking space.
At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

Assistance with bay parking manoeuvres





☞ Once you have identified a parking zone, press this button.



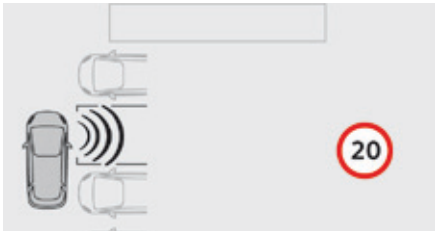
This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm activation of the function.



☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Enter bay parking space**" on the touch screen.

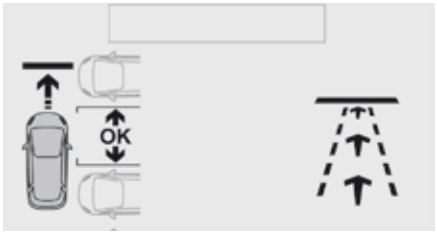


☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.

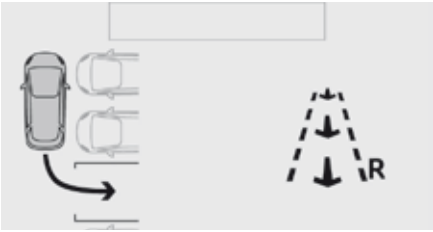


☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.

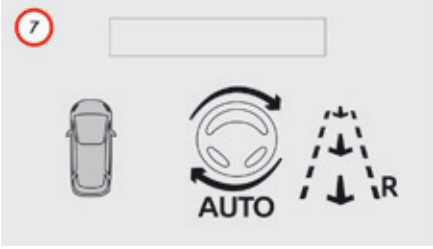
When several successive bays are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



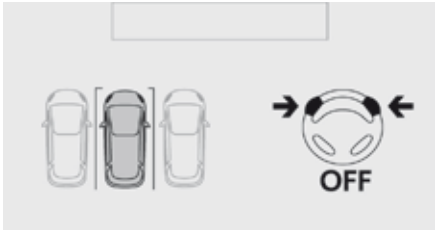
☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.
Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), follow the instructions displayed in the instrument panel, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the indication of the end of the manoeuvre.



At the end of the manoeuvre, the operating indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

During a bay parking manoeuvre, the Park Assist system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 50 cm of an obstacle.

During parking and exit from parking manoeuvres, the reversing camera function may come into operation. It facilitates monitoring of the surroundings of the vehicle, by displaying additional information in the instrument panel.
For more information on the **Reversing camera**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the control.
The system is deactivated automatically:
- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- if no manoeuvre is started within 5 minutes of selection of the type of manoeuvre,
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
- if the road wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- after 4 manoeuvre cycles,
- on opening the driver's door,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

The operation indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal.
The driver should then take back control of the vehicle's steering.

If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the drive should reactivate it to repeat the measurement.

Switching off

The system is switched off automatically:
- when towing a trailer, connected electrically,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 42 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system of for a prolonged period, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operating faults



In the event of a fault, this warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the warning lamp goes off.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space.
Anything projecting beyond the envelope of the vehicle (a ladder on the roof, for example) is not taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by road dirt, ice or snow.
In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

High pressure jet washing
When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

Under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system monitors the pressures in the four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.
It compares the information given by the four wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

! The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (high loading, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

i **Checking tyre pressures**
This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Under-inflation alert



This is given by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ If you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
- ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

or

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

i The alert is maintained until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

It is necessary to reinitialise the system every time one or more tyre pressures are adjusted, and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the use of the vehicle and in line with the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.
The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.
The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Snow chains

i The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Reinitialisation of the system is done in the touch screen, with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.

- ☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab then "**Under-inflation initialisation**".
- ☞ Confirm the instruction by pressing "**Yes**", an audible signal and a message confirm the reinitialisation.

The new pressure settings registered are considered to be reference values by the system.

! The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if reinitialisation of the system is done with the four tyre pressures correctly set.

Operating fault



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

Mirrors

Door mirrors



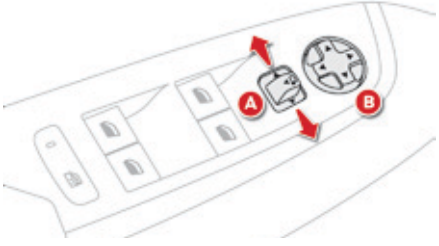
Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.
They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

Demisting-defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on **Demisting - Defrosting the rear screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjustment



- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** to the central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots". The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- From outside: lock the vehicle using the electronic key or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle using the electronic key or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If necessary, it is possible to fold the mirrors manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.
They return to their initial position:
- a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear,
- once the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- on switching off the engine.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

☞ Select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab then "**Comfort**" and "**Mirror adaptation in reverse**".

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

Manual model



Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

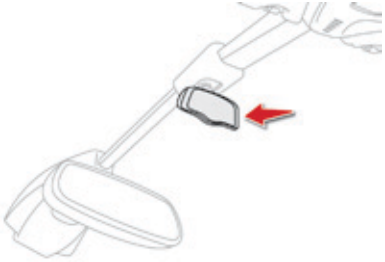
Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses by means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Child surveillance mirror



A child surveillance mirror is fitted above the rear view mirror. This allows you to monitor the vehicle's rear passengers, or it can facilitate conversation between the front and rear passengers without the need to move the rear view mirror.
It can be folded away to eliminate dazzle.

Lighting control stalk

Selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- daytime running lamps to be more visible during the day,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are provided to meet the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- rear foglamps,
- front foglamps with cornering lighting,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting to facilitate access to the vehicle,
- parking lamps as vehicle position markers.

In the event of the failure of one or more bulbs, a message advises you to check the lamp(s) in question.

Programming

The setting of some functions can be adjusted:

- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- automatic headlamp dipping,
- guide-me-home lighting,
- welcome lighting,
- cornering lighting,
- directional lighting.

Travelling abroad

Halogen headlamps

For motoring in countries that drive on the other side of the road, it is necessary to adapt the adjustment of the dipped beams so as to not dazzle the drivers of approaching vehicles. Contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

Xenon headlamps

The design of the dipped beam headlamps allows you to drive in a country that drives on the other side of the road, without the need for any modification.

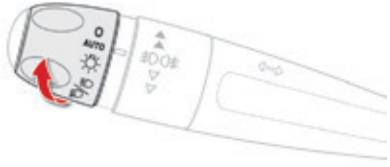
Main lighting



Without AUTO lighting



With AUTO lighting



Selection of main lighting mode

Turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the mark.



Lighting off (ignition off) /
Daytime running lamps (engine running).



Automatic illumination of headlamps.
Daytime running lamps / Dipped beam / Main beam.



Sidelamps.



Dipped or main beam headlamps.

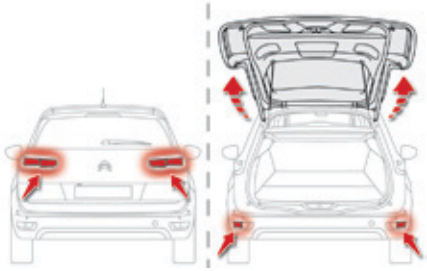
Headlamp dipping

Pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps or to activate automatic headlamp dipping.

In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.



The rear sidelamps and direction indicators are located on the tailgate. When they are on, opening the tailgate automatically transfers illumination to the lamps located in the rear bumper, to maintain the safety of the vehicle.

With rear foglamps only



With front and rear foglamps



Foglamps

The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

Rear foglamps

☞ To switch on the foglamps, turn the ring forwards.

☞ To switch off the foglamps, turn the ring rearwards.

i When switching off dipped beam manually, the rear foglamps also go off.

Front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring:

☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,

☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,

☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamps,

☞ rearwards a second time to switch off the front fog lamps.

When the headlamps switch off with automatic illumination of headlamps or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

Operation of the rear foglamps is inhibited with the tailgate open.
Opening the tailgate when these lamps are on causes them and their indicator lamp in the instrument panel to go off.
They do not come back on automatically when the tailgate is closed: they must be switched on again using the control stalk.

In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, you should switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually, as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

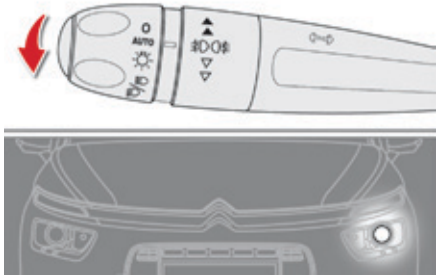
Switching off the lighting when switching off the ignition

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lighting when switching on the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control stalk, turn the ring **A** to position **"0"** - lighting off, then to the position of your choice.
When the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns you that the vehicle's lighting is on.
They switch off automatically after a period which depends on the state of charge of the battery (entry to energy economy mode).

Parking lamps

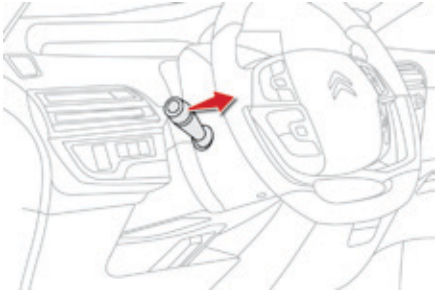


Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

- ☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: when parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel.
To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Guide-me-home lighting



The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

Manual

Activation

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Deactivation

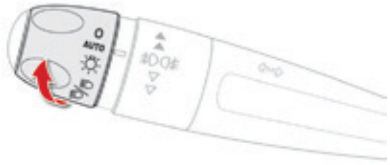
The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Automatic

When the automatic illumination of headlamps is activated (lighting control stalk at the AUTO position), if the ambient light level is low, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when switching off the ignition.

Activation or deactivation of the system, as well as the period of operation of the guide-me-home lighting is set via the **Driving** menu in the touch screen.
Select "**Guide-me-home lighting**" to activate or deactivate the function.
To adjust the period of operation, select the symbol for the "**Guide-me-home lighting**" function.

Automatic illumination of headlamps



When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Activation

☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. The activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Deactivation

☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on; this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

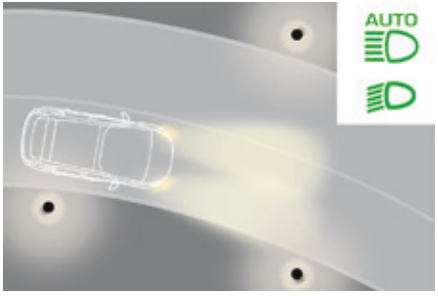
! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

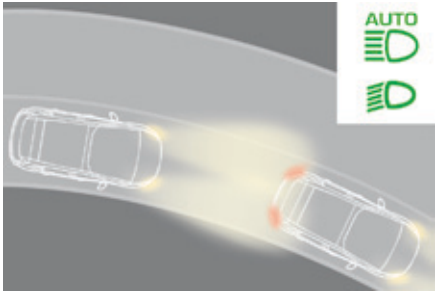
Automatic headlamp dipping

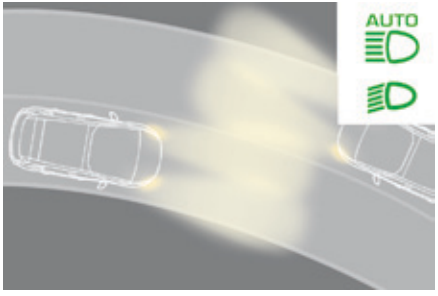
System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the ambient light level and the driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

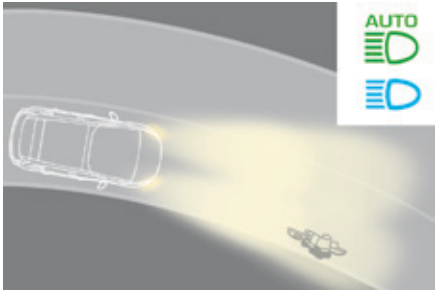
! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 16 mph (25 km/h).
If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.









Activation



☞ Put the lighting control stalk ring in the "**AUTO**" position.

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Automatic headlamp dipping**".



☞ Flash the headlamps (going beyond the point of resistance) to activate the function.

Operation

Once the function is activated, the system operates as follows:
If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:



- dipped beam is maintained, these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.



☞ Flashing the headlamps again pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:
- if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to main beam,
- if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.



Depending on the situation, these indicator lamps come on.

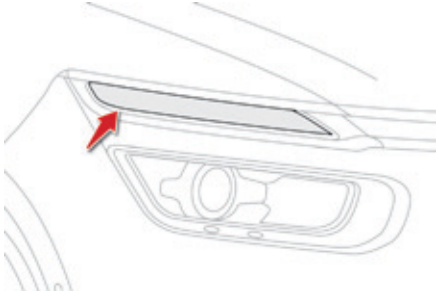
Deactivation

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Automatic headlamp dipping**"; the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode.

The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:
- under conditions of poor visibility (falling snow, heavy rain or thick fog, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

The system is not able to detect:
- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- road users whose lighting is obscured, such as vehicles running behind a safety barrier (on a motorway, for example),
- road users at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Front daytime running lamps (light-emitting diodes)



They come on automatically when the engine is started, when the lighting control stalk is in position "**0**" or "**AUTO**".

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Door mirror spotlamps



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on

When the courtesy lamp is in this position, the spotlamps come on automatically:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when you remove the electronic key from the reader,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control to locate the vehicle.

Switching off

They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

Exterior welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated when the lighting control is in the "**AUTO**" position and the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor is low.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control or one of the front door handles with Keyless Entry and Starting.

The dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

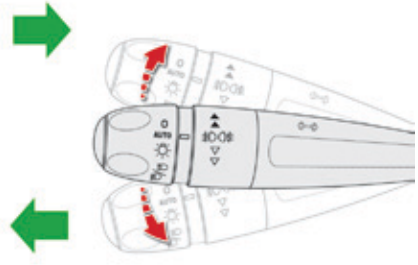
Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

Programming

The activation, deactivation and choice of welcome lighting duration are done via the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.
On the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, select "**Welcome lighting**".
Use the arrows or the cursor to adjust the duration of the lighting.

Direction indicators

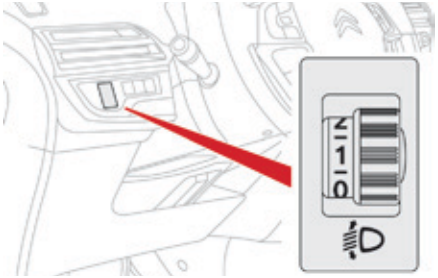


- ☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

Three flashes of the direction indicators

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Adjusting the headlamp beam height

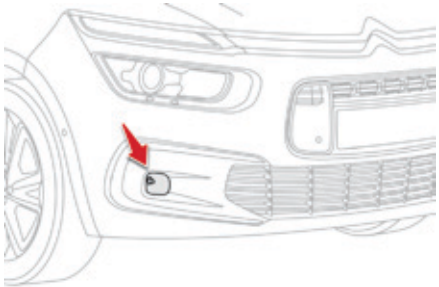


To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

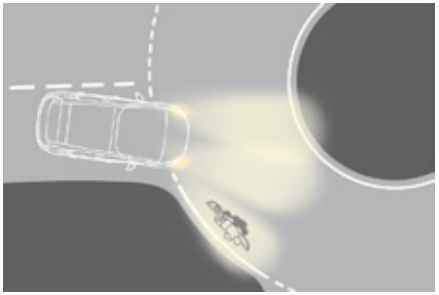
0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. Intermediate setting.
1. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. Driver + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. 5 people + maximum load in the boot.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

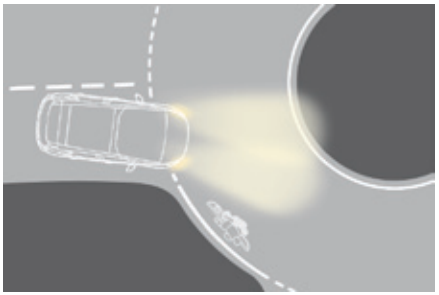
Cornering lighting



This system, if fitted to your vehicle, makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



with cornering lighting



without cornering lighting

Switching on

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

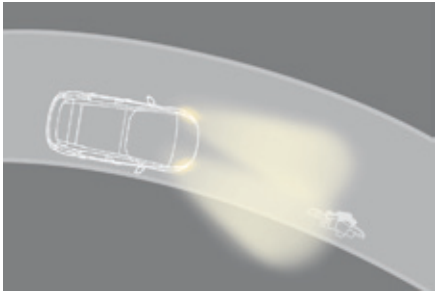
The cornering lighting can be activated or deactivated in the **Driving** menu.

☞ Select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Driving lighting**" and "**Directional headlamps**".

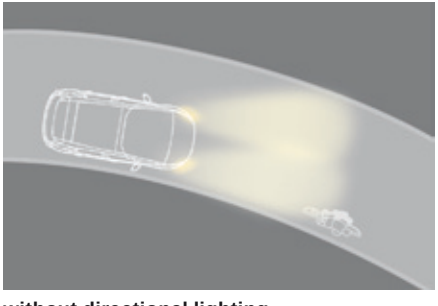
Directional lighting

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this system allows the light beams to better follow the road.
Associated with xenon headlamps, this system improves the quality of lighting when cornering.

This system is inactive:
- when stationary or at low speeds,
- when reverse is engaged.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting

Operating fault

If a fault occurs, these warning lamps come on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The directional lighting can be activated or deactivated in the touch screen.
In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Driving lighting**" and select "**Directional headlamps**".

Wiper control stalk

Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be configured:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

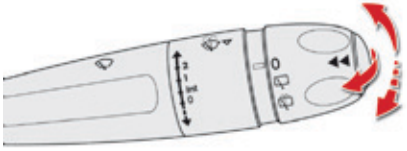
Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Manual controls

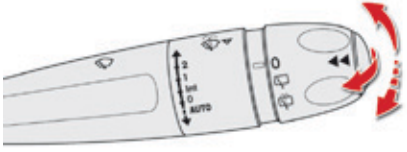


The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

The front wiper system includes a safety device which can temporarily inhibit operation if it detects obstacles such as ice or snow.

Wiping speed control stalk: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2 Fast wipe (heavy rain).

1 Normal wipe (moderate rain).

Int Intermittent wipe (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

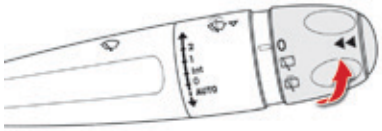
0 Park.

↓ Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

AUTO ↓ Automatic wiping (press down, then release).
Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Rear wiper



! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

Rear wiper selection ring:

0 Park.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

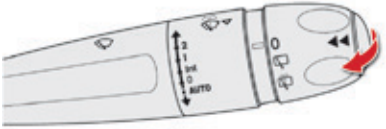
Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

This function can be deactivated in the **Driving** menu.
Select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Comfort**" and "**Rear wiper in reverse**".

Windscreen wash and headlamp wash

Screenwash and washer jets



☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

A few moments after releasing the wiper stalk, there is a last wipe to clear any runs from the screen.

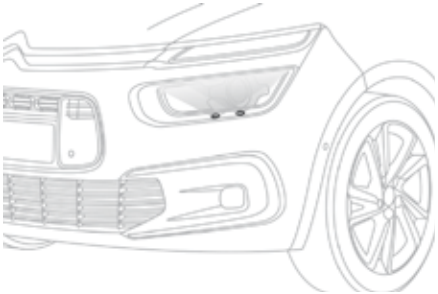


Adjusting the jets

The front washers include an adjustment for the height of delivery from the jets.

If you want to modify the factory setting, turn the screw on each jet anti-clockwise, towards the "+" to raise the jet or clockwise, towards the "-" to lower it.

Headlamp wash

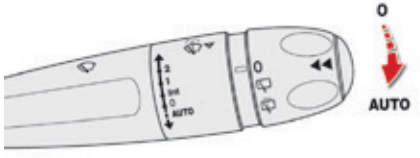


The headlamps operate when the vehicle is moving and when the dipped beam headlamps are on. However, to reduce the consumption of screenwash fluid, the headlamp wash only operates with every 7th use of the screenwash or once every 25 miles (40 km), during a given journey.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.

Switching on



AUTO

Briefly push the control stalk downwards.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.
This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off

AUTO

Briefly push the control stalk downwards again, or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).

This warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

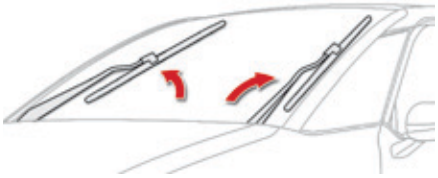
The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.
It is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the wiper blades from the windscreen.

On switching off the ignition:

☞ any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the wiper blades vertically on the screen.

When the system is no longer powered - at least one minute after switching off the ignition - it is possible to move the arms manually.

☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

To maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" wipers, it is advisable to:

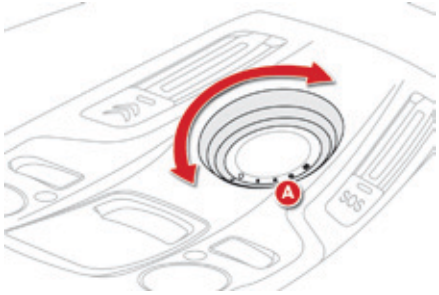
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Replacement of the arms must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Panoramic sunroof

It is fitted with an electrically controlled blind.

Opening the roof blind

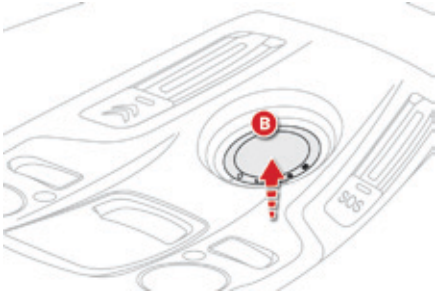


☞ Rotate the control **A** to slide the roof blind to the desired position (positions **1** to **4**).

Closing the roof blind

☞ Rotate the control **A** to position **0** to close the roof blind.

Anti-pinch



The blind has an anti-pinch function.
At the end of its travel, when the blind encounters an obstacle on closing, it stops and moves back slightly.
Following a fault or after a battery disconnection during the movement of the blind or after it has stopped, you must re-initialise the anti-pinch function:

☞ place the blind in the closed position,
☞ press control knob **B** for approximately two seconds.

General safety recommendations

Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

We draw your attention to the following points:

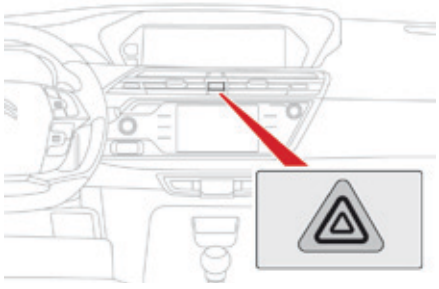
- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle...

Hazard warning lamps



Visual warning with all of the direction indicators flashing to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.

☞ Press this button, all of the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

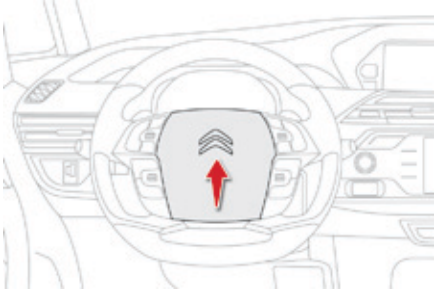
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn



☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call





Localised Emergency Call

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" call centre*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or at www.citroen.co.uk.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp is on continuously: replace the back-up battery.

For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



The red indicator lamp is on continuously: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

A fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "Telematic services" services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or at www.citroen.co.uk.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) incorporating the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control on corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.
The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.
The EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered according to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp indicates that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.



When this warning lamp comes on, coupled with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
In both cases, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

In emergency braking, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.

Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.
This system detects situations of difficult surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.
They come into operation in the event of a problem of grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation of the ASR

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the systems as soon as the level of grip permits.

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Traction control**".

Deactivation is confirmed by a message.
The ASR system will no longer act on the operation of the engine or on the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

Reactivation of the ASR

The system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).
Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually:

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Traction control**".

Operating fault



Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates a fault with these systems.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

! After an impact, have the systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! ASR / DSC

These systems offer even greater safety during normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at excessive speed.
When traction deteriorates (rain, snow, ice), the risks of loss of grip increase.
Therefore, for your safety, it is essential that these systems are left active in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
The operation of these systems is assured provided that the manufacturer's recommendations concerning the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and the CITROËN network fitting and repair procedures are complied with.
To ensure the effectiveness of these systems in winter conditions, it is essential that the vehicle is fitted with four snow tyres which will enable the vehicle to retain neutral handling.

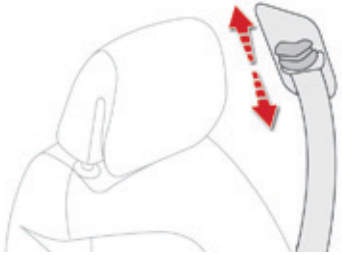
Seat belts

Front seat belts



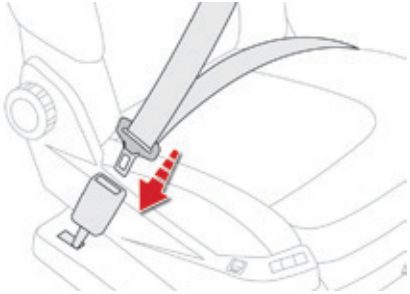
The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

Front seat belt anchorage height adjustment



☞ To adjust the height of the anchorage point, squeeze the control and slide it up or down to the desired notch.

Fastening



☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

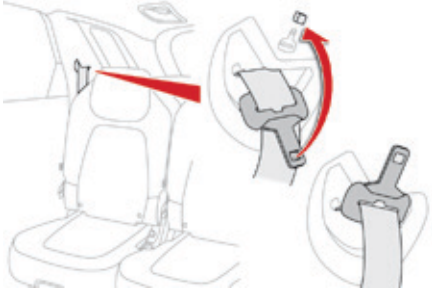
☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

2nd row seat belts



The rear seats are each fitted with a seat belt, three-point anchorages with inertia reel and force limiter (except for the centre rear seat).

2nd row outer seat belts (stowing)

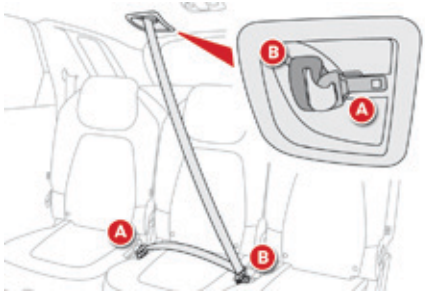


Guide the belt as it reels in and place the tongue on the magnet at the side anchorage point.

2nd row centre seat belt

The seat belt for the centre rear seat is built into the roof.

Fastening



- Pull the strap and insert the tongue **A** into the right hand buckle.
- Insert tongue **B** into the left hand buckle.
- Check that each buckle is correctly fastened by pulling on the belt webbing.

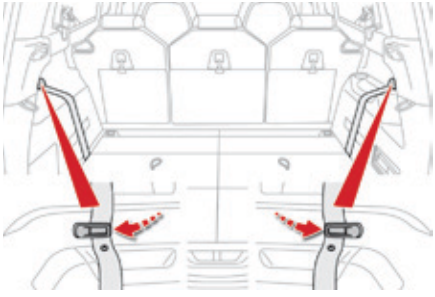
Unfastening

- Press the red button in buckle **B**, then buckle **A**.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in and place the tongue **B** and then **A** on the magnet in the roof anchorage point.

! Before any operation of the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts check that there is no slack in the outer belts and secure their tongues on the anchorage points. The centre seat belt must be fully reeled in.

3rd row seat belts

Fastening



- Detach the seat belt strap from its retaining loop located on the side trim of the boot.
- Pull on the strap and insert the tongue into the buckle.
- Check that the buckle is correctly fastened by pulling on the belt strap.

Unfastening and stowing

- Press the red button in buckle.
- Guide the seat belt strap as it reels in.
- Secure the strap, flat in the retaining loop.

! Ensure that the seat belts are secured when not in use.

Seat belt not fastened and unfastened alerts



The instrument panel includes a seat belt not-fastened warning lamp **A** as well as an indicator of the location of the non-fastened belts **B**.
When the system detects a non-fastened or unfastened seat belt, the warning lamp **A** comes on as well as the corresponding points in the indicator **B**.

Front seat belts not fastened alert



On switching on the ignition, the warning lamp **A** comes on, as well as the corresponding points in the indicator **B**, if the driver and/or front passenger have not fastened their seat belt.

At speeds above 12 mph (20 km/h), these alerts flash, accompanied by an audible signal for two minutes. After this period, these alerts remain on fixed, while the front seat belts are not fastened.

Rear seat belts not fastened alert



On switching on the ignition, engine running or the vehicle at a speed of up to 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp **A** as well as the corresponding points in the indicator **B** come on for about thirty seconds, if one or more rear passengers have not fastened their seat belt.

Seat belts unfastened alert



On switching on the ignition, the warning lamp **A** remains on, as well as the corresponding points in the indicator **B**, if the driver and/or one or more passengers have not fastened their seat belt.
At speeds above 12 mph (20 km/h), these alerts flash, accompanied by a message and an audible signal for two minutes. After this period, these alerts remain on fixed, while the seat belts are not fastened.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfill their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

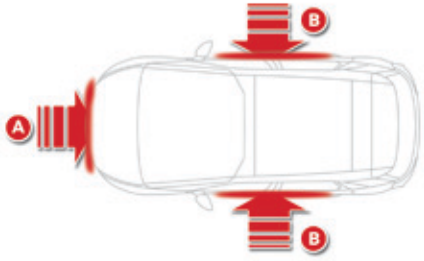
Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts (with the exception of the rear centre passenger).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

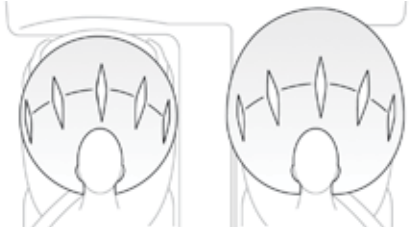
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The noise of detonation related to the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

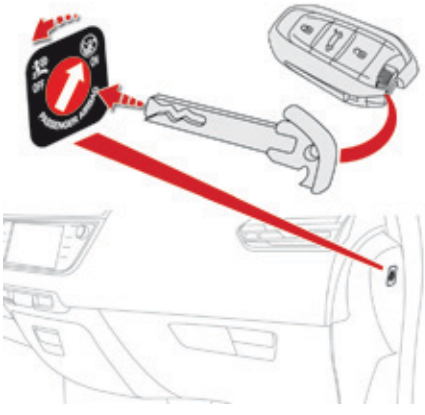


System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivation



Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.

- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the **"OFF"** position.
- ☞ Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

When the ignition is on, this warning lamp comes in the instrument panel. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the rearward facing child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

A lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags is deployed.

! Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below:

Sit in a normal upright position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - Risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

CITROËN recommends that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
- **forward facing** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Child seat at the front*

Rearward facing



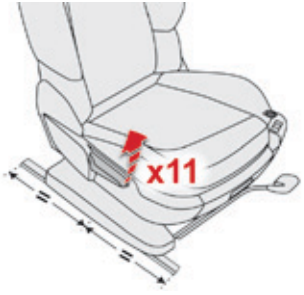
When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the midway longitudinal position, the lowest height position, backrest straightened. Then pull the height control lever 11 times.
The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the midway longitudinal position, the lowest height position, backrest straightened. Then pull the height control lever 11 times. Leave the passenger's airbag active.

Ensure that the seat belt is properly tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm and steady contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger's seat.



Passenger seat in the midway longitudinal position, the lowest height position, then the height control lever pulled 11 times.

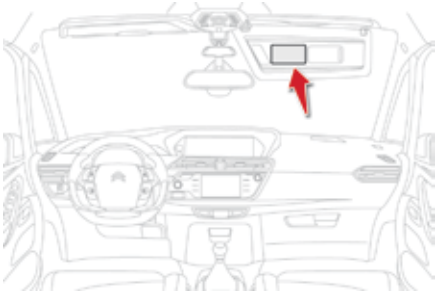
* Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child seat on this seating position.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

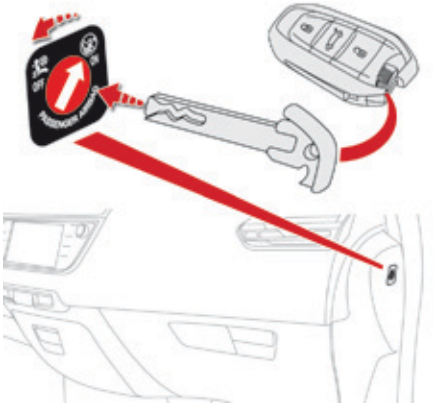
The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.







Passenger airbag OFF



i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ.
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermeküléstAKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.

MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla.
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN.
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ.
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seat at the rear

Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

! Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.



Seats in the 3rd row

When a child seat is installed **on a 3rd row passenger seat**, move the 2nd row seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the child seat and the legs of the child do not touch the 2nd row seat.
A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on a **3rd row passenger seat**.

Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg	
		
L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearward facing position.	**L5** "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.	**L6** "GRACO Booster" The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Installation of child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (**a**) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat		**Weight of the child /** indicative age			
		Groups 0 (b) and 0+ Birth to 13 kg	**Group 1 From 9 to 18 kg**	**Group 2 From 15 to 25 kg**	**Group 3 From 22 to 36 kg**
1st row	Front passenger seat (**c**) - fixed - height adjustable 	**U** **U(R)**	**U** **U(R)**	**U** **U(R)**	**U** **U(R)**
2nd row	Fixed outer rear seats (**d**) 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
	Outer rear seats with longitudinal adjustment (**d**) (**e**) 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
	Centre rear seat (**d**) 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
3rd row	Rear seats 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

(**a**) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(**b**) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat or in the 3rd row. When installed in the 2nd row, they may prevent use of the other seats.

(**c**) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

(**d**) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.

(**e**) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position, with the backrest upright.

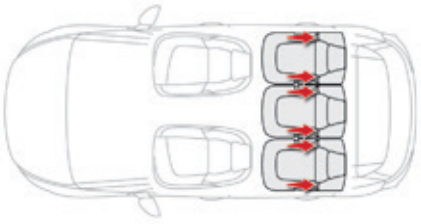
U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved rearward facing and/or forward facing, with the passenger seat adjusted to the midway longitudinal position.

U(R): same as **U**, with the passenger's seat adjusted to the low position with 11 actions on the height control lever and in the midway longitudinal position.

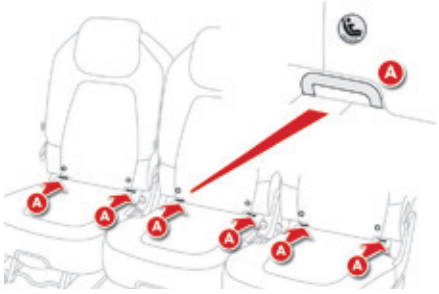
Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

"ISOFIX" mountings

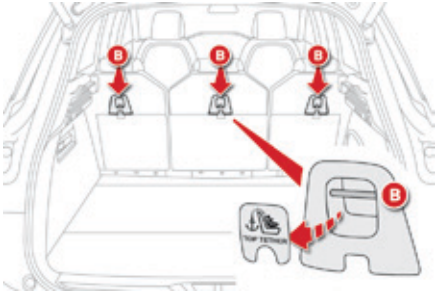
Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest ISOFIX regulations**.
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



The ISOFIX mountings are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, located under a cover on the back of the top of the seat backrest, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap. Its position is indicated by a marking.

Located on the back of the seat backrest, the TOP TETHER is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This device limits forward tipping of the child seat, in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.
The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured easily on the two rings **A**.
Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it after the child seat has been removed),
- remove the **TOP TETHER** cover by pulling at its cut-out,
- pass the child seat strap behind the seat backrest, centred between the holes for the head restraint rods,
- secure the upper strap fixing to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

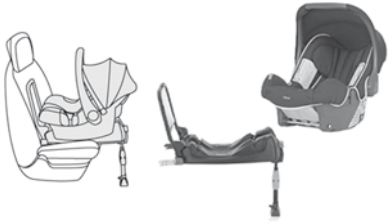
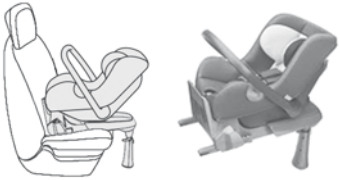
! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Observe strictly the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

i For information on the possibilities for fitting ISOFIX child seats to your vehicle, refer to the table of seating positions.

ISOFIX child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.

Refer also to the child seat manufacturer's fitting instructions for information on installing and removing the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" and its ISOFIX base (size category: **E**)	**Baby P2C Mini and its ISOFIX base** (size categories: **C, D, E**)	**"Baby P2C Midi" and its ISOFIX base** (size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**	**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**
		
Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.	Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case only the seat shell is used and is attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.	Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be used forward facing. This seat can **not** be secured with a seat belt. We recommend that you use the seat in the rearward facing position up to the age of 3 years.



Locations for installing ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Sleeper cot***		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat	Not ISOFIX									
Outer rear seats, fixed	**IL-SU****		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**X**	**IUF / IL-SU**	
Outer rear seats, adjustable longitudinally	**IL-SU****		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF / IL-SU (1)**	**IUF / IL-SU**	
Centre rear seat	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF / IL-SU**	**IUF / IL-SU**	

* Sleeper cots cannot be fitted to the front passenger's seat.

** The ISOFIX sleeper cot, secured to the lower rings of an ISOFIX seat, occupies the full width of the rear seats.

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX **U**niversal seat, **F**orward facing secured using the upper strap to the top tether on ISOFIX seats.

IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- a sleeper cot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For more information on **ISOFIX mountings** and in particular on securing the upper strap, refer to the corresponding section.

X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or sleeper cot for the weight group indicated.

(1): The outer seat in row 2 must be adjusted to 3 notches back from the fully forward position.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.



Locations for installing ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Sleeper cot***		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat	Not ISOFIX									
Outer rear seats, fixed	**IL-SU****		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF / IL-SU**	**IUF / IL-SU**	
Outer rear seats, adjustable longitudinally	**IL-SU****		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF / IL-SU**	**IUF / IL-SU**	
Centre rear seat	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF / IL-SU**	**IUF / IL-SU**	
Rear seat in the 3rd row	Not ISOFIX									

* Sleeper cots cannot be fitted to the front passenger's seat.

** An ISOFIX sleeper cot, secured to the lower rings of an ISOFIX seat, occupies the full width of the rear seats.

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX **U**niversal seat, **F**orward facing secured using the upper strap to the top tether on ISOFIX seats.

IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- a sleeper cot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For more information on **ISOFIX mountings** and in particular on securing the upper strap, refer to the corresponding section.

X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or sleeper cot for the weight group indicated.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Recommendations

! Child seats

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.
Check that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body **to a minimum**, even for short journeys.
For the installation of a child seat using a seat belt, ensure that this is well tensioned on the child seat and that it is holding the child seat firmly against the seat of your vehicle. If your front passenger seat is adjustable, move it forward if necessary.
At the rear seats, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the feet of a child seated in a forward facing child seat.

For this, move the front seat forward and if necessary straighten its backrest.
For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, or in contact if possible.
The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on the passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stowed or attached securely so that it is not thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.
Refit the head restraint as soon as the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying a child on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Deactivate the passenger front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Installing a booster cushion

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the child lock.
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Child lock

This mechanical system prevents opening of a rear door using its interior control.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door and locking is independent for each door.

Locking



☞ Using the integral ignition key, turn the control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

☞ Using the integral ignition key, turn the control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

Fuel

Capacity of the tank: approximately 57 litres (petrol) or 55 litres (Diesel).

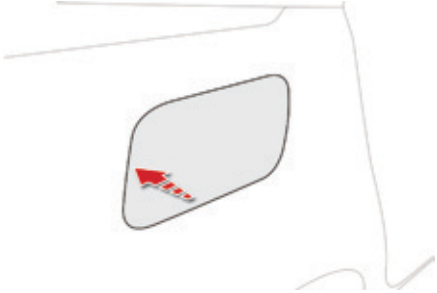
Low fuel level

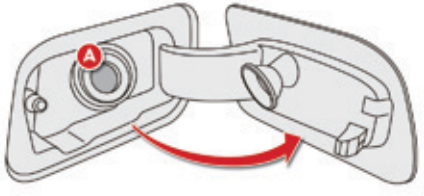
When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message and the last bar of the fuel gauge comes on in orange.

When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.
Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message. This audible warning and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards "**0**".
Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the START/STOP button.

Refuelling





A label on the inside of the fuel filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine type.
Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler flap may result in an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

☞ With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear edge of the flap to open it (the filler cap is a part of it).

☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct type of fuel for your vehicle.
☞ Introduce the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap **A**.
☞ Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
☞ Maintain this position throughout the refuelling operation.
☞ Push the fuel flap to close it.

If you are filling your tank to the top, do not persist after the 3rd cut-off; this could cause malfunctions.

The petrol or Diesel engine of your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.
For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.
The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be introduced.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

i Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



- Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



- Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



- Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).





The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Use only chains designed to be fitted the type of wheel on your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Type of chain
205/60 R16	Maximum link size: 9 mm
205/55 R17	
225/45 R18	THULE model K-Summit K34 only

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Advice on installation

- If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

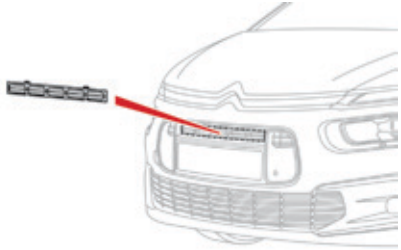
Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Very cold climate screen(s)*

Removable protective screens which prevent the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.
Depending on version, you will have one or two screens.

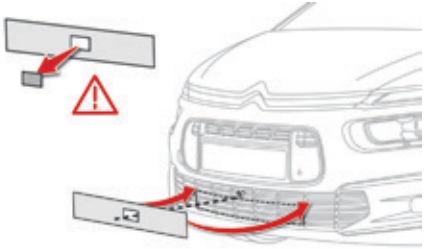
Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the corresponding very cold climate screen to the upper or lower section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press around the edge of each screen to engage its fixing clips one by one.



Removal

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release the fixing clips in turn on each screen.



Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen(s) when:
- the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- towing,
- driving at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

360 Vision system

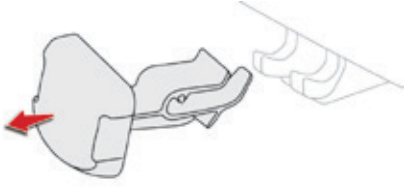
The pre-cut zone must be removed before fitting the screen to the front bumper, to allow operation of the camera.
When the very cold climate screen is fitted, the image provided by the camera is slightly different.

* Depending on the country of sale.

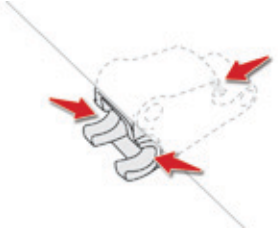
Towbar with quickly detachable towball

No tools are required to install or remove the towball on this genuine towbar system.

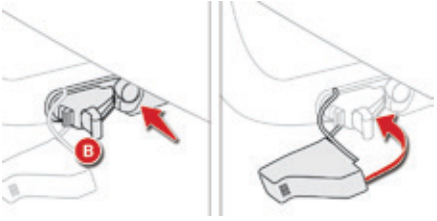
Fitting



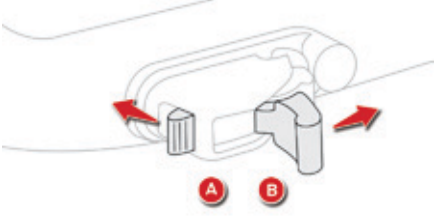
☞ Below the rear bumper, unclip and remove the protective cover on the carrier.



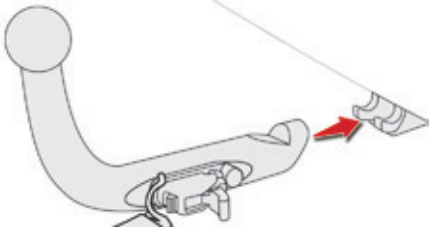
☞ Before fitting the towball, check that the points of contact, indicated by the arrows, are clean.
Use a soft clean cloth.



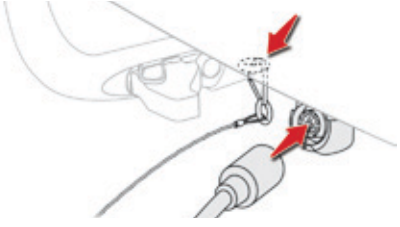
☞ Ensure that the towball is fully engaged. The two pins must be in contact with the cut-outs in the carrier and the trigger **B** must have returned to the "locked" position.
☞ Install and clip in place the protective cover, by rotating it to the left.



☞ On the towball, press and hold control **A**.
☞ Release the locking mechanism by pressing the trigger **B**.

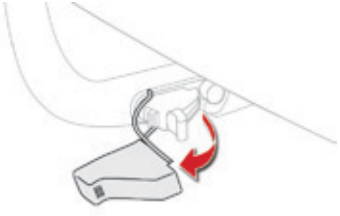


☞ Put the end of the towball into the carrier, located below the bumper, as far as it will go.

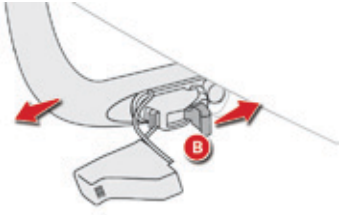


☞ Connect the trailer plug to the 13-way socket provided, located next to the carrier.
☞ Make the trailer safe by attaching its safety cable to the eye provided for this purpose, located on the carrier.

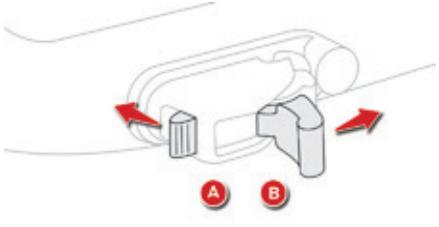
Removing



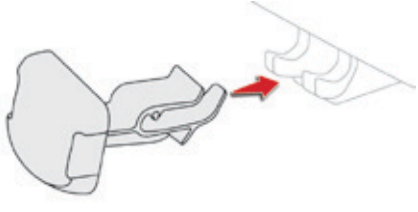
☞ Unclip and remove the protective cover, by turning it to the right.



☞ Press the trigger **B** and remove the towball by pulling it towards you.



☞ On the towball, press and hold control **A**.
☞ Release the locking mechanism by pressing the trigger **B**.



☞ Clip the protective cover in place on the carrier located below the bumper.

! If the towball is not locked in place, the trailer could separate. There is a risk of an accident.
Always lock the towball in the way described.

Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Remove the towball when it is not being used.
Before setting off, check that the trailer lighting and signalling works correctly.
Maximum authorised nose weight: 70 kg.
For more information on your vehicle's **Weights**, refer to the corresponding section.

Carrying system (box or bicycle carrier). You must not exceed the maximum nose weight on the towbar: if this weight is exceeded, the device could detach from the vehicle and cause a serious accident.

Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

i We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.
For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

i For more information on **Weights** (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

! You must observe the maximum trailer weight, indicated on the registration certificate or in the technical specification for your vehicle.

! When not towing a trailer, remove the quickly-detachable tow ball before driving.

! The lane departure warning system is deactivated while a trailer is connected.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to economy mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.
If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth® hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.
In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.
A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Changing a wiper blade

Before removing a front wiper blade



☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen,
or
☞ From one minute after switching off the ignition, reposition the arms manually.

Removing

☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After fitting a front wiper blade

☞ Switch on the ignition.
☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

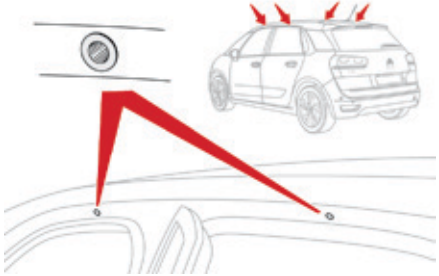
! Replacement of the arms must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Roof bars

For safety reasons and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars that are approved for your vehicle.

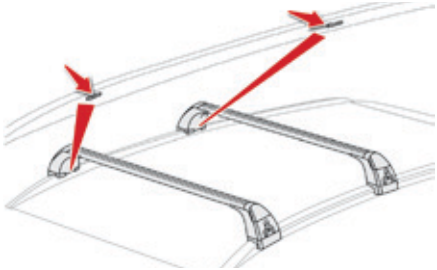
Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use given in the information provided with the roof bars.

Version without longitudinal bars



To install the roof bars, you must secure them only to the four anchorage points in the roof frame. These points are masked by the vehicle's doors when closed.
The roof bar fixings include a stud that should be introduced into the aperture at each anchorage point.

Version with longitudinal bars



You must fit the transverse bars to the longitudinal bars at the fixing points indicated by engraved markings on the longitudinal bars.

Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute the load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Anchor the load securely and fit a warning flag if part of it overhangs the vehicle.
- ☞ Drive gently, as the vehicle will be more liable to the effects of side winds (vehicle stability may be affected).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars as soon as they are no longer needed.

Maximum load, distributed over the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm: **80 kg**.
This value is subject to change, please check the maximum load stated in the instructions provided with he roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Please refer to national legislation so as to meet the requirements on carrying objects that are longer than the vehicle.

When carrying long objects, it is recommended that you deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

TOTAL & CITROËN

Partners in performance and protecting the environment

Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 year, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed lubricants for CITROËN, to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring.
For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain the best performance from your engine.

Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performance of your engine, while also protecting the environment.





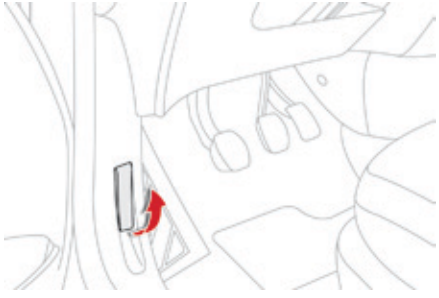
CITROËN

CITROËN prefers TOTAL

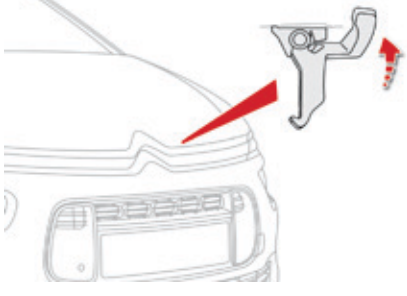
TOTAL

Bonnet

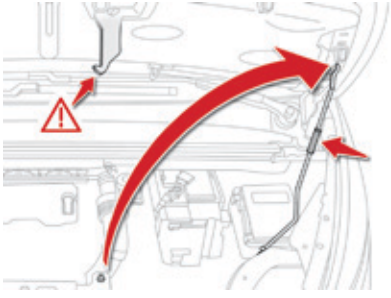
Opening



- Open the left hand front door.
- Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.



- Lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.



- Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

- Take the stay out of its support slot.
- Clip the stay back into its housing.
- Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it has latched correctly.

The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left hand front door is shut.
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.

Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

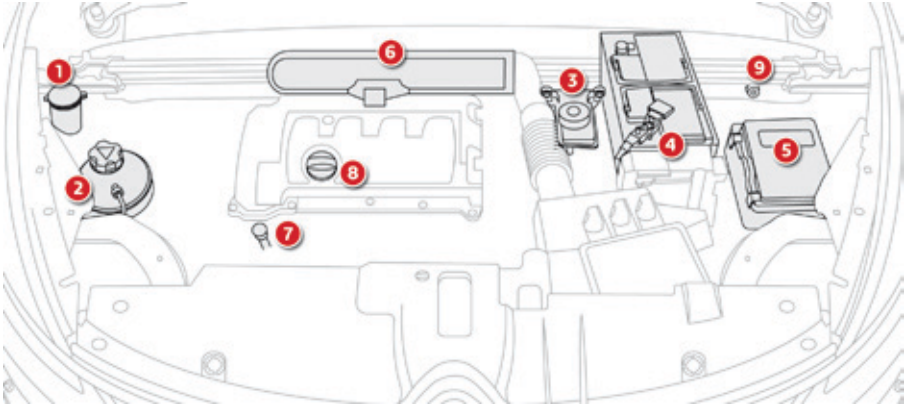


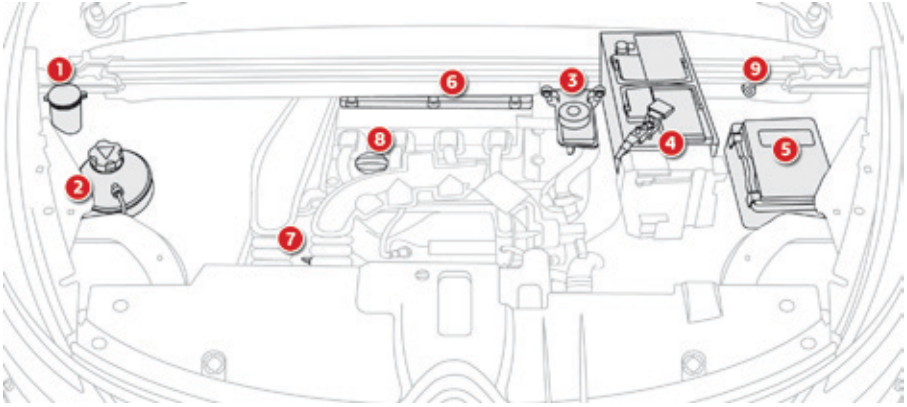
The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

Petrol engines

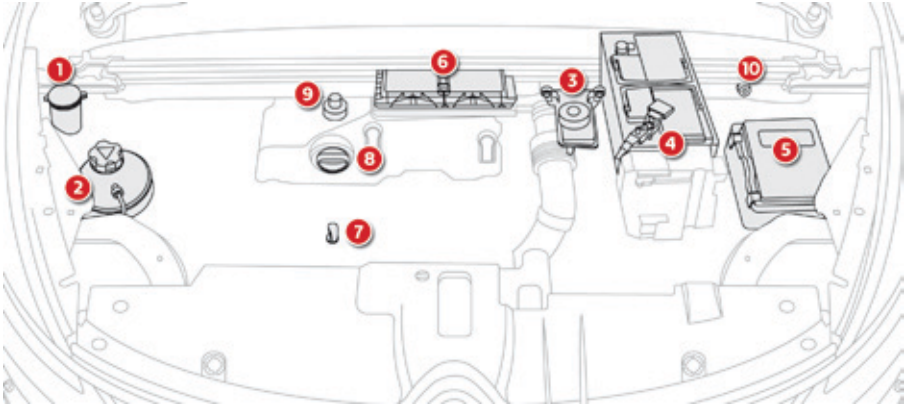
1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery / Fuses.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point.





Diesel engines

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery / Fuses.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Priming pump*.
10. Remote earth point.



* According to engine.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

i To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top-up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top-up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

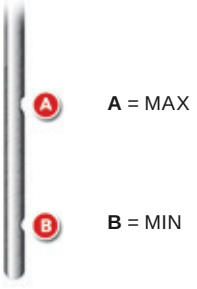
Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.

☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.

☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top-up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping-up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping-up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping-up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash/headlamp wash level low

SERVICE In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the fluid reservoir low level is reached this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The warning lamp comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.
Next time you stop, refill the screenwash / headlamp wash reservoir.

Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly.

It is normal to top-up this fluid between services.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.
The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.
If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top-up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid the risk of scalding in the event of an urgent need to top-up, with a cloth around the cap, unscrew it by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top-up the level.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top-up the level.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

SERVICE The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping-up

The reservoir must be topped-up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.
However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "**12 V battery**" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.

! The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification.
The involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)

SERVICE The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a warning message.

i As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels** and the Diesel additive level in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To avoid damaging the electrical units, **never use** a high pressure jet wash in the engine compartment.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information, refer to the "**Electric parking brake - Operating faults**" section.

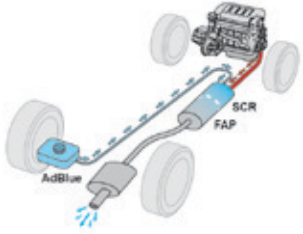
! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® additive and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is held in a special tank with a capacity of about 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km). An alert is triggered automatically to warn you when the reserve level is reached: you can then drive about 1 500 miles (2 400 km) before the tank is empty.

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage of your vehicle between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), it will be necessary to top-up the AdBlue®.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.
In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

Topping-up the AdBlue®

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the fluid between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement. You can go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

Freezing of the AdBlue®
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in all weather conditions.

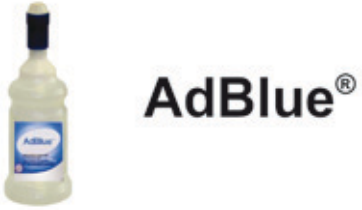
Precautions in use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes.
If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid.
Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

Never dilute AdBlue® with water.
Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.



The supply in a non-drip container or bottle simplifies topping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles or 5 litre containers from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

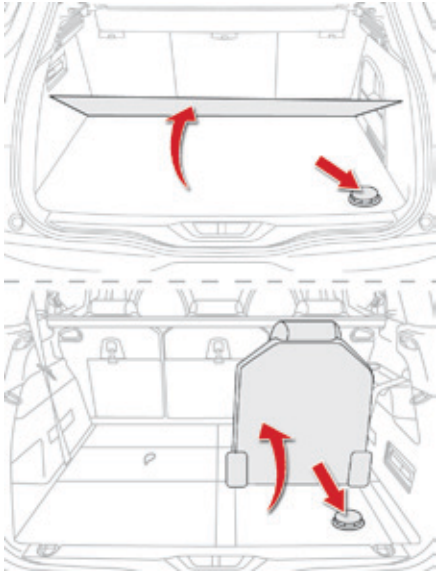
AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Procedure

Before topping-up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise, by freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

☞ Press the START/STOP button to switch off the engine.



☞ For access to the AdBlue® tank, raise the boot floor, or on 7-seat versions, unfold the right hand seat in the third row.



☞ Without pressing, turn the black cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise and lift it off.

☞ Turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Lift off the cap.

☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

Important: if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine, you must add at least 3.8 litres of fluid.

☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

If any fluid is spilt or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

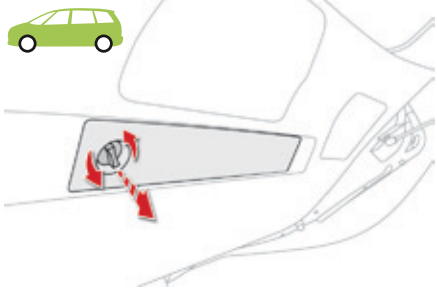
☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
☞ Refit the black cap and turn it a quarter of a turn clockwise without pressing. Ensure that the indicator on the cap lines up with the indicator on the support.
☞ Depending on equipment, return the spare wheel and/or the storage box to the bottom of the boot.
☞ Refit the boot carpet and close the tailgate.

Important: **when topping-up after running out of AdBlue®**, signalled by the message "Top-up AdBlue: Starting prevented", you must wait for approximately 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, placing the key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system inside the vehicle or inserting the electronic key in the reader.**
Switch on the ignition, wait for 10 seconds, then start the engine.

Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a container provided for this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Warning triangle

This safety device should be used in addition to the hazard warning lamps.
Its presence in the vehicle is mandatory in some countries.



A location for stowing the warning triangle is provided in the tailgate interior trim.

! Before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

i Refer to the instructions provided by the supplier on folding and unfolding the triangle.

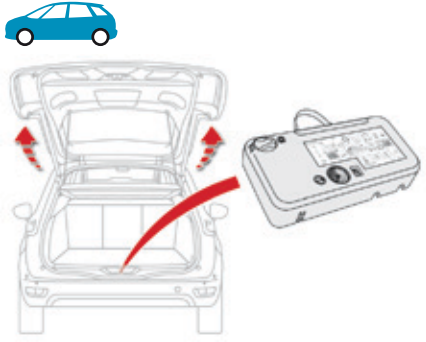
Placing the triangle in the road

☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by the legislation in force in your country.

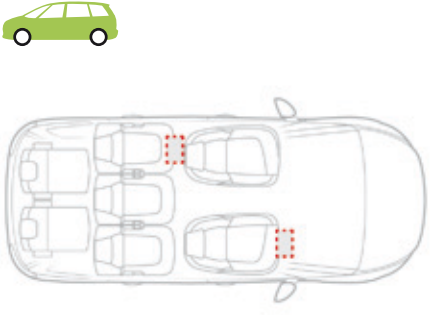
Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit consists of a compressor and a sealant cartridge.
It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.
You are then able to go to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

Access to the kit



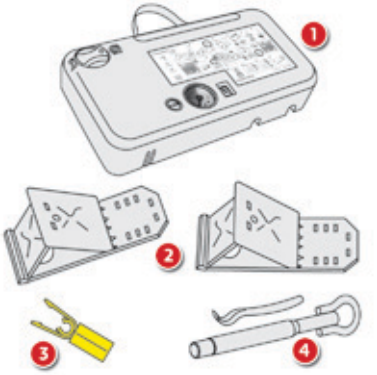
This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.



Depending on version, the kit is stowed under the front passenger's seat or in the storage box under the second row footwell.

* Depending on equipment.

List of tools



All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary depending on equipment. Do not use them for other purposes.

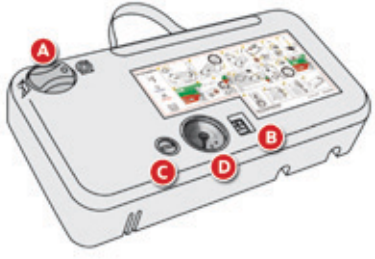
1. 12 V compressor.
   Contains a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre and can also be used for adjusting tyre pressures.
2. Chocks* to immobilise the wheels of the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover remover*.
   For removing the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels.
4. Removable towing eye and front protective cover opening tool.

For more information on **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

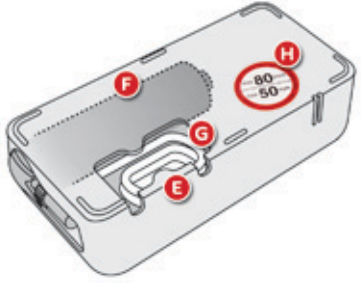
Description of the kit



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"** / off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bars and psi).



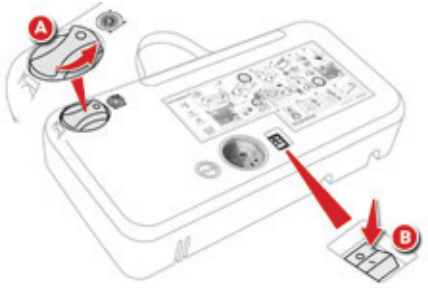
E. Compartment housing a cable with an adaptor for a 12 V socket.
F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair and inflation.
H. Speed limit sticker.

Only the 12 V socket **at the front** of the vehicle allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair or inflate a tyre.
The other 12 V sockets in the vehicle are not suited to the use of the compressor.

The speed limit sticker **H** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.
Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

1. Sealing



☞ Switch off the ignition.



☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.

☞ Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.



☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
☞ Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
☞ Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.

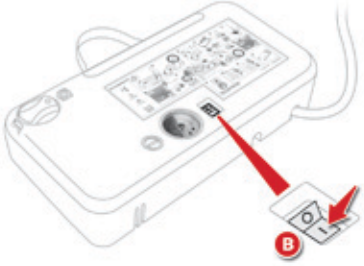


☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

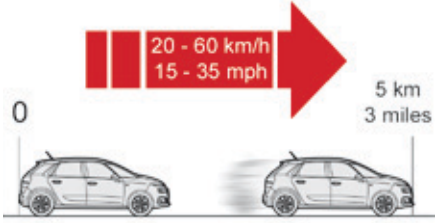
Take care, this product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.

Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.
The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).

i If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

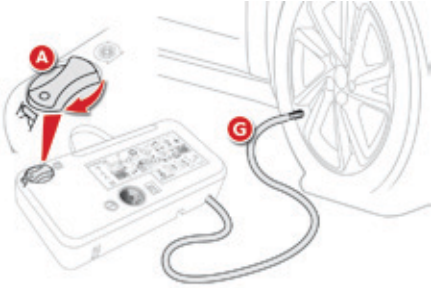


☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.
Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.
☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

i **Tyre under-inflation detection**

After repair of the tyre, the warning lamp will remain on until the system is reinitialised.
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

2. Inflation





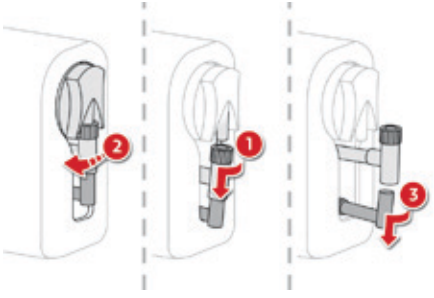


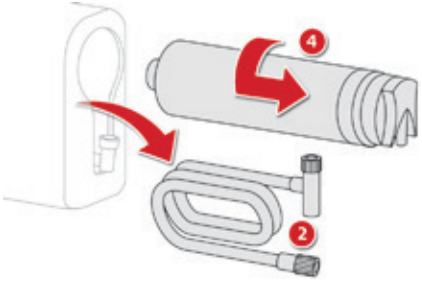
- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Connect the white pipe to the tyre valve.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.

! As soon as possible, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left-hand door aperture).
A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- ☞ Remove and stow the kit.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

Removing the pipe and cartridge



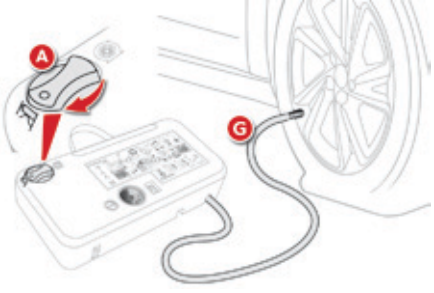


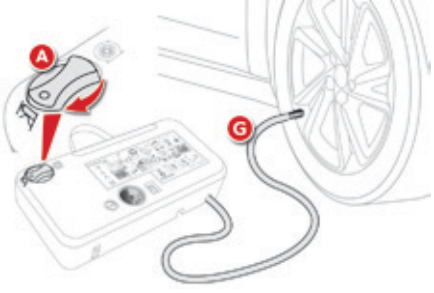
- ☞ Turn the pipe assembly **2** to the left until it contacts the unit.
- ☞ Disconnect the union **1** from the cartridge by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Extract the pipe assembly **2**, then disconnect the union **3** from the air delivery pipe by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Remove the pipe assembly **2**.
- ☞ Support the compressor vertically.
- ☞ Unscrew the cartridge **4** from the bottom.

To fit the new cartridge and new pipe, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! Beware of discharges of fluid.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a CITROËN dealer.
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking / adjusting tyre pressures





You can also use the compressor without injecting any product, to check and if necessary adjust your tyre pressures.

- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Connect the pipe to the tyre valve.

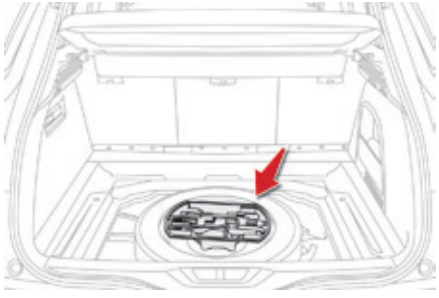
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

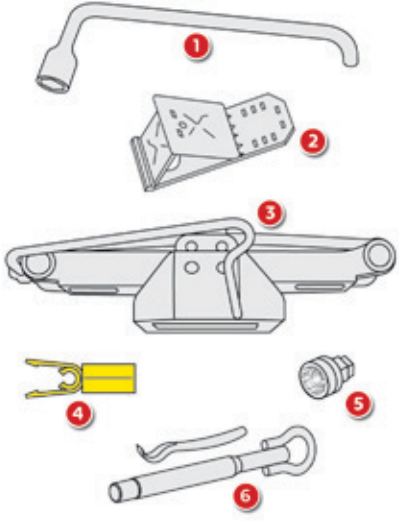
Spare wheel

Procedure for changing a wheel with a punctured tyre for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.
Remove the boot carpet for access to them.



List of tools*

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary according to the level of equipment. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel bolts.
2. Chock for immobilising the vehicle (except versions with manual gearbox).
3. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
4. Wheel bolt cover remover.
   For removing the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels.
5. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
6. Towing eye and front protective cover opening tool.

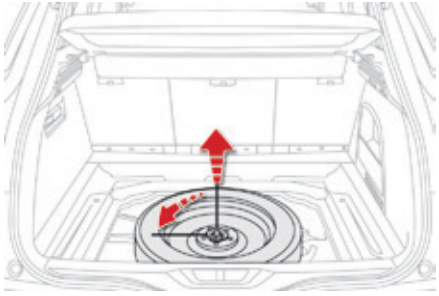
For more information about **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

* Depending on equipment.

Access to the spare wheel

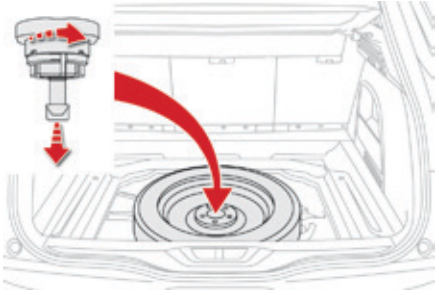
The spare wheel is located in the boot under the floor.

Taking out the wheel



- Unscrew the central nut.
- Remove the fixing (nut and screw).
- Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- Remove the wheel from the boot.

Putting the spare wheel back in place



- Return the wheel to its housing.
- Unscrew the nut a few turns on the screw.
- Position the fixing (nut and screw) in the middle of the wheel.
- Fully tighten the central nut to secure the wheel correctly.



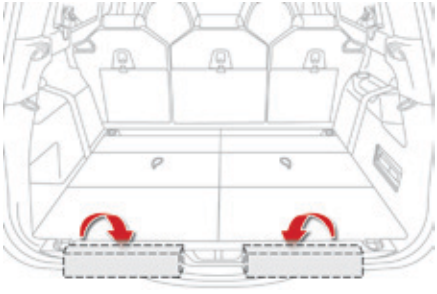
- Return the box to its position in the middle of the wheel.

As the spare wheel is narrower than the wheels on the vehicle, in the event of a puncture, the punctured wheel must be carried in the boot.

Spare wheel

Procedure for changing a wheel with a punctured tyre for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

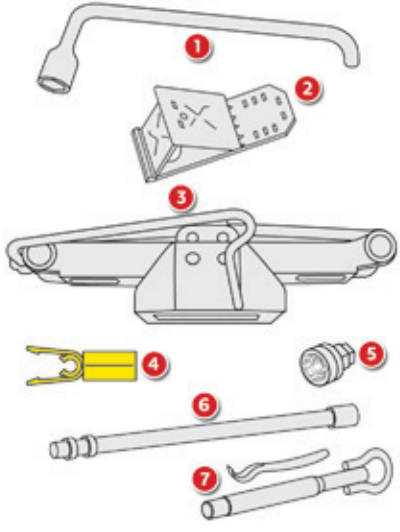
Access to the tools*



Some of the tools are accessible from inside the boot.
The wheel chock **2** as well as the wheelbrace extension **6** are stowed under the right-hand boot sill trim.
The wheelbrace **1** and the towing eye **7** are stowed under the left-hand boot sill.

The other tools, the jack **3** and the tool for removing the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels **4**, are stowed in a box attached to the spare wheel.
The assembly is secured under the vehicle in a carrier.

List of tools*



All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary depending on equipment. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Wheel chock for immobilising the vehicle (except versions with manual gearbox).
3. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
4. Wheel bolt cover remover.
   For removing the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels.
5. Socket for the security bolts (stowed in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special security bolts.
6. Wheelbrace extension.
   For lowering/raising the spare wheel carrier.
7. Towing eye and front protective cover opening tool.

For more information about **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.
When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

* Depending on version. A complete set of tools is provided with the spare wheel.

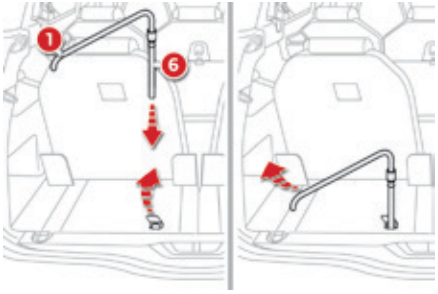
Access to the spare wheel*



The spare wheel is supported by a carrier underneath the vehicle.

> Only a "space-saver" type of spare wheel can be fitted under the vehicle.

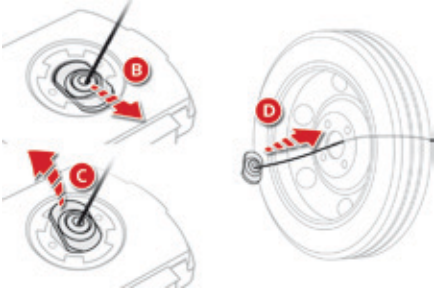
Taking out the spare wheel



- Fold the concertina board and put the left hand third row seat into position (if your vehicle has them).
- Raise the pre-cut section of carpet to expose the nut for operating the spare wheel carrier.
- Using the extension **6** fitted to the end of the wheelbrace **1**, turn the nut clockwise to unwind the carrier cable until the spare wheel reaches the ground. Unwind the length needed for access to the wheel.

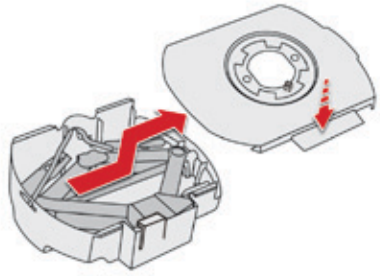


- Take out the wheel / tool box assembly from the rear of the vehicle.
- Straighten the spare wheel for access to the tools (**A**).



- Detach the link piece from the tool box lid (**B - C**).
- Pass the link piece through the middle of the wheel to free it (**D**).

* Depending on version.



☞ Press the tongue, slide the tool box cover to the centre and remove it for access to the other tools (jack and wheel bolt cover remover for alloy wheels).

Stowing the tools

☞ Return the tools to the box and stow the box in the vehicle's boot.
☞ Wind in the carrier by turning the wheelbrace clockwise: once the cable is fully wound in you should no longer feel any resistance.
☞ Stow the other tools in the locations provided in the boot.

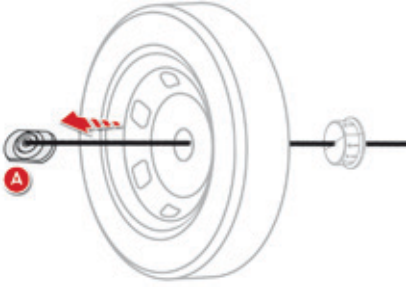
! A punctured wheel from the vehicle cannot be fitted under the vehicle. It must be carried in the boot. Use a cover to protect the boot.

Putting the carrier and spare wheel back in place

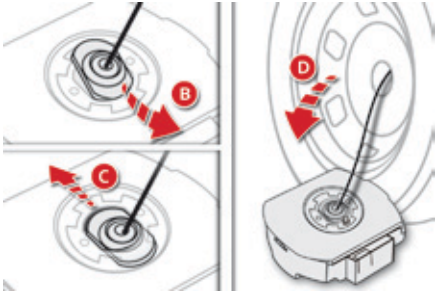


☞ Stow the corresponding tools in the box and close the cover.
☞ Position the tool box on the ground.

! When the spare wheel is fitted in place of a punctured wheel, it is essential to return the carrier and tools to their normal position under the vehicle before moving off.



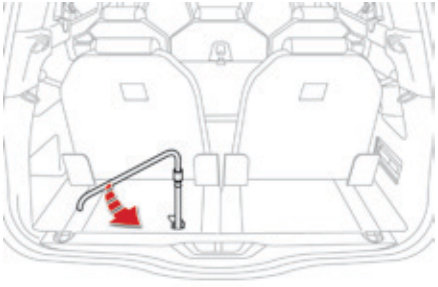
- Straighten the wheel.
- Pass the link piece through the middle of the wheel (**A**).



- Insert the link piece in the aperture in the tool box (**B** - **C**).
- Centre and position the spare wheel on the tool box (**D**).



- Insert the centre guide into the middle of the wheel.
- Place the wheel / tool box assembly under the rear of the vehicle.



- Raise the wheel / tool box assembly underneath the vehicle by turning the carrier drive nut anticlockwise using the wheelbrace and the extension.
- Tighten fully. When the cable is fully wound in, rotation of the nut no longer presents any resistance.
- Check that the wheel is horizontally flat against the floor.

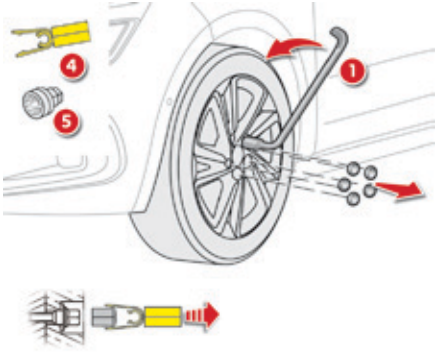
Removing a wheel

Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and not slippery.
Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* to block the wheels.
Check that the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the parking brake control lever come on.
For greater safety, place the chock **2** against the wheel opposite to the one being changed.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
Never go underneath a vehicle supported by a jack; use an axle stand.

* Position **P** for an automatic gearbox.

List of operations



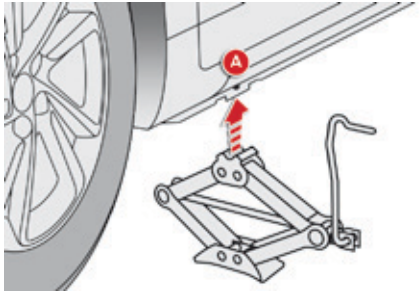
- Remove the wheel bolt cover(s) using the tool **4** (depending on equipment).
- Fit the security socket **5** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt (if fitted).
- Slacken the other bolts (no more than a 1/4 turn) using the wheelbrace **1** only.

! Do not use:
- the jack for any purpose other than lifting the vehicle,
- any other jack than the one supplied by the manufacturer.

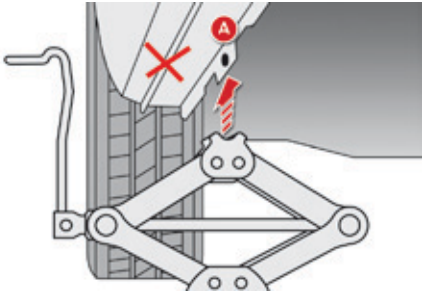


- Place the foot of the jack **3** on the ground and check that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

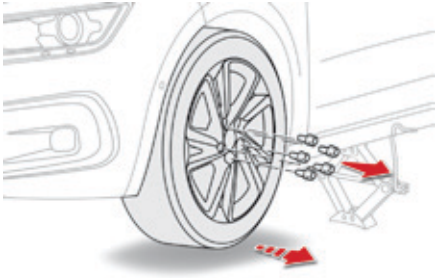
! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop - Risk of injury!
Ensure that the jack is positioned only at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact surface is centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack dropping - Risk of injury!



☞ Extend the jack **3** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the vehicle's contact surface **A** or **B** must engage with the central part of the head of the jack



☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
☞ Remove the wheel.

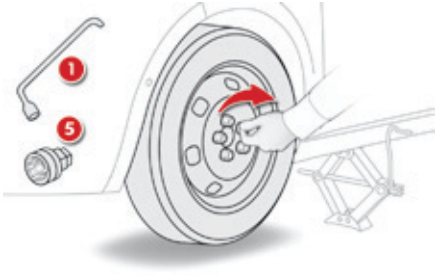
Fitting a wheel



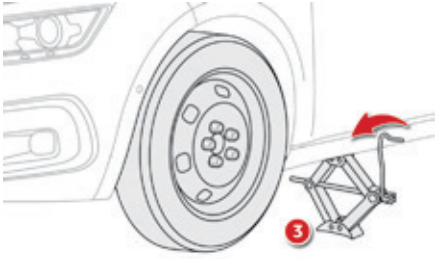
The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged tyre.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

The jack conforms to European legislation, such as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.

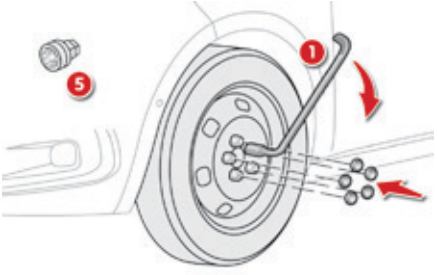
List of operations



- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts fully by hand.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **5** (depending on equipment).
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **3** and detach it.



- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **5** (depending on equipment).
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- Refit the wheel bolt cover(s) (depending on equipment).
- Stow the tools in the box.

Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting, it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical surface of each bolt.

After changing a wheel

To correctly store the punctured wheel in the boot (**not in the location for the space-saver wheel**), first remove the central cover.
When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
Have the punctured wheel repaired and refitted to the vehicle as soon as possible.

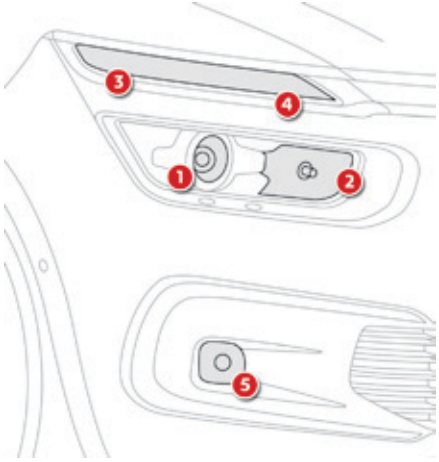


The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

Changing a bulb

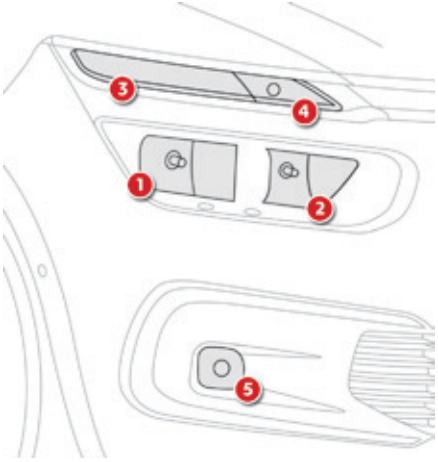
Front lamps

Model with xenon headlamps



1. Directional dipped beam headlamps (D5S-25W).
2. Main beam headlamps (H7-55W).
3. Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (6 light emitting diodes - LEDs).
4. Direction indicators (6 light emittng diodes - LEDs).
5. Front foglamps (H11-55W).

Model with halogen headlamps



1. Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).
2. Main beam headlamps (H7-55W).
3. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (4 light emitting diodes - LEDs).
4. Direction indicators (PWY24W).
5. Foglamps (H11-55W).

! Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D5S-25W) must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i

For H7 type bulbs with lugs... take care to observe their correct installation so as to ensure the best lighting performance.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Light-emitting diodes - LEDs

For replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

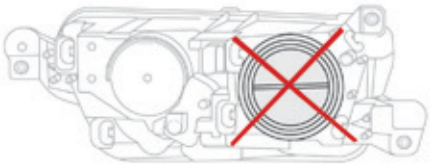
- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

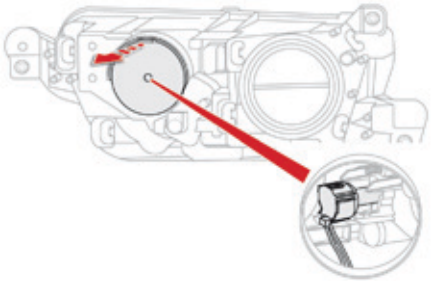
It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Directional dipped beam headlamps (xenon model)



! D5S xenon bulbs must be changed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, as there is a risk of electrocution.
In the event of failure of one of the D5S bulbs, it is recommended that the bulb on the other side be changed at the same time.

Main beam headlamps (xenon model)

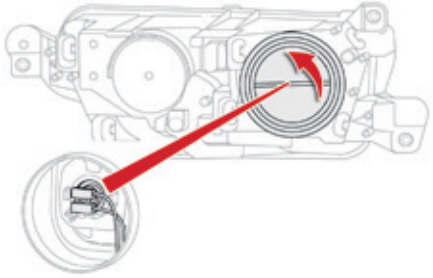


- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Push the connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and change it.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

8

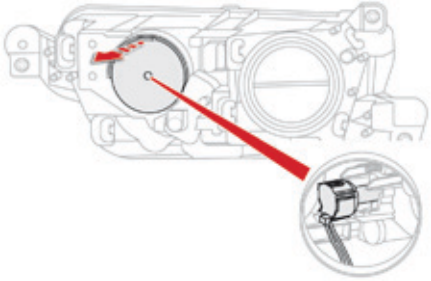
Dipped beam headlamps (halogen model)



- ☞ Turn the protective plastic cover to remove it.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Release the clips.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and change it.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

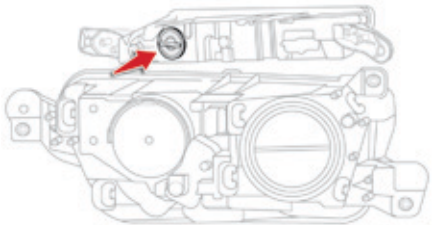
Main beam headlamps (halogen model)



- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Push the connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and change it.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Direction indicators



Faster flashing of a direction indicator warning lamp (left or right) indicates a failed bulb on that side.

The direction indicator bulb is located below the front lamp.

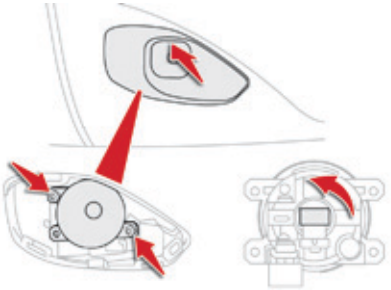
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- Remove the bulb holder.
- Change the failed bulb.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Direction indicators (light-emitting diodes - LED)

For the replacement of this type of lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

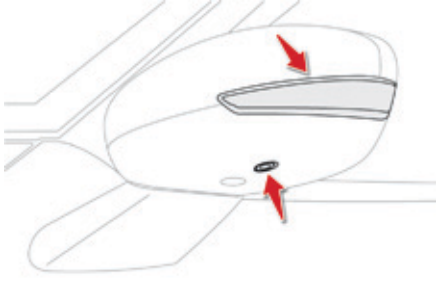
Front foglamps



- Unclip the finisher by pulling at the top.
- Remove the two screws to remove the unit.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn.
- Remove the bulb holder.
- Change the failed bulb.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order, pressing on the finisher to refit it.

Door mirror spotlamps



You should contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of the light-emitting diode - LED.

Integrated direction indicator side repeaters

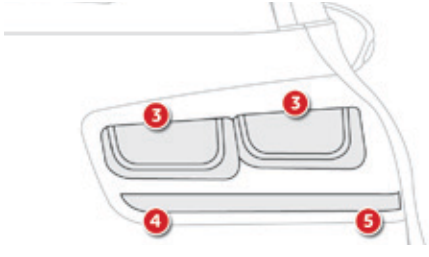
You should contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.

Rear lamps



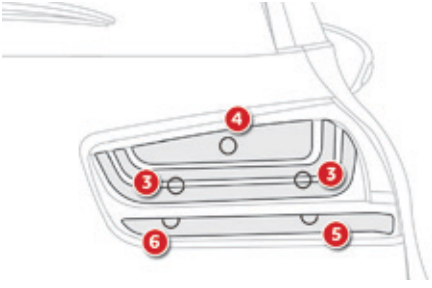
1. Direction indicators (PY21W amber).
2. Sidelamps / foglamps (P21/5W).

Model with LED lamps



3. Brake lamps / sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).
4. Reversing lamps (W16W).
5. Direction indicators (PY21W).

Model with conventional bulb lamps

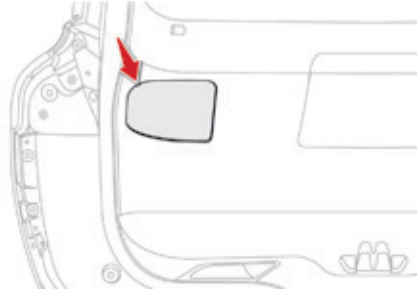


3. Sidelamps (5W5).
4. Brake lamps (P21/W).
5. Direction indicators (WY16W).
6. Reversing lamps (W16W).

Light-emitting diodes - LEDs

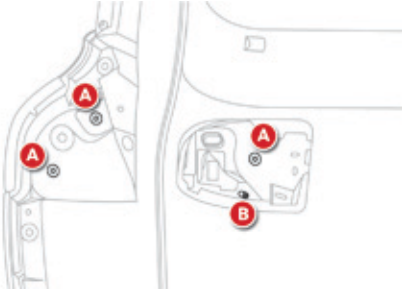
For replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

Lamps on the tailgate

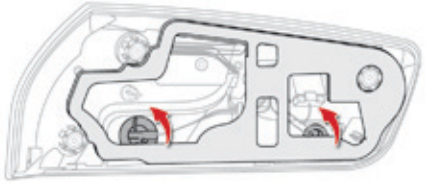


Identify the failed bulb.

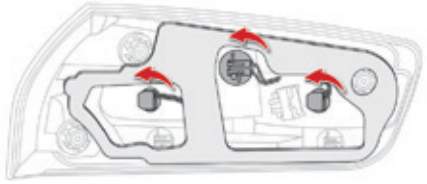
- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Remove the access cover.



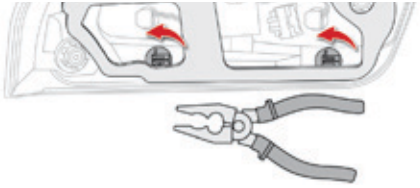
- ☞ Remove the three lamp fixing screws **A**.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Carefully remove the lamp from the outside by pressing the retaining clip **B**.



Model with LED lamps



Model with conventional bulb lamps



To change a reversing lamp or direction indicator bulb:

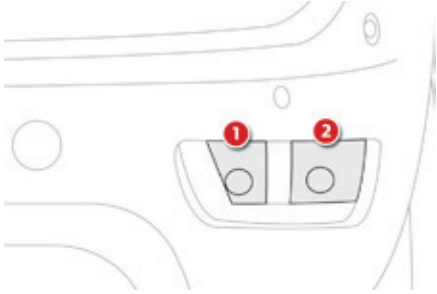
- ☞ Use a standard pair of pliers to turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anticlockwise, and pull it out.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

To change a sidelamp and brake lamp bulb:

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise and pull the bulb out.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

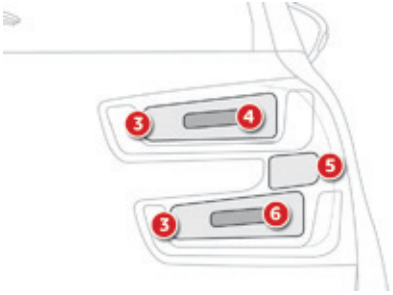
For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Rear lamps



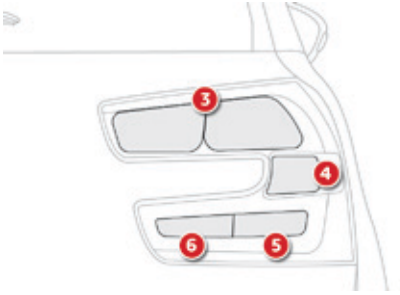
1. Direction indicators (PY21W amber).
2. Sidelamps / foglamps (P21/5W).

Model with LED lamps



3. Sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).
4. Brake lamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).
5. Direction indicators (PY21W).
6. Reversing lamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).

Model with conventional bulb lamps

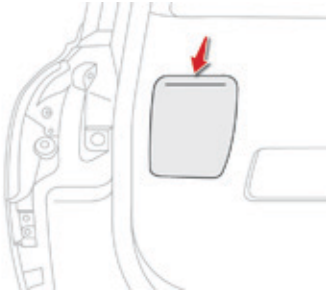


3. Sidelamps (W5W).
4. Brake lamps / sidelamps (P21W).
5. Direction indicators (WY16W).
6. Reversing lamps (W16W).

Light-emitting diodes - LEDs

For replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

Lamps on the tailgate



Identify the failed bulb.

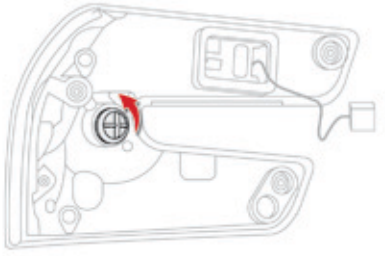
- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Remove the access cover.



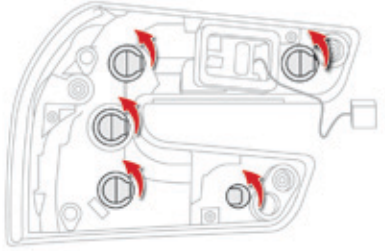
- ☞ Remove the three lamp fixing screws **A**.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Carefully remove the lamp from its housing.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise and pull the bulb out.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

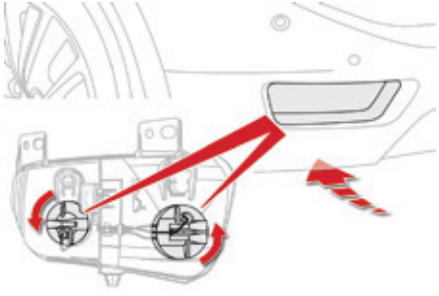
Model with LED lamps



Model with conventional bulb lamps



Direction indicator, sidelamp and foglamp



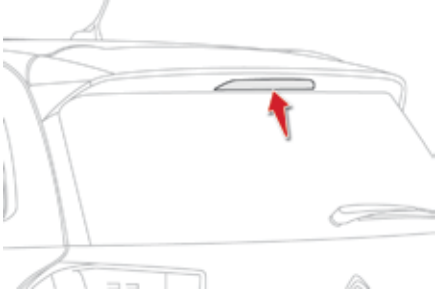
Access is by passing a hand under the bumper.

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

For reassembly carry out these operations in reverse order.

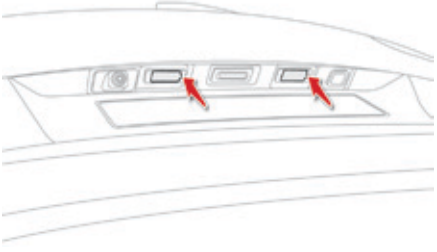
You can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.

Third brake lamp (light-emitting diodes-LED)



For the replacement of this type of lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Number plate lamps (W5W)

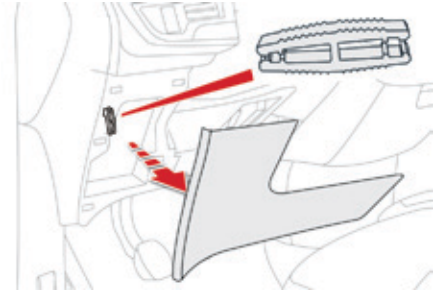


- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the cut-outs in the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tools



The extraction tweezer is located in the dashboard fusebox compartment.
For access to it:

- ☞ unclip the cover by pulling at the top right, then left,
- ☞ disengage the cover completely, by carefully pulling in the direction indicated by the arrow,
- ☞ remove the tweezer.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the failed fuse using the tables and layout drawings in the following pages.

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a fuse of a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good **Failed**



Tweezer

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installing electrical accessories

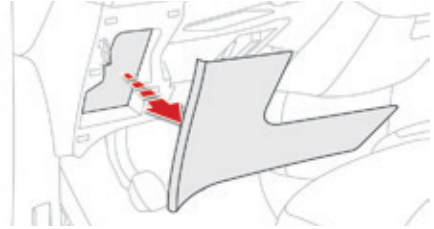
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

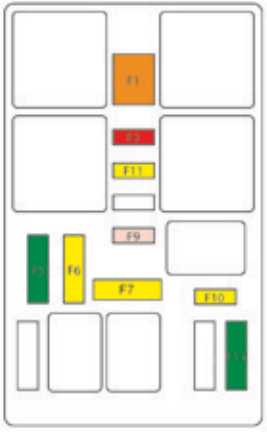
Dashboard fuses

The two fuseboxes are located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses



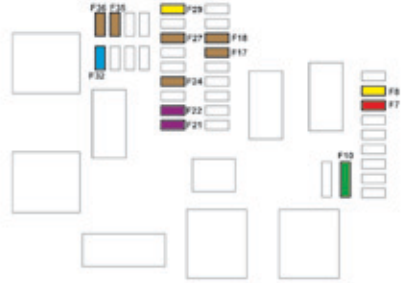
☞ Refer to "Access to the tools".



Fuse tables

Fusebox 1

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	**40 A**	Heated rear screen.
F2	**20 A**	Electric door mirrors.
F5	**30 A**	Panoramic sunroof blind
F6	**20 A**	12 V socket, rear multimedia.
F7	**20 A**	230 V socket.
F9	**25 A**	Heated seats.
F10	**20 A**	Trailer interface unit.
F11	**20 A**	Air conditioning fan.
F12	**30 A**	Electric window motors.



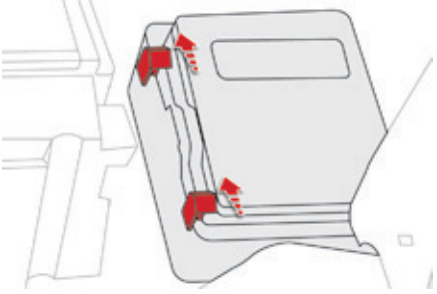
Fusebox 2

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F7	**10 A**	Boot 12 V socket, rear multimedia.
F8	**20 A**	Rear wiper.
F10	**30 A**	Locks.
F17	**5 A**	Instrument panel.
F18	**5 A**	Automatic gearbox gear selector.
F21	**3 A**	START/STOP button.
F22	**3 A**	Rain and sunshine sensor, windscreen camera.
F24	**5 A**	Parking sensors, panoramic visual aid.
F27	**5 A**	Automatic gearbox.
F29	**20 A**	Audio and telematic systems.
F32	**15 A**	12 V sockets.
F35	**5 A**	Headlamp beam height adjustment, heated rear screen, radar.
F36	**5 A**	Interior lighting: glove box, central storage, reading lamps, courtesy lamps.

Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- Unclip the cover, by pushing the two red latches towards the rear of the vehicle.
- Change the fuse.
- When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F16	**20 A**	Headlamp wash.
F18	**10 A**	Right hand main beam.
F19	**10 A**	Left hand main beam.
F29	**40 A**	Wipers.



12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

Lead-acid starter batteries

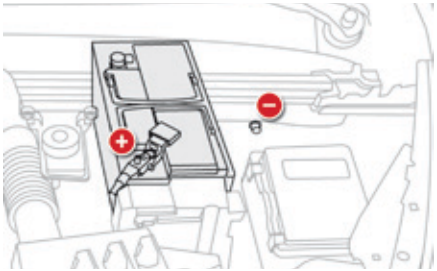
Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.
For access to the (+) terminal:

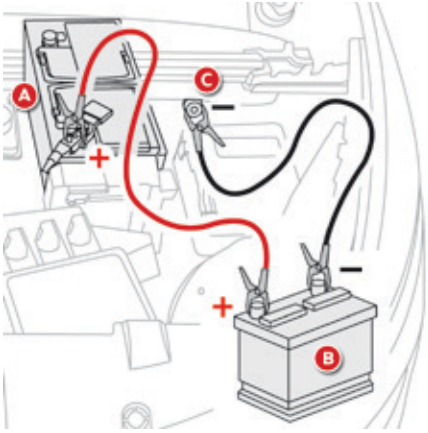
- release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay,
- lift the plastic cover for access to the (+) terminal.

The (-) battery terminal is not accessible.
A remote earth point is located in the upper section under the bonnet (alongside the battery).

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables or a battery booster.

! Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...).
Ensure that the jump lead cables do not pass close to moving parts of the engine (cooling fan, belts, ...).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- Raise the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B** or the booster.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** or the booster (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you use your vehicle essentially for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you envisage charging your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

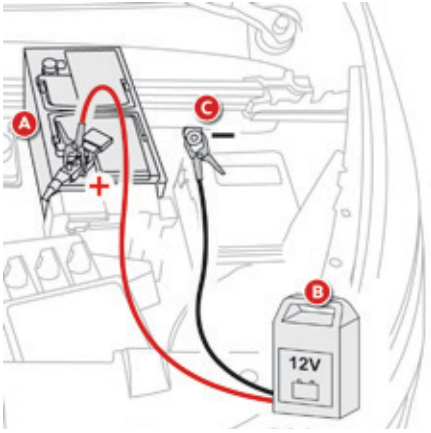


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger, to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, ...).
- ☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.



! Never try to charge a frozen battery. If the battery has been frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

Disconnecting the battery

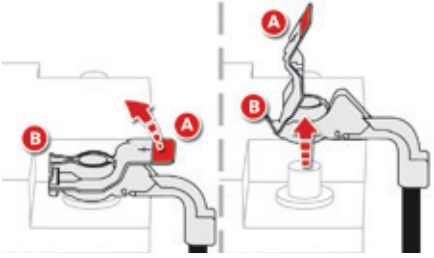
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, ...),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

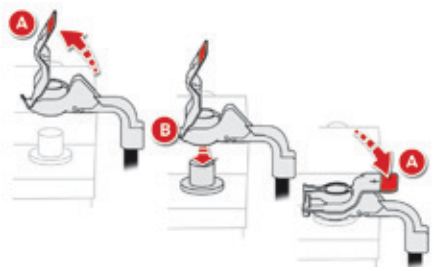
At the battery, detach just the (+) terminal.

Quick-release terminal clamp



Disconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.



Reconnecting the (+) terminal

- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if problems remain following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise (depending on version):

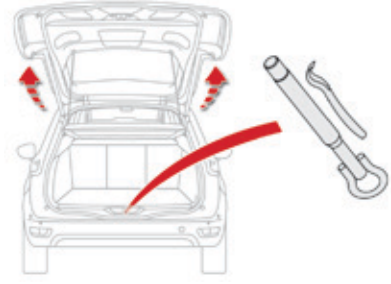
- the remote control key,
- the electric blind(s),
- ...

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the ambient temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.
The front protective cover opening tool is fixed on the towing eye.
To gain access to it:

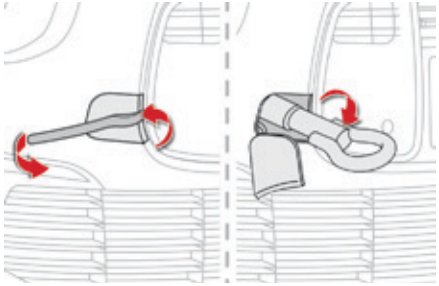
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from its housing.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.
In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

Towing your vehicle

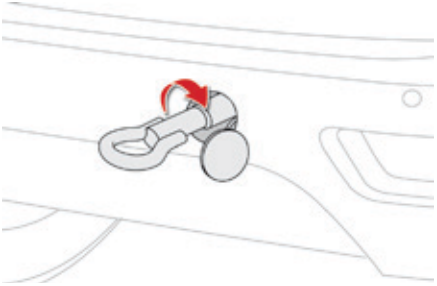


- On the front bumper, unclip the cover using the tool fixed on the towing eye.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** with an automatic gearbox).

Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- Unlock the steering by turning the key in the ignition one notch and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

i For more information on **Diesel misfuel prevention**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

BlueHDi engines

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- Repeat the operation 10 times.
- Operate the starter to run the engine.

Other HDi engines

(except BlueHDi version)



- Add at least five litres of Diesel fuel to the tank.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Refit the styling cover and clip it in place.
- Close the bonnet.

Petrol engines and gearboxes

Petrol engine	PureTech 110 S&S	PureTech 130 S&S	
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code	3D	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...
	HNX... M/1S - M/2SM	HNY... M/1S - M/2SM	HNY... T/1S - T/2S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 199		
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 90.5		
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	96		
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 500		
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	230		
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		
Fuel	Unleaded		
Catalytic converter	yes		
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	4.25		

3D...: CITROËN C4 Picasso (5-seat). **3E...:** CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (5-seat). **3A...:** CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (7-seat).

9

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

Petrol engine	THP 150 / 160	THP 165 S&S	THP 165 S&S**
Gearbox	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...
	5GX - 5GY... A-A/1-A/2-A/D- A/1D- A/2D- Y-Y/1-Y/2	5GZT/S	5GY... A/S - A/1S - A/2S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598	1 598	1 598
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	110 / 121	121	121
Max power engine speed (rpm)	6 000	6 000	6 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	240	240	240
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 400	1 400	1 400
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Catalytic converter	yes	yes	yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	4.25	4.25	4.25

3D...: CITROËN C4 Picasso (5-seat). **3E...:** CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (5-seat). **3A...:** CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (7-seat).

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).
** For Israel.

Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg)

Petrol engine	PureTech 110 S&S*	PureTech 130 S&S*	
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code	3D	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...
	HNX... M/1S - M/2SM	HNY... M/1S - M/2SM	HNY... T/1S - T/2S
Unladen weight	1 280	1 280 - 1 295 - 1 297	1 298 - 1 315 - 1 317
Kerb weight**	1 355	1 355 - 1 370 - 1 372	1 373 - 1 390 - 1 392
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 905	1 905 - 2 075 - 2 125	1 918 -1 957 - 2 136
Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 035	3 175 - 3 125 - 3 175	3 188 - 3 007 - 3 186
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 130	1 270 - 1 050 - 1 050	1 270 - 1 050 - 1 050
Braked trailer*** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 330	1 470 - 1 350 - 1 350	1 470 - 1 350 - 1 350
Unbraked trailer	640	640 - 647 - 648	640 - 647 - 648
Recommended nose weight	70	70	70

* The weight values are calculated with a towbar.
** The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
*** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
When towing, the speed must never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the exterior temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Petrol engine	THP 150 / 160	THP 165 S&S	THP 165 S&S***
Gearbox	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...
	5GX - 5GY... A-A/1-A/2-A/D- A/1D- A/2D- Y-Y/1-Y/2	5GZT/S	5GY... A/S - A/1S - A/2S
Unladen weight	1 405 - 1 428 - 1 430	1 310 - 1 318 - 1 320	1 390 - 1 425 - 1 425
Kerb weight*	1 480 - 1 503 - 1 505	1 385- 1 393 - 1 395	1 465 - 1 500 - 1 500
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 940 - 2 140 - 2 160	1 930 - 2 100 - 2 150	1 930 - 2 100 - 2 150
Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 740 - 2 940 - 2 960	3 330 - 3 350 - 3 350	3 330 - 3 350 - 3 350
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	800	1 400 - 1 250 - 1 200	1 400 - 1 250 - 1 200
Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	800	1 600 - 1 550 - 1 500	1 600 - 1 550 - 1 500
Unbraked trailer	600	685 - 690 - 690	685 - 690 - 690
Recommended nose weight	70	70	70

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.
*** For Israel.
The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.
When towing, the speed must never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the exterior temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Diesel engine	HDi 115	BlueHDi 100 S&S
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Model code	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...
	9HC... 8 - 8/1	BHY... 6/1S - 6/2SM
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	1 560
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	85	73
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 600	3 750
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	270	254
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	1 750
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	yes	yes
Particle filter	no	yes
Engine oil capacity, with filter replacement (in litres)	3.75	3.75

.../S: e-HDi model fitted with Stop & Start.
3D...: CITROËN C4 Picasso (5-seat).
3E...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (5-seat).
3A...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (7-seat).

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Diesel engine	**BlueHDi 115/120 S&S**		**BlueHDi 135/150 S&S**	
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...
	BHZ - BHX... M/S - M/1S	BHZ - BHX... T/1S - T/2S	AHX-AHR-AHV-AHS... M/S - M/1S	AHX... T/S - T/1S
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560		1 997	
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3		85 x 88	
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	85 / 88		110	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 500		3 750	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	300		370	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		1 750	
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel	
Catalytic converter	yes		yes	
Particle filter	yes		yes	
Engine oil capacity, with filter replacement (in litres)	3.75		6.1	

.../S: e-HDi model fitted with Stop & Start.
3D...: CITROËN C4 Picasso (5-seat).
3E...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (5-seat).
3A...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (7-seat).

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	**HDi 115**		**BlueHDi 100 S&S***
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)		Manual (6-speed)
Model code	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...
	9HC8	9HC8/1	BHY... 6/1S - 6/2SM
Unladen weight	1290 - 1 310 - 1 312	1 298 - 1 318 - 1 320	1 296 - 1 318 - 1 320
Kerb weight**	1 365 - 1 385 - 1 387	1 373 - 1 393 - 1 395	1 371 - 1 393 - 1 395
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 940 - 2 110 - 2 150	1 940 - 2 110 - 2 150	1 950 - 2 120 - 2 175
Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 340 - 3 350 - 3 350	2 740 - 2 910 - 2 950	3 150 - 3 120 - 3 175
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 400 - 1240 - 1 200	800	1 200 - 1 000 - 1 000
Brakes trailer*** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 600 - 1 540 - 1 500	800	1 400 - 1 300 - 1 300
Unbraked trailer	680 - 690 - 690	685 - 695 - 695	645 - 659 - 660
Recommended nose weight	70	70	70

* The weights are calculated with a towbar fitted.
** The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
*** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.
The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
When towing, the speed must never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	**BlueHDi 115/120 S&S**		**BlueHDi 135/150 S&S**	
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...	3D... 3E... 3A...
	BHZ - BHX... M/S - M/1S	BHZ - BHX... T/1S - T/2S	AHX-AHR-AHV-AHS... M/S - M/1S	AHX... T/S - T/1S
Unladen weight	1 320 - 1 345 - 1347	1 320 - 1 357 - 1 359	1 415 - 1 428 - 1 430	1 435 - 1 474 - 1 476
Kerb weight*	1 395 - 1 420 - 1 422	1 395 - 1 432 - 1 434	1 490 - 1 503 - 1 505	1 510 - 1 549 - 1 551
Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 950 - 2 100 - 2 175	1 975 - 2 025 - 2 205	2 030 - 2 200 - 2 250	2 030 - 2 200 - 2 280
Gross train weight (MTRA) on a 12% gradient	3 350 - 3 350 - 3 375	3 375 - 3 225 - 3 405	3 530 - 3 560 - 3 650	3 530 - 3 580 - 3 580
Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 400 - 1 250 - 1 200	1 400 - 1 200 - 1 200	1 500 - 1 450 - 1 400	1 500 - 1 380 - 1 300
Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 600 - 1 550 - 1 500	1 600 - 1 500 - 1 500	1 700 - 1 750 - 1 700	1 700 - 1 680 - 1 600
Unbraked trailer	660 - 672 - 674	660 - 675 - 675	745 - 750 - 750	750
Recommended nose weight	70	70	70	70

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

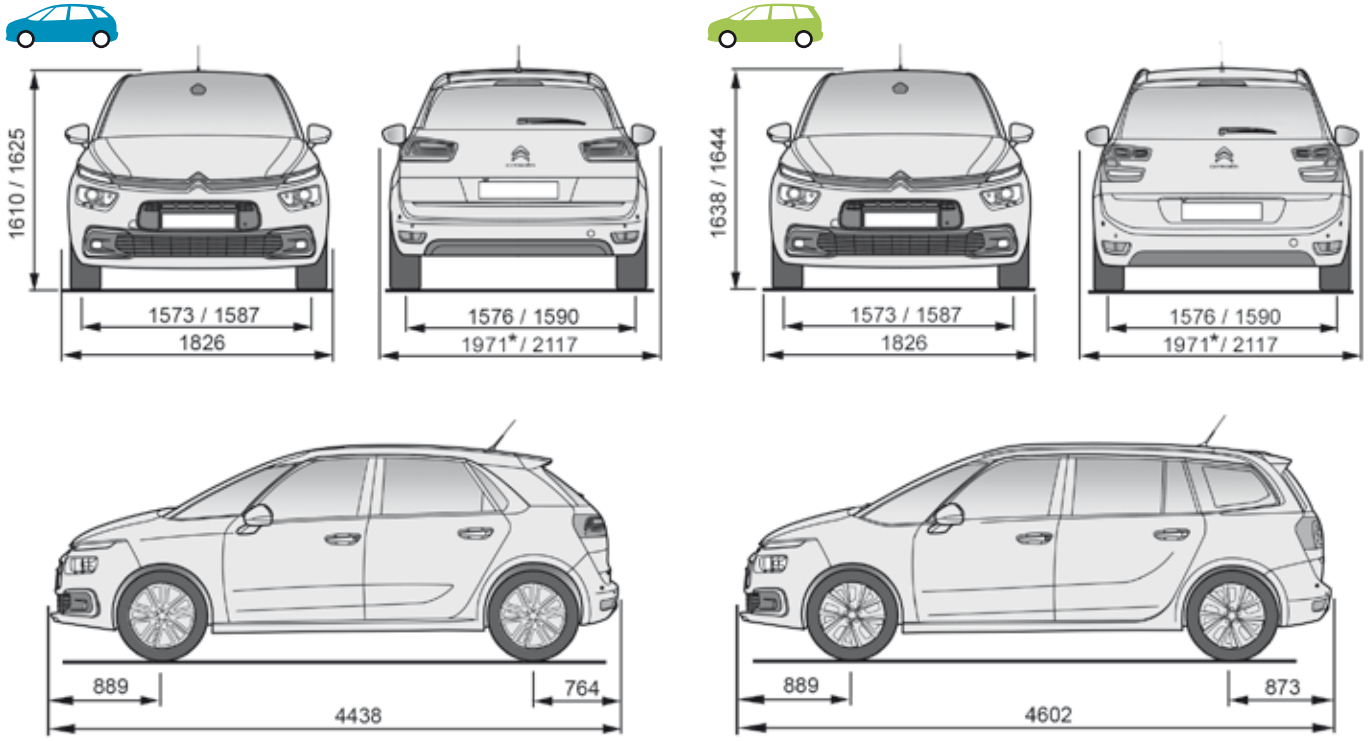
The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the speed must never exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Dimensions (in mm)

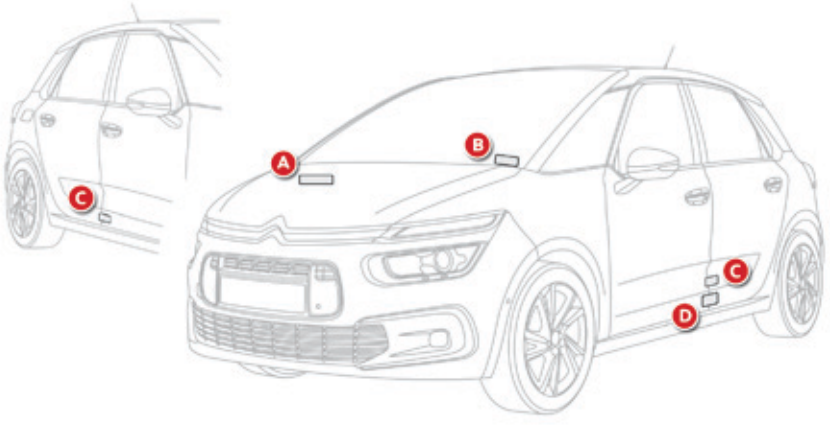
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



* Mirrors folded.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the chassis near the right-hand front wheel arch.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower cross member.
This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
This self-destroying label on the middle door pillar, right or left-hand side, contains the following information:
- the manufacturer's name,
- the European whole vehicle type approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised weight (gross vehicle weight),
- the maximum authorised weight with trailer (gross train weight),
- the maximum front axle weight,
- the maximum rear axle weight.

D. Tyre/paint label.
This label on the middle door pillar, driver's side, contains the following information:
- the tyre inflation pressures, laden and unladen,
- the tyre sizes (including the tyre load index and speed rating),
- the inflation pressure for the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.

The original tyres fitted to the vehicle may have a load index or speed rating higher than those given on the label; this has no effect on the inflation pressures.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

If the tyre pressures are too low, this increases fuel consumption.

A

Accessories 132, 229
Accessory position 132
Access to the 3rd row 88
Active Safety Brake 27, 32, 178, 180
AdBlue® additive 19, 36, 43, 282, 283
Adjusting head restraints 80
Adjusting the air distribution 96, 99
Adjusting the air flow 96, 99
Adjusting the date 52
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 93
Adjusting the seat 76, 78, 84, 86
Adjusting the seat belt height 236
Adjusting the temperature 96, 99
Adjusting the time 52
Advice on care and maintenance 281
Advice on driving 125, 126
Airbags 33, 241
Airbags, curtain 243, 244
Airbags, front 242, 244
Airbags, lateral 243, 244
Air conditioning 9, 98
Air conditioning, automatic 95, 99
Air conditioning, manual 95, 97
Air intake 99
Air vents 94
Alarm 71
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 233
Anti-pinch 228
Anti-slip regulation (ASR) 233
Anti-theft 132
Armrest, front 83, 107
Assistance call 231
Assistance, emergency braking 181, 233
Automatic headlamps 24

B

Battery 270, 280, 318-321
Battery, charging 320
Battery, remote control 59, 60
Black panel 48
Black screen 48
Blanking screen (snow shield) 266
Blind, panoramic sunroof 228
Blind spot monitoring system 25, 187, 189
Blind spot monitoring system, assisted ... 25, 189
Blind spot sensors 25, 187
Blinds, side 108, 114
BlueHDi 282, 324
Bonnet 274
Boot 64
Boot (fittings) 119
Boot (opening) 53
Bottle holder 107
Brake discs 281
Brake lamps 308-311
Brakes 30, 35, 281
Braking, automatic emergency 27, 32, 178, 180
Braking, dynamic emergency 133, 138
Bulbs (changing) 304, 308-311

C

Capacity, fuel tank 262
Cap, fuel filler 262
Cartridge, fragrance 105
Central locking 54, 56, 57
Changing a bulb 304, 308-311
Changing a fuse 313
Changing a wheel 294-297
Changing a wiper blade 227, 271
Changing the remote control battery 59
Checking the engine oil level 42
Checking the levels 277-279
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 287
Checks 275, 276, 280, 281
Child lock 261
Children 252, 255, 256, 258
Children (safety) 261
Child seats 240, 245, 246, 250-252, 260
Child seats, conventional 251
Child seats, ISOFIX 254-256, 258
CITROËN Connect Box 231
CITROËN Localised Emergency Call 231
Closing the boot 64
Closing the doors 54, 56, 57
Collision Risk Alert 27, 32, 178, 179
Configurations, seats 91
Configuration, vehicle 11, 13
Control, emergency boot release 68
Control, emergency door 63
Control, heated seats 82
Control stalk, lighting 24, 211, 215
Control stalk, wipers 223, 224, 226
Courtesy lamps 123
Cruise control 151, 154, 159, 169
Cruise control, dynamic 162
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 154
Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function 169
Cup holder 107

D

Date (setting)....52
Daytime running lamps.... 219, 304, 308
Deactivating the passenger airbag....242
Deadlocking 54, 56, 58
Defrosting....104
Defrosting, front 104
Demisting 104
Demisting, front....104
Demisting, rear....104, 208
Demisting, rear screen 104, 208
Dimensions 333
Dipstick....42, 277
Direction indicators....215, 220, 304, 307-311
Display screen, instrument panel 147
Doors....62
Driver's attention warning....191
Driving economically....9
Driving positions (storing)....79
Driving time warning....190
Dynamic stability control (DSC)..... 32, 233, 235

E

Eco-driving 9
Eco-driving (advice)....9
Economy mode 270
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)...233
Emergency Braking Assistance (EBA)....233
Emergency call 231
Emergency warning lamps 230, 286
Emissions control system, SCR 37
Energy economy mode....270
Engine compartment 275, 276
Engine, Diesel....25, 264, 276, 324, 329, 330
Engine, petrol....264, 275, 325
Engines 325, 329, 330
Environment....9, 59
ESC/ASR....233

F

Fatigue detection 190, 191
Filling the fuel tank.... 262-264
Filter, air 280
Filter, oil....280
Filter, particle 279, 280
Filter, passenger compartment....280
Fitting a wheel....300
Fitting roof bars....272
Fittings, boot 119
Fittings, interior 107, 108
Fittings, rear 113
Flap, fuel filler....262, 263
Flashing indicators....215, 220
Floor, concertina....89
Foglamps 304
Foglamps, front 213, 221, 304, 307, 312
Foglamps, rear....213, 308, 310
Folding the rear seats 84, 86, 88, 89
Fuel....9, 264
Fuel consumption....9, 51
Fuel tank....263
Fusebox, dashboard 313
Fusebox, engine compartment....313
Fuses....313

G

Gauge, fuel....262
Gearbox, automatic 9, 142, 148, 281, 318
Gearbox, manual 9, 141, 148, 281
Gear efficiency indicator....147
Gear lever 9
Gear lever, manual gearbox 141
Glove box 107, 108

H

Hands-free access....69
Hands-free tailgate 67, 69
Hazard warning lamps 230, 286
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation....230
Headlamp adjustment....220
Headlamps, automatic dipping 217
Headlamps, automatic illumination 212, 216
Headlamps, dipped beam.....24, 211, 304, 305
Headlamps, directional 222, 304
Headlamps, halogen....304
Headlamps, main beam... 24, 211, 304-306, 308

Headlamps, Xenon 304
Headlamp wash 225
Head restraints, front 80
Head restraints, rear 85
Heating 9, 96, 97
Hill start assist 140
Hooks 118
Horn 230

I

Identification, vehicle 334
Ignition 132
Immobiliser, electronic 60, 132
Indicator, AdBlue® range 43
Indicator, coolant temperature 41
Indicator, engine oil level 42
Indicator lamps, operation 22, 25, 27, 31
Indicator lamps, status 25, 31
Indicators, direction 220
Inflating tyres 9, 287
Instrument panels 18-20
Intelligent Traction Control 234
ISOFIX 255
Isofix mountings 254

J

Jack 294-297
Jump starting 319

K

Key 53, 55, 56, 59, 60
Key, electronic 53-58
Keyless Entry and Starting 55, 57, 60
Key with remote control 132
Kit, temporary puncture repair 287

L

Labels, identification 334
Lamp, boot 122
Lamps, parking 215
Lane departure warning active 30, 183, 189
LEDs - light-emitting diodes 304, 308, 310
Leg rest, electric 81
Level, AdBlue® additive 282
Level, brake fluid 278
Level, Diesel additive 279
Level, engine coolant 41, 279
Level, engine oil 42, 277
Level, headlamp wash 278
Levels and checks 275-279
Level, screenwash fluid 278
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 304, 308, 310
Lighting 24, 124
Lighting, directional 221, 222
Lighting, guide-me home 215
Lighting, interior 123, 124
Lighting, mood 124
Lighting, welcome 219
Loading 9
Load reduction mode 270
Localised Assistance Call 231
Locating your vehicle 54
Locking from the inside 61
Locking the doors 61
Low fuel level 262
Lumbar 81

M

Maintenance, routine 9
Map reading lamps 123
Markings, identification 334
Massage function 81
Mat 112
Memorising a speed 151
Mirror, child surveillance 210
Mirror, rear view 209
Mirrors, door 104, 187, 208, 209
Misfuel prevention 263
Modularity, seats 91
Motorised tailgate 65-67

Mountings, Isofix....254
Multimedia, rear....115

N

Net....120
Number plate lamps....312

O

Oil change....277
Oil consumption....277
OIl, engine....277
Opening the bonnet....274
Opening the boot....53, 55, 64
Opening the doors....53, 55
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind....228

P

Pads, brake....281
Paint colour code....334
Panoramic glass sunroof....228
Parcel shelf, rear....113, 118
Park Assist....197, 199, 201, 202
Parking brake....281
Parking brake, electric....133, 138
Parking sensors, front....193
Parking sensors, rear....192
Plates, identification....334
Port, USB....111
Pressures, tyres....288, 293, 303, 334
Pre-tensioning seat belts....240
Priming pump....324
Priming the fuel system....324
Protecting children....242, 245, 246, 250, 252, 255, 256, 258, 260
Puncture....287, 294, 296

R

Range....51
Range, AdBlue®....43
Reading lamps, rear....113
Rear screen, demisting....104
Recharging the battery....320
Recirculation, air....96, 99
Reduction of electrical load....270
Regeneration of the particle filter....280
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system....206
Reinitialising the remote control....59
Remote control....53-57, 60
Removing a wheel....300
Removing the mat....112
Replacing bulbs....304, 308-311
Replacing fuses....313
Replacing the air filter....280
Replacing the oil filter....280
Replacing the passenger compartment filter....280
Resetting the service indicator....40
Resetting the trip recorder....46
Reversing camera....194
Reversing lamp....308-311
Roof bars....272
Running out of fuel (Diesel)....324

S

Safety, children....242, 245, 246, 250, 252, 255, 256, 258, 260
Scented air freshener....105
Screen, cold climate....266
Screenwash, front....225
Screenwash, rear....224
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) system....282
Seat belts....236, 237, 239, 240, 251
Seats, electric....78
Seats, front....76, 78, 79
Seats, heated....82
Seats, rear....84, 86, 88, 89
Selector, gear....142
Serial number, vehicle....334
Service indicator....38
Servicing....9
Settings, equipment....11, 13

Sidelamps 211, 215, 304, 306, 308, 310
Side repeater 308
Snow chains.....265
Socket, 12 V accessory 107, 111, 114
Socket, JACK 111
Sockets, audio 111
Speed limiter 151, 154, 156
Speed limit recognition 152
Spotlamps, side 219, 308
Stability control (ESC).....233
Starting the vehicle 127, 129, 130
Starting using another battery.....130, 319
Stay, bonnet 274
Steering wheel, adjustment 93
Stop 28
Stopping the vehicle 127, 129, 130
Stop & Start.....26, 51, 95, 104, 148, 149, 262, 274, 280, 318, 321
Stop (warning lamp).....28
Storage.....108
Storage boxes..... 112, 114
Storing driving positions 79
Sun visor 108
Sun visor flap 108
Synchronising the remote control.....59

T

Tables of engines..... 325, 329, 330
Tables of fuses.....313
Tables of weights 327, 331, 332
Tailgate.....64, 66
Tank, AdBlue® additive 282
Tank, fuel.....262, 263
Technical data..... 325, 327, 329-332
Temperature, coolant.....41
Three flashes (direction indicators).....220
Time (setting) 52
Tools..... 294-297
Torch 122
Total distance recorder.....46
Touch screen..... 11, 13
Touch screen tablet 11, 13
Towbar.....126, 269
Towed loads 327, 331, 332
Towing another vehicle 322
Traction control (ASR) 32, 233, 235
Trailer 126, 269
Triangle, warning.....286
Trip computer 49-51
Trip distance recorder.....46
Tyres.....9
Tyre under-inflation detection 35, 205, 207, 293

U

Under-inflation (detection) 205
Unlocking 53, 55
Unlocking from the inside 61
Unlocking the boot 53
Unlocking the doors.....61
Updating the date.....52
Updating the time.....52

V

Ventilation 9, 94, 95, 97
Visibility.....104
Vision 360 195

W

Warning and indicator lamps 22, 27, 28
Warning lamp, braking system 30
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 25
Warning lamps 25, 28, 31
Warning lamp, SCR emissions control system.....37
Warning lamp, Service.....29
Warning lamp, Stop 28
Washing (advice).....281
Weights 327, 331, 332
Wheel, spare..... 294-297
Window controls 74
Wiper blades (changing)..... 227, 271
Wiper, rear.....224
Wipers..... 26, 223, 226
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive..... 223, 226

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

4Dconcept
Diadeis
Interak

Printed in the EU
Anglais

05-16



Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z

CITROËN



16B78.0041
Anglais

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Compatibility of fuels



Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

E5 / E10 — Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

> The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

B7 — Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B10 — Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL — Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20 / B30 — The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a dealer of the brand or a qualified workshop.

> ! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

> The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel fuel at low temperature

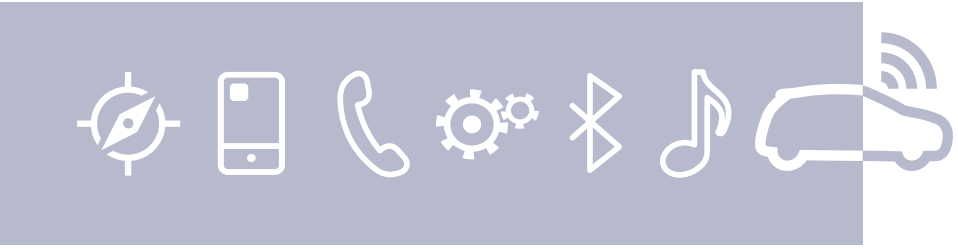
In temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in the summer diesel fuels may result in abnormal operation of the fuel supply system. To avoid this, the use of winter diesel fuels is recommended, keeping the tank topped up to more than 50% of its capacity.
If in spite of this you experience difficulties starting the engine in temperatures below -15°C (+5°F), simply leave the vehicle in a garage or a heated workshop for a while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Česky [Czech]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH tímto prohlašuje, že tento "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbHerklærer herved, at følgende udstyr "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, dass sich das Gerät "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH seadme "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, declares that this "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que el "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ "PSA RCC" ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "PSA RCC" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH déclare que l'appareil "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dichiara che questo "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklarē, ka "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklaruoja, kad šis "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dat het toestel "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, jiddikjara li dan "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jikkonforma mal-ħtigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott,Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH nyilatkozom, hogy a "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH oświadcza, że "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que este "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH izjavlja, da je ta "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH vakuuttaa täten että "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att denna "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH yfir því að "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer herved at utstyret "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

ECE type-approval certificate No. is 057902 (concerning the type-approval of an electric/electronic sub-assembly under Regulation No. 10)	
emitted frequency range and power: Frequency band Radiated Power [EIRP] Hints / Restriction 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz WiFi < 51mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A2 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz Bluetooth < 2,6 mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A1 & A2 Antenna configuration: internal antenna Internal antenna not accessible by user. Any change of the user will violate the legal approval of this product.	
Brazil	 "Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."
Canada	***This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:*** ***(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and*** ***(2) this device must accept any interference received,*** ***including interference that may cause undesired operation.***
Japan	R= Radio Type Approval Number: BBBBBBBBBB T= Terminal Equipment Approval number: X JJ-5NNN AAA
Mexico	**NOM-121-SCT1-2009** **La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:** **(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y** **(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.**
South Korea	해당 무선 설비는 운용 중 전파혼신 가능성이 있음.
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 1. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 2. 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。
USA / Canada	This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by (Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH) may void the FCC and IC Canada authorization to operate this equipment.



AUDIO AND TELEMATICS GUIDE

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Find your handbook and the audio and telematic systems on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

http://service.citroen.com/ddb/

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



CITROËN Connect Nav

GPS satellite navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	5
Menus	6
Voice commands	8
Navigation	14
Connected navigation	30
Applications	40
Radio Media	54
Telephone	66
Settings	78
Frequently asked questions	88

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. Displaying of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss

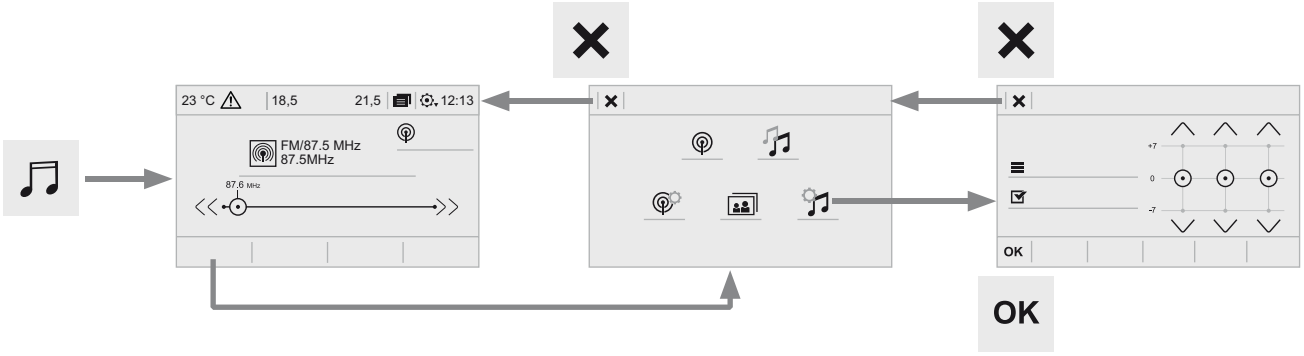
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



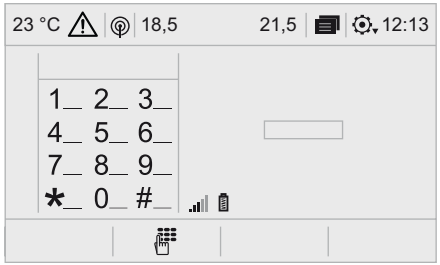
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

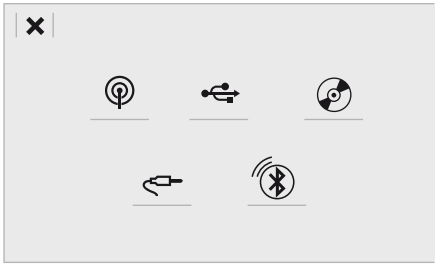
- Reminder of the air conditioning information and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* radio stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* using Bluetooth* audio streaming.

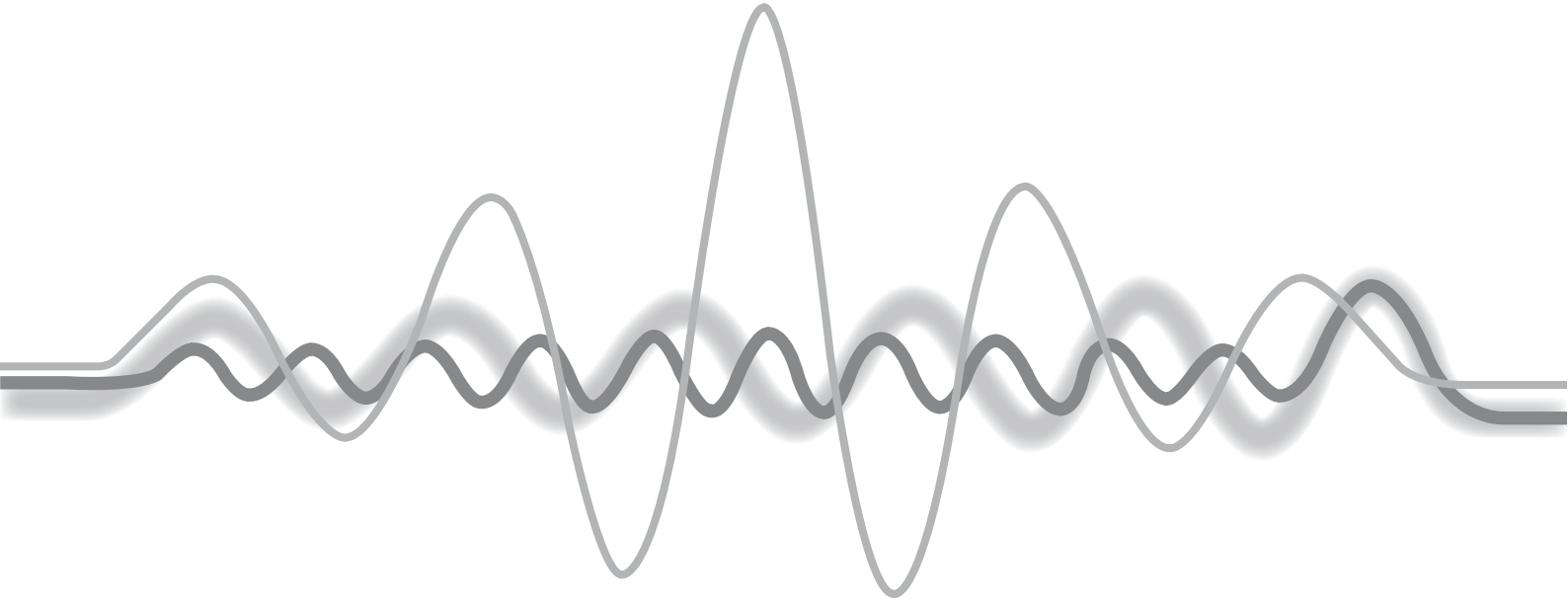
In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.





In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

* Depending on equipment.



Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute / Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): call.
Call in progress (short press): access to telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.

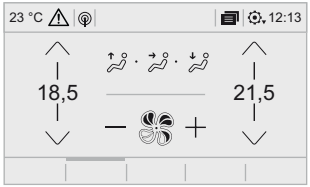


Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

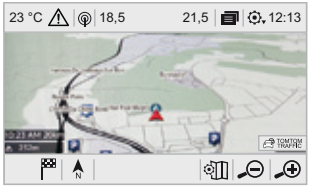
According to version

Air conditioning



Manage the various temperature and air flow settings.

Connected navigation



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

Applications



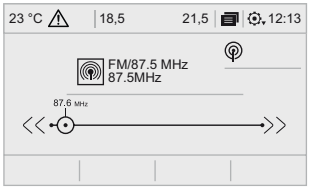
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or MirrorLink™.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Driving



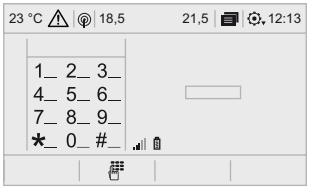
Activate, deactivate and configure certain vehicle functions.

Radio Media



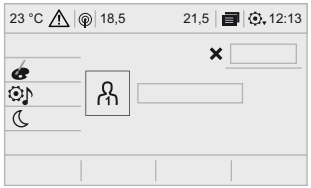
Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:
- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and opening roof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (according to version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London".

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna".

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller".

! The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.

Alternative synonyms can be used for some voice commands.
E.g. Guide to / Navigate to / Go to /...

The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

i 

Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Select "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 "Voice command"	 Help message
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box | voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Test message" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If no telephone has been connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 "Voice command"	 Help message
Send text to <...>	To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.
Listen to most recent message*	Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".

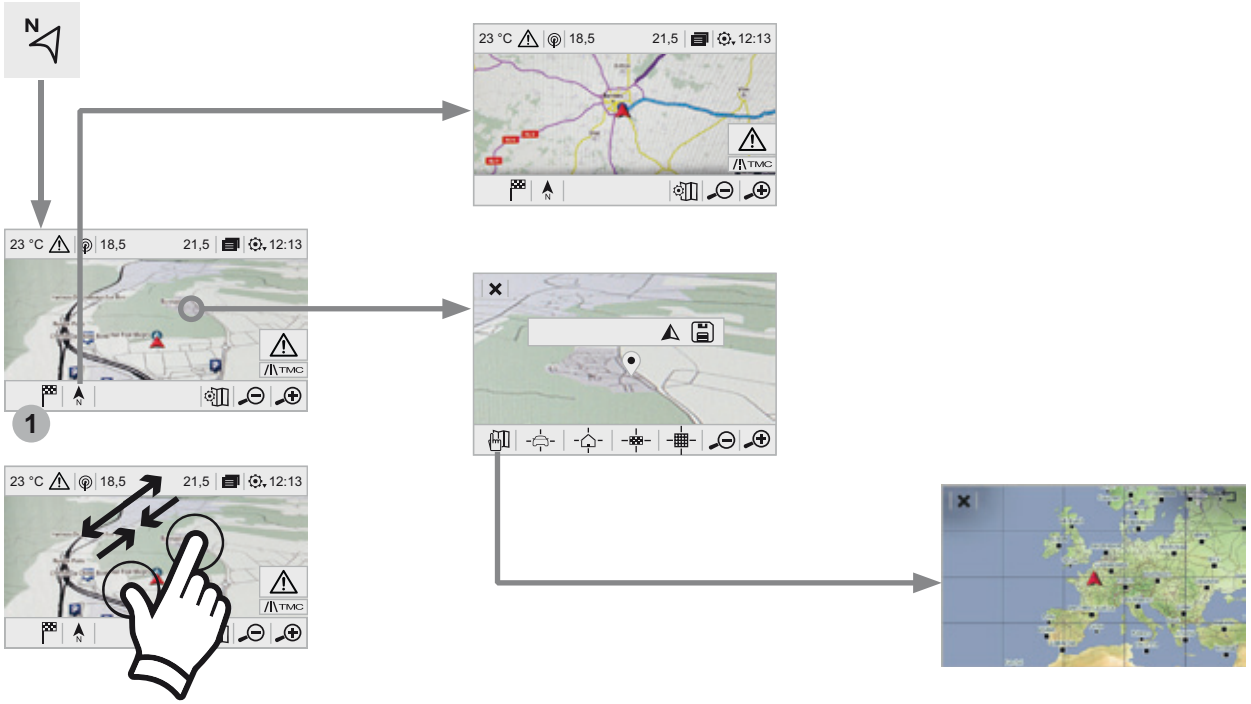
The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

* This function is only available if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

Navigation

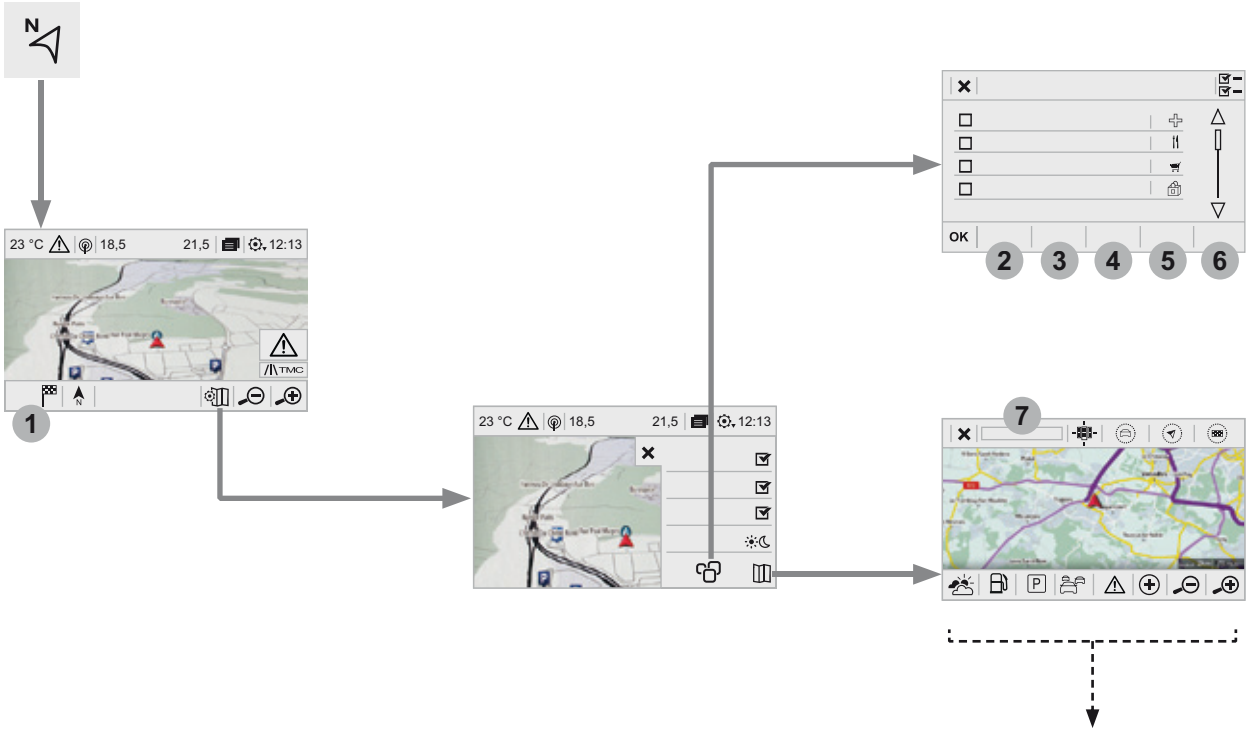
According to version

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



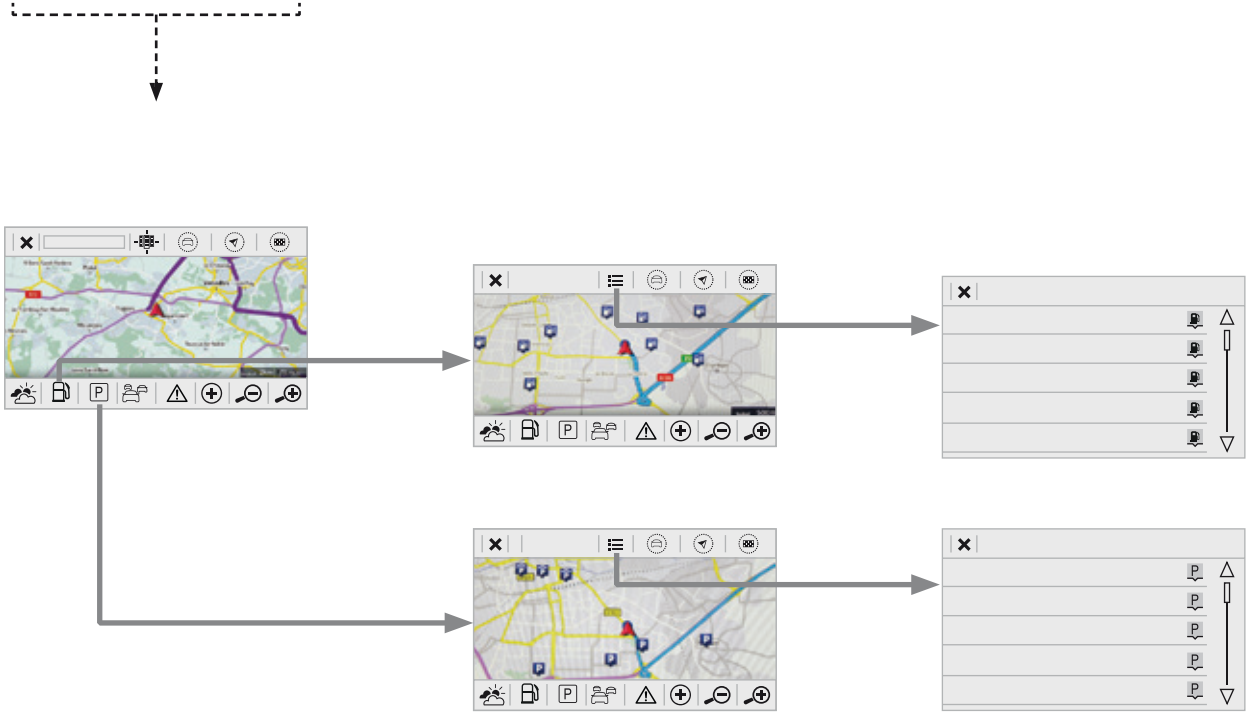
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.
	Navigation					Display the traffic information available.
	Navigation		World map			Manually locate an area on the world map or enter the latitude and longitude coordinates.
			Around the vehicle			Display the location criteria selected.
			Around home			
			Around the destination			
			2D mode			Switch to a 2D map.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.
						Start navigation to the current address.
						Save the current address.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

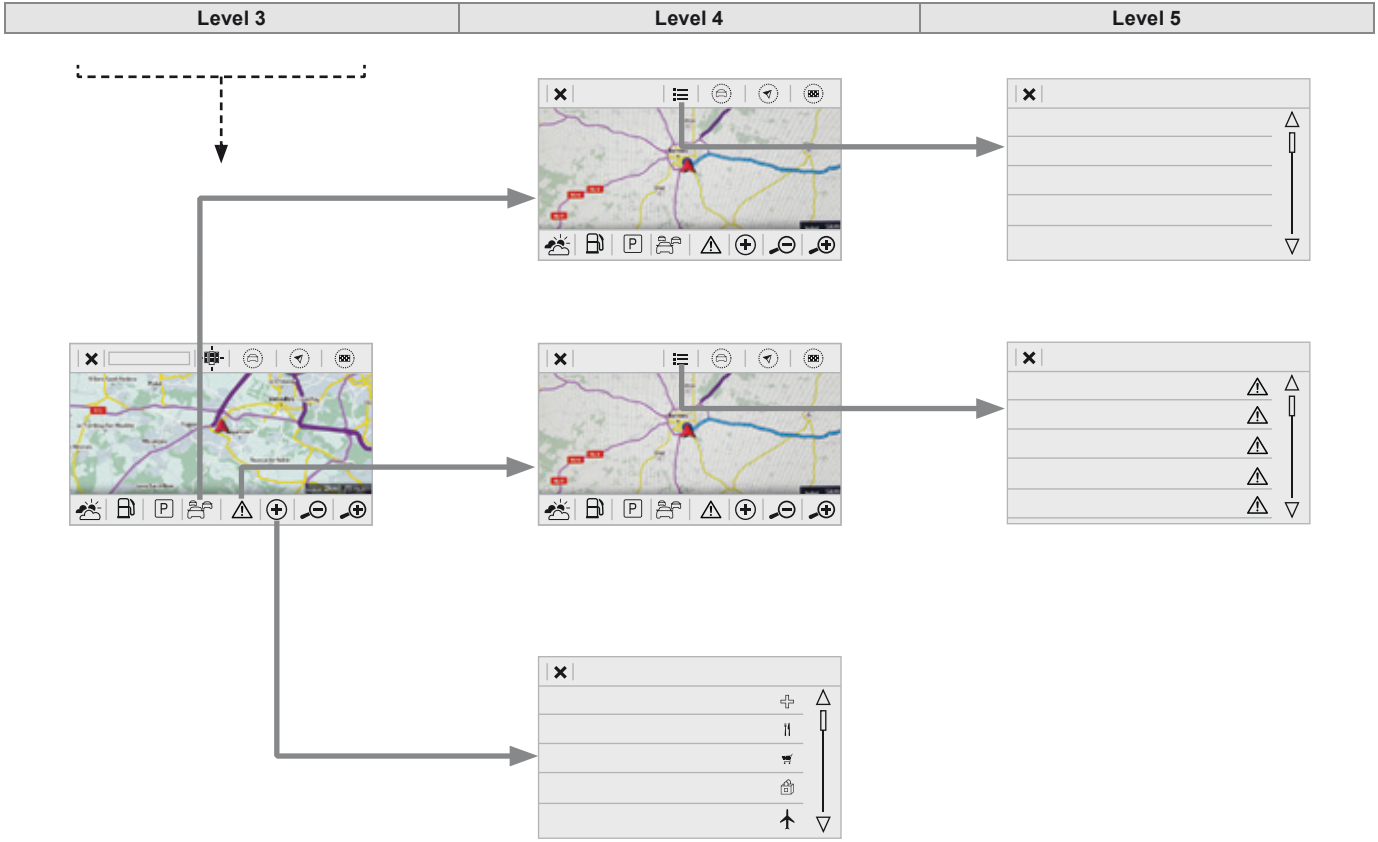


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
			Stations			Activate or deactivate the content available (stations, car parks, risk areas and danger areas).
			Car park			
			Danger area			
			Map color			Select day or night mode for display of the map.
			POI on map	2	Travel	Select the POIs available.
				3	Active life	
				4	Commercial	
				5	Public	
				6	Geographic	
	Navigation				Select all	Select or deselect all.
				OK		Save your choice or selection.
			View map	7	Modify city	Select or modify a city.
					Weather	Display on the map the content available in non-connected mode.
					Petrol Station	
					Car park	
					Traffic	
					Danger area	
					Select POI	Select from the POIs available.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5

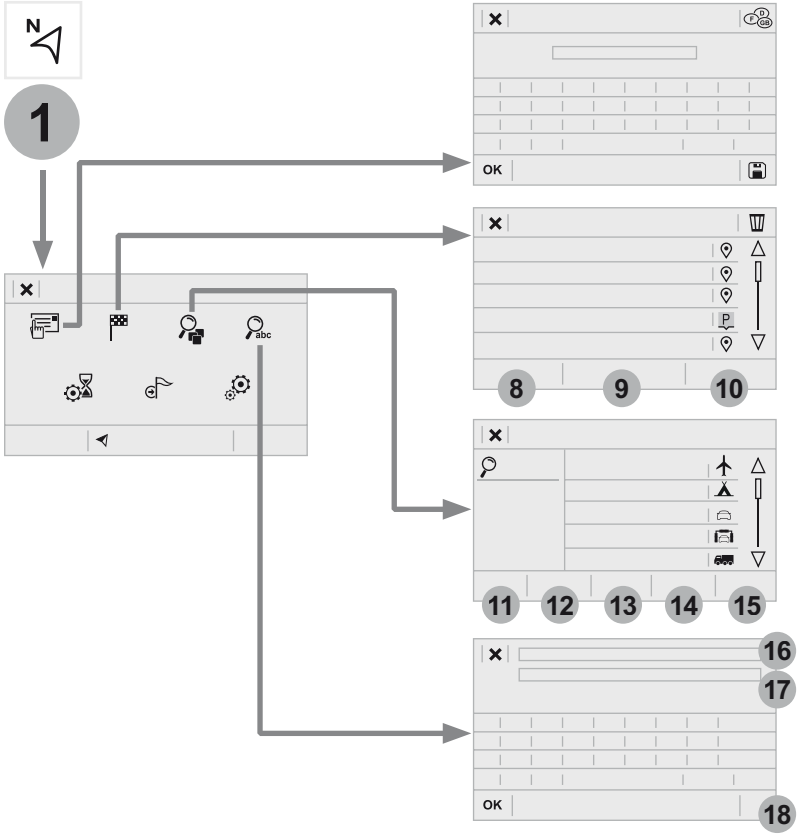


Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Zoom in	OK				Zoom in around the city selected.
	Around the vehicle					Select a location option.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather					Weather information transmitted in TMC mode.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of POIs.
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
P	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.


Level 3
Level 4
Level 5

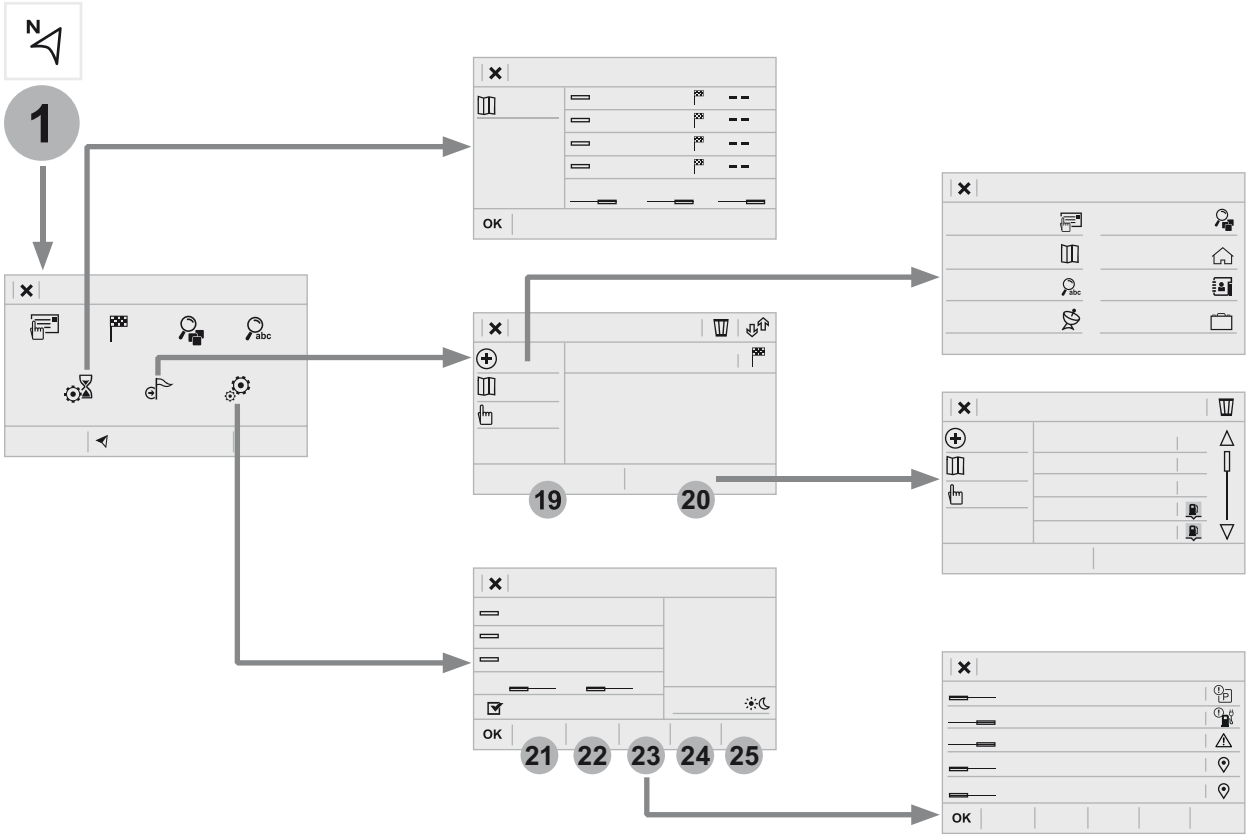
Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Traffic information sent in real time.
	Danger area				List of danger areas	Display the list of danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...).
	Select POI					Configure a category of POI to display.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Navigation → MENU → Enter address					Select the country.
						Save the current address.
		OK				Confirm the current address.
1	Navigation → MENU → My destinations	8	Recent			Display the lists of destinations and start navigation.
		9	Preferred		My home	
					My work	
		10	Contact			
						Delete one or more destinations.
1	Navigation → MENU → Points of interest	11	Travel			List of categories available. After selection of category, select the point of interest.
		12	Active life			
		13	Commercial			
		14	Public			
		15	Geographic			
			Search			Search for a point of interest.
1	Navigation → MENU → Search	16	Point of interest			Enter a point of interest.
		17	Address			Enter the address of a point of interest.
		18	Local / Connected			Enter settings for the POI search mode in a local or connected database depending on the services subscribed to.
		OK				Confirm the entry.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Navigation → MENU → Guidance criteria		Fast			Select the guidance criteria (motorways, tolls and how traffic is taken into account).
			Short			
			Compromise			
			Ecological			
			See on map			Display the route selected using the criteria.
		OK				Save your selections.
1	Navigation → MENU → Routes / waypoints	19	Waypoints			Display the waypoints saved.
		20	Route			Display details of the route.
			Add waypoint		Add a waypoint	Add a waypoint from a list offered.
			Preview			Display the map.
			Finish			Press to calculate the route.
						Delete one or more waypoints.
						Move a waypoint in the list.
1	Navigation → MENU → Settings	21	Aspects			Enter choices and select the volume for the voice and stating the names of streets.
		22	Options			
		23	Alerts			
		24	Vocal			
		25	Mapping			
		OK				Save the selections adopted.

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.



Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And / Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

To use the navigation system, it is necessary to enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" using the virtual keypad, or to take them from the list of "**Contacts**" or from the "**History**" of addresses.

Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

Towards a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival geographically.

Towards "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a previously saved favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list offered to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.



Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

Towards a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed

i A long press on a point opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

Or



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

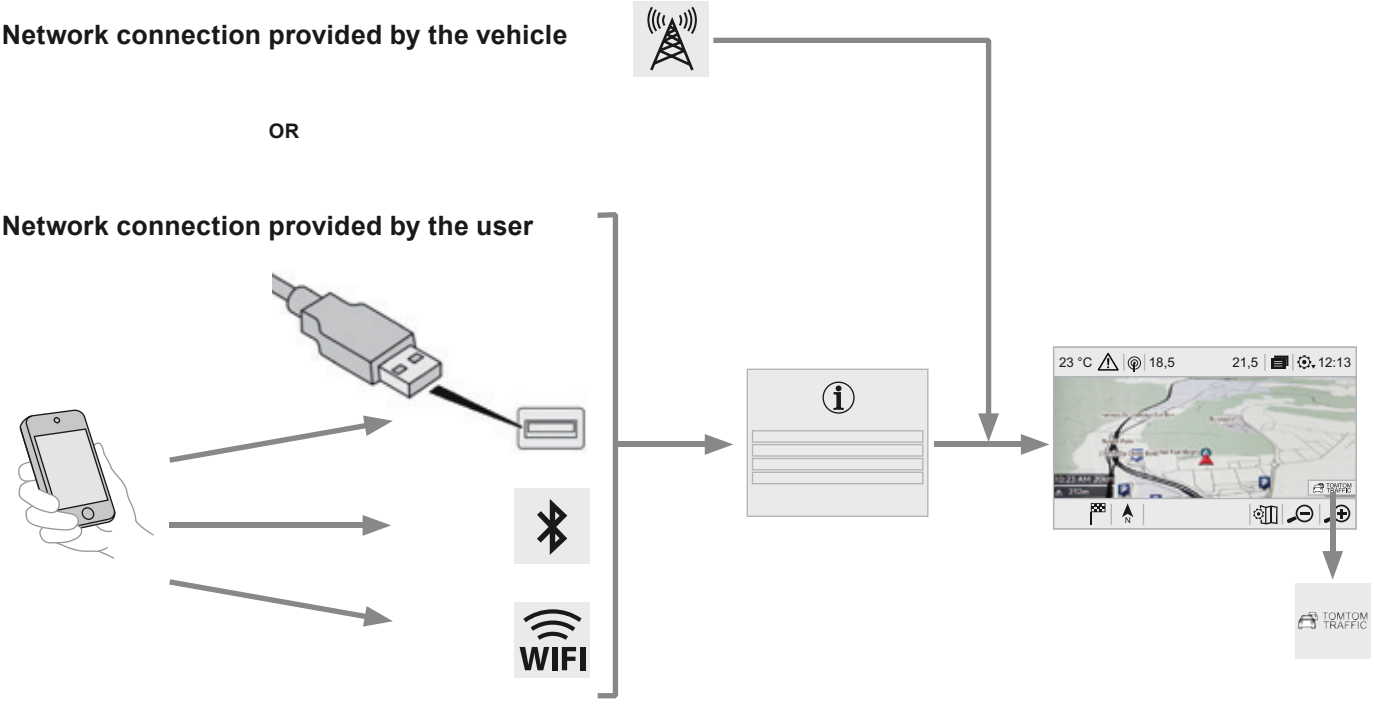
According to version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle

OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.
Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone is in charge mode when connected by USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi connection found by the system and connect to it (see the "Connect-App" section).

Restrictions of use:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

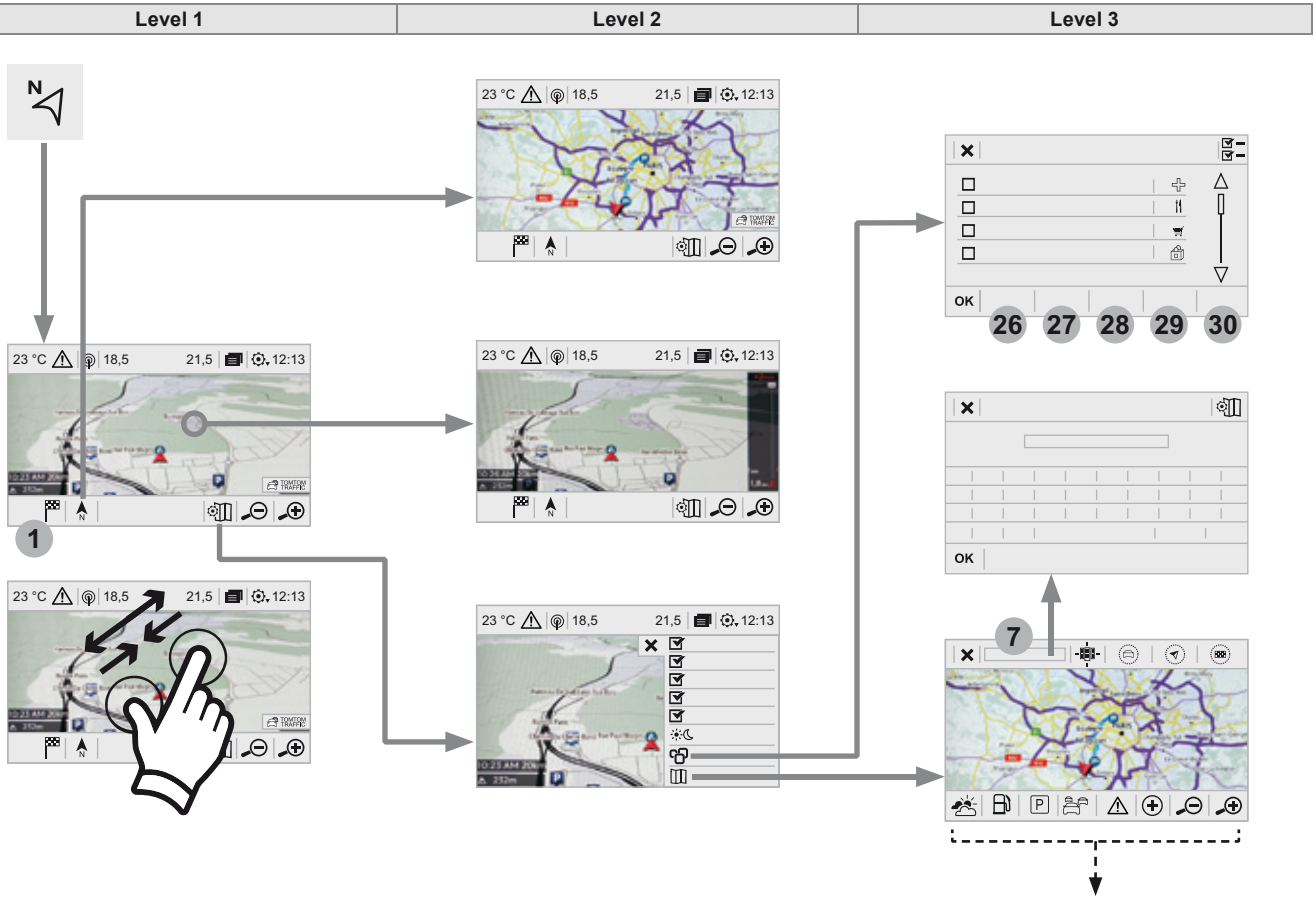


On the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

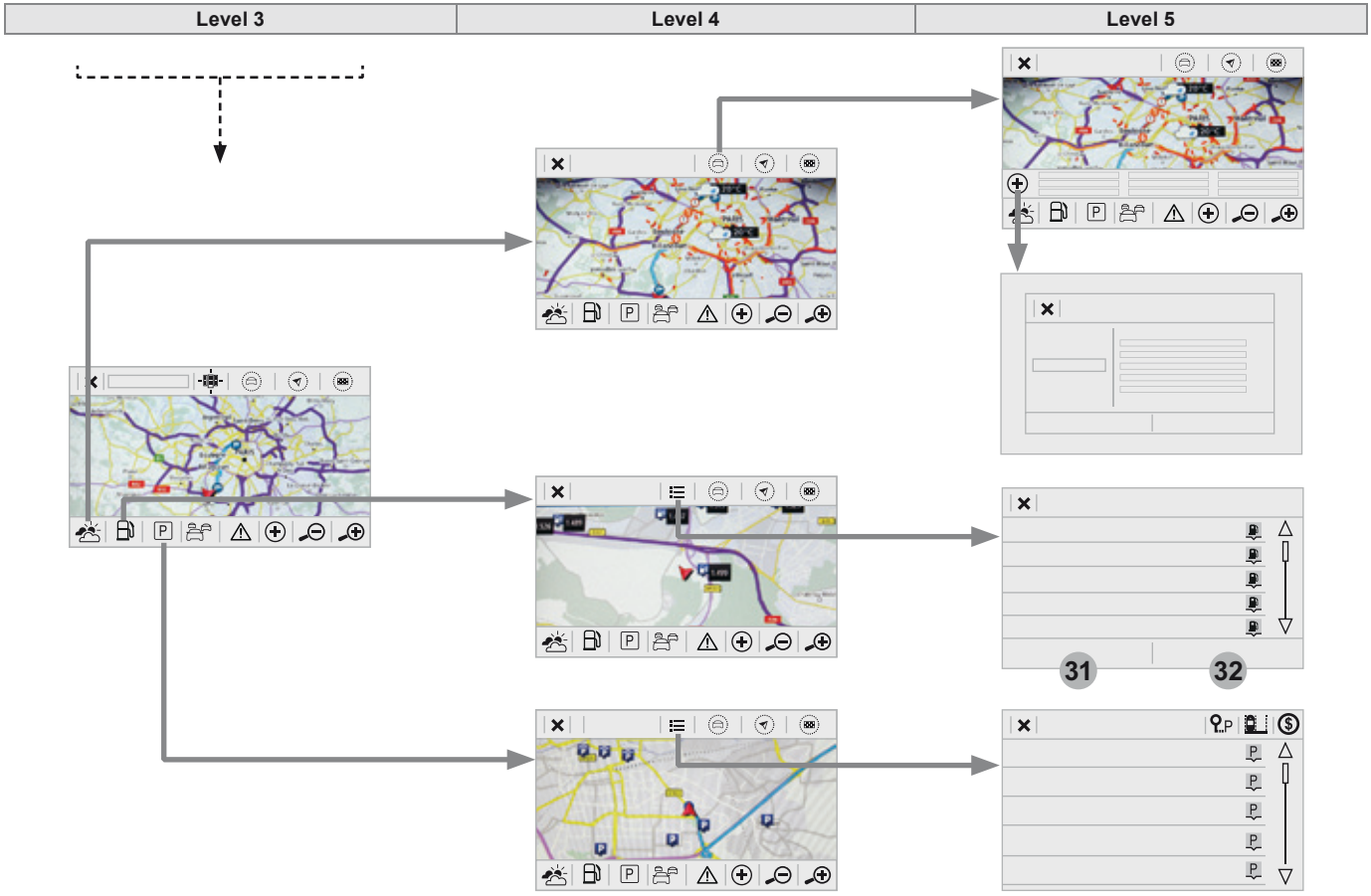
The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI, local search.

A Danger area pack (option).

The principles and standards are constantly changing. For communication between your smartphone and the system to operate correctly, we recommend that you **keep your smartphone's operating system up to date, and the time and date on your smartphone and the system correct**.

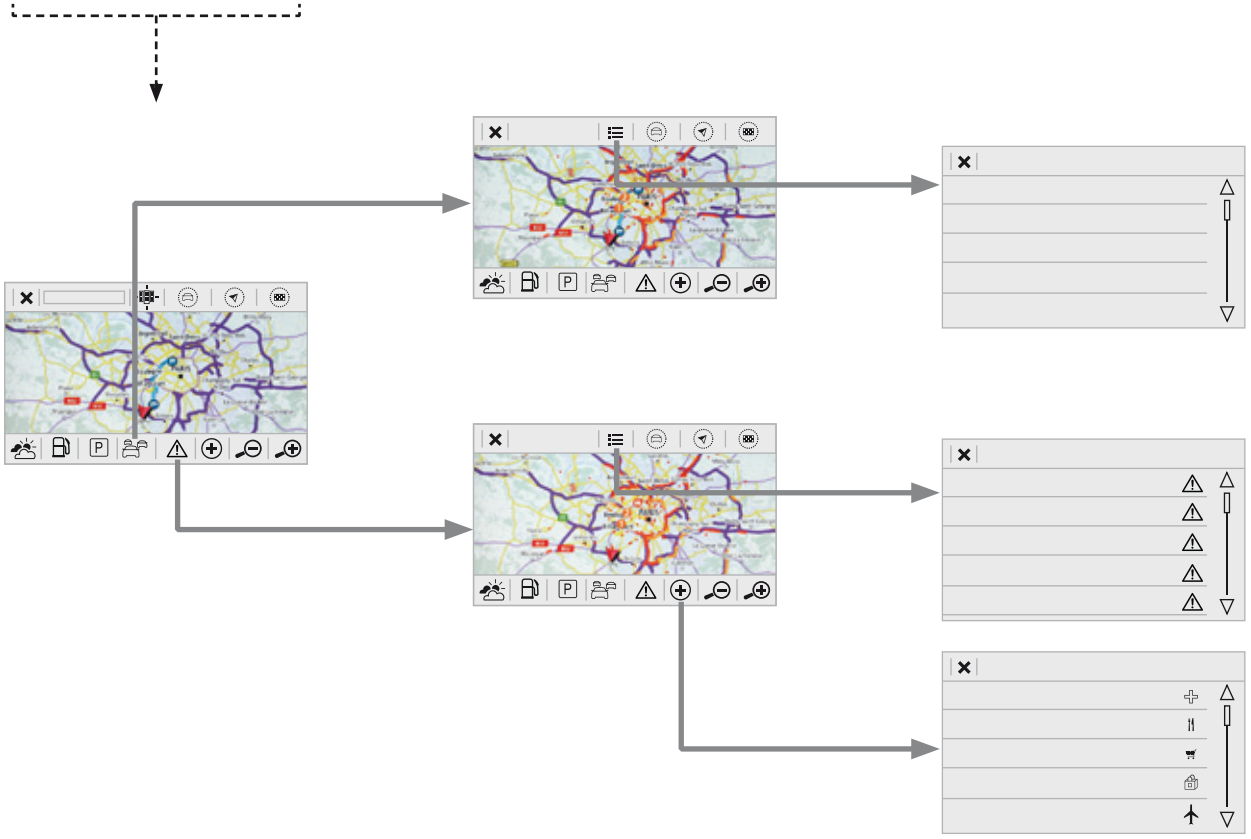

Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
N
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13
1
OK
26
27
28
29
30
7

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.
	Navigation → **TOMTOM TRAFFIC**					On connection of the system to a network, "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" is displayed instead of "TMC", for use of all of the options available, in real time.
	Navigation		**Weather**			Select the options. The map display the route chosen, depending on options.
			Stations			
			Car park			
			Traffic			
			Danger area			
			Map color			Select the display mode for the map.
			POI on map	26	Commercial	Select the POIs available.
				27	Geographic	
				28	Leisure	
				29	Public	
				30	Travel	
				OK		Save the options.
			View map	7	Modify city	Select or change a city.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.


Level 3
Level 4
Level 5
31
32

Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Select city	OK				Select or change a city.
	Around the vehicle					Select or change a city.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather				**Weather information**	Display the weather forecast for the day or the following days.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of filling stations and the associated information (address, prices, fuels, ...).
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
				31	**By distance**	
				32	**By price**	
P	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	Display the list of car parks and the associated information (address, distance, spaces available, price, ...).
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
					Sort by distance	
					Sort by spaces	
					Sort by price	
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5



Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Display traffic information in real time: type, description and duration (in minutes).
	Danger areas				List of danger areas	Display danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...) in real time.
	Points of interest		Points of interest		Select POI	Display the list of POIs for the location selected.

Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display the first level of information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the morning will be the maximum temperature for the day.
The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the evening will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Settings specific to connected navigation



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Options**".



Activate or deactivate:

- "**Allow declaration of danger areas**"
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**"
- "**Authorise sending information**"



Select "**Alerts**".



Activate or deactivate "**Warn of danger zones**".

For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: "**Authorise sending information**".

The display of danger zones is conditioned by the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger areas"

! To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger areas**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**Declare a new danger area**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen.



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger area".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger areas" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to view the version of the various modules installed in the system.



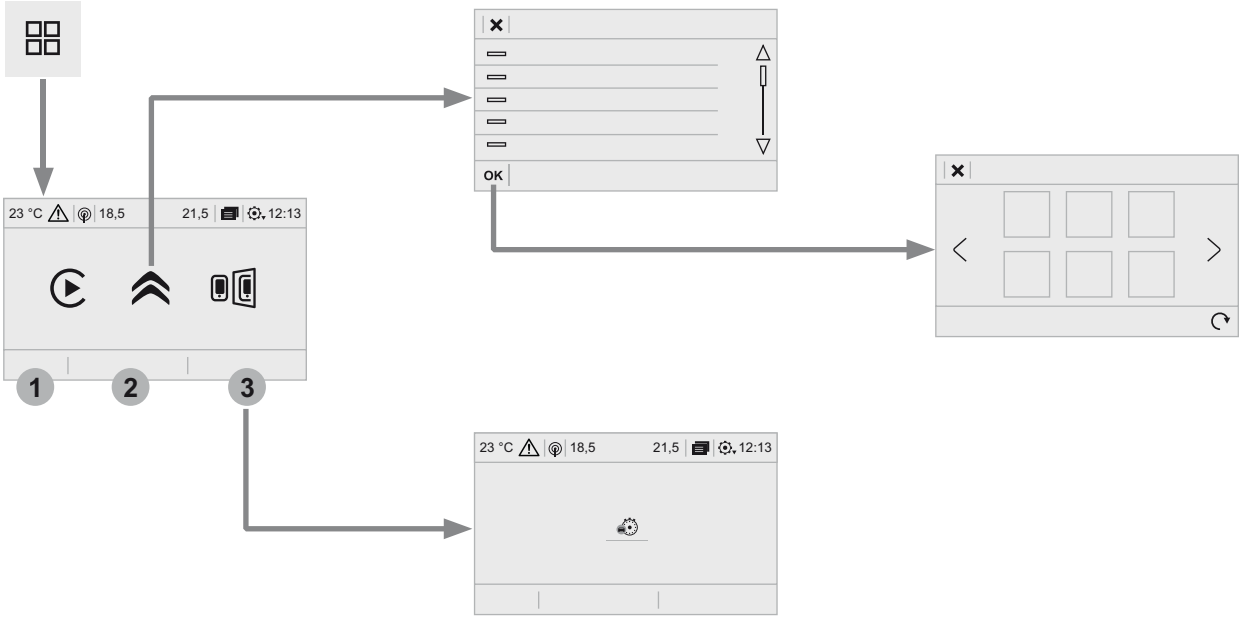
Select "**Update(s) due**".

i You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.
The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Applications

According to version / according to equipment

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

2

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.



Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

2

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**® or **MirrorLink**™ function.

Applications

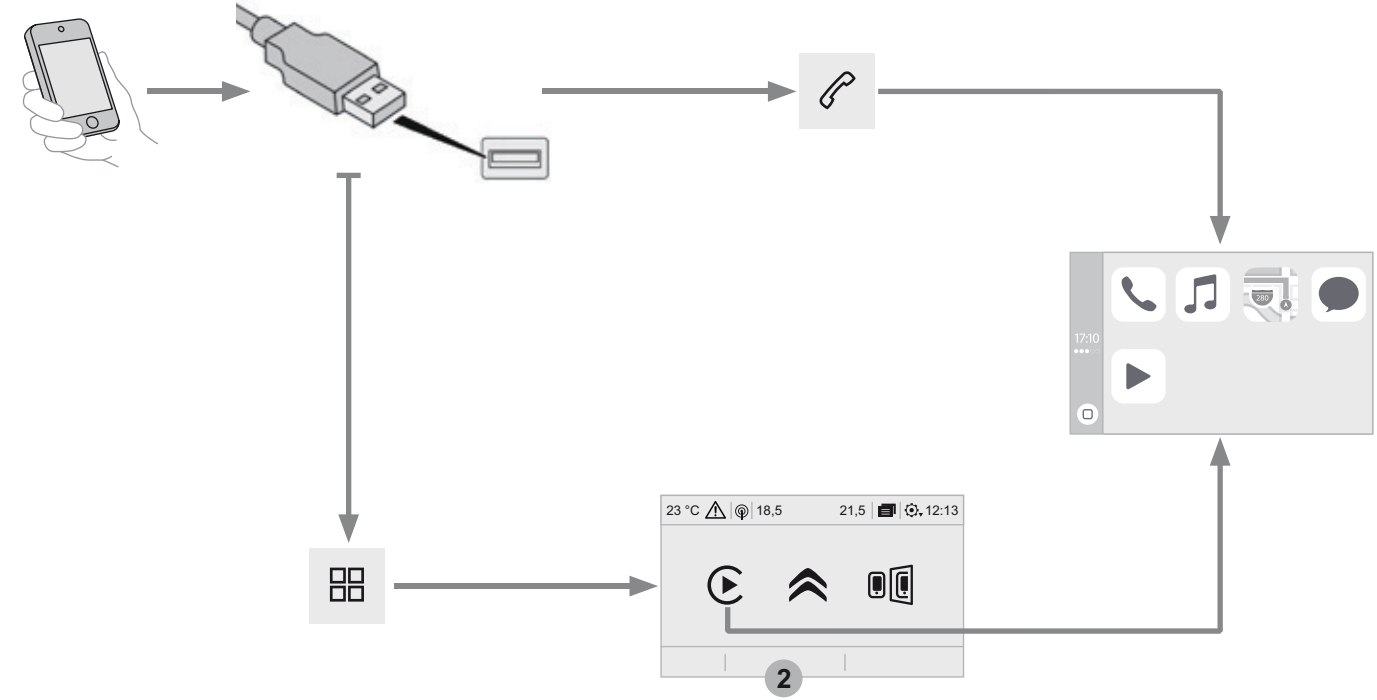


Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

3

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connecte d by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



In the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

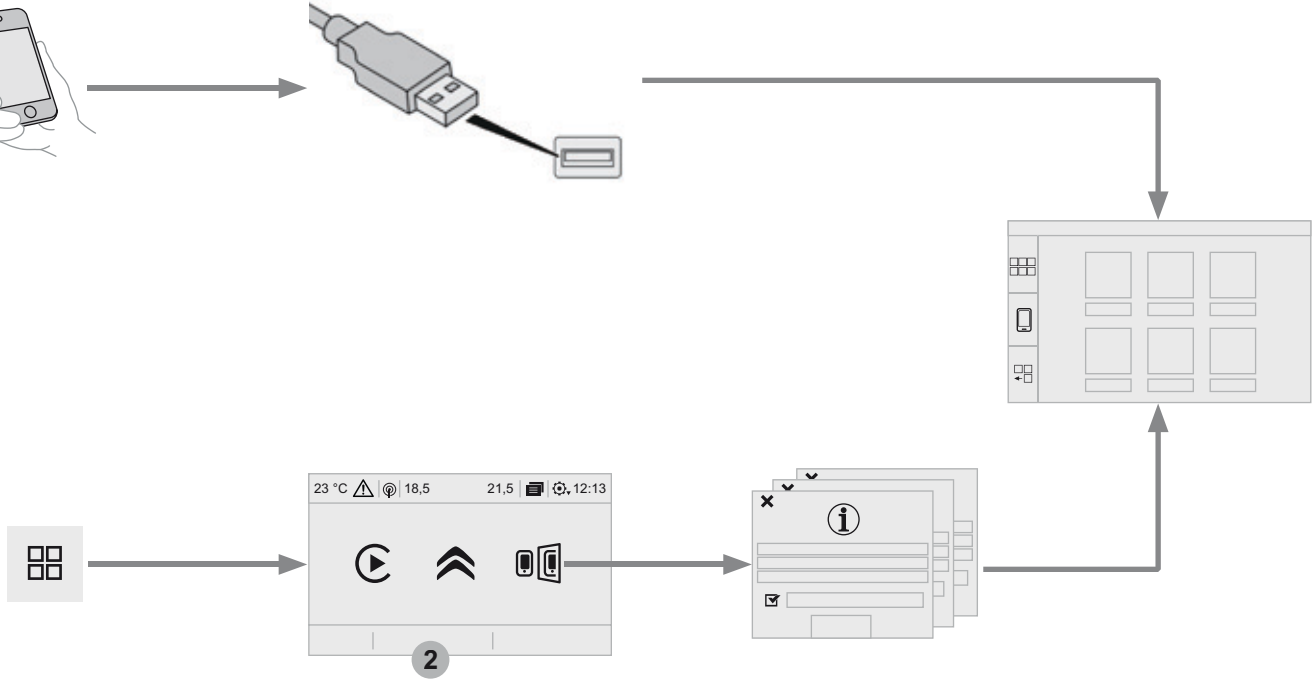
2 Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; **update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press on "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

2 Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the system's application.

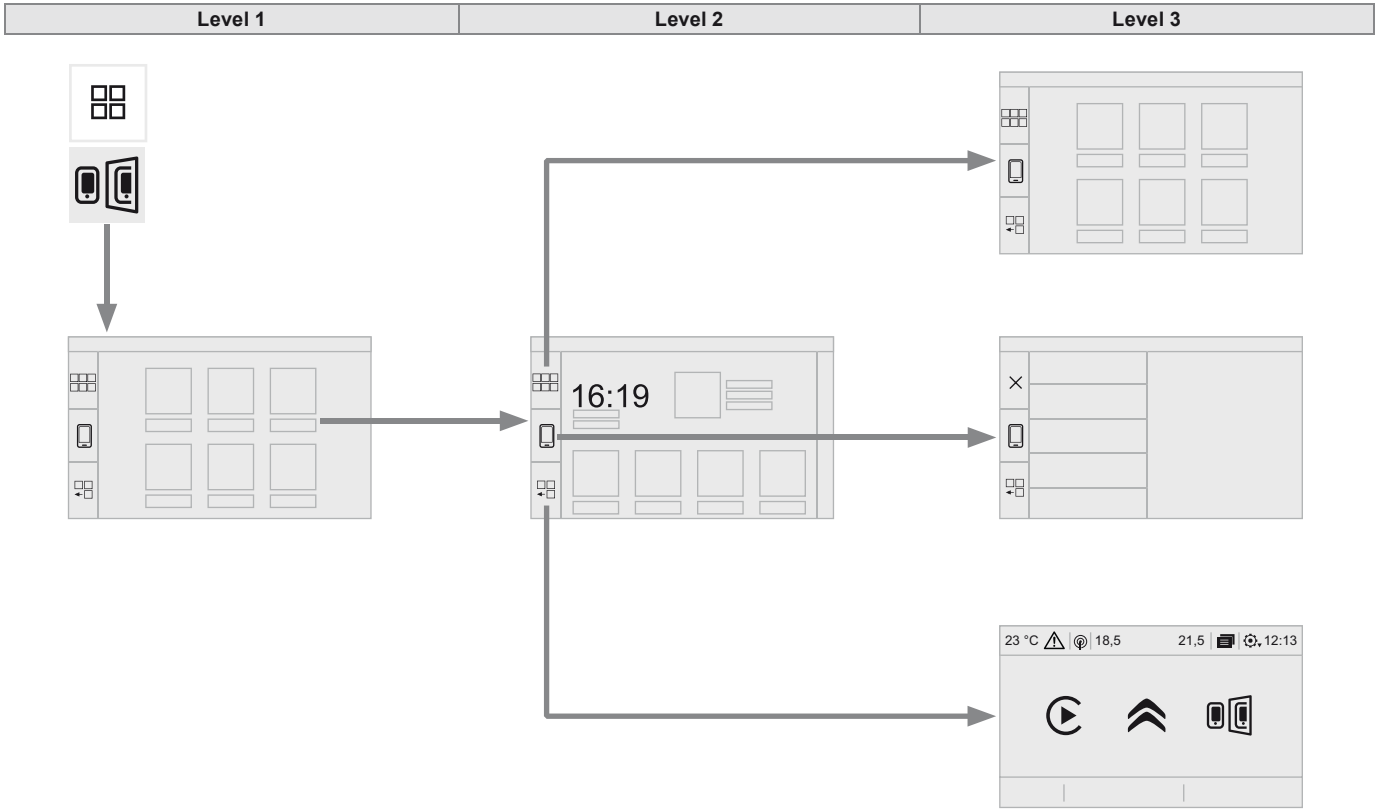
Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

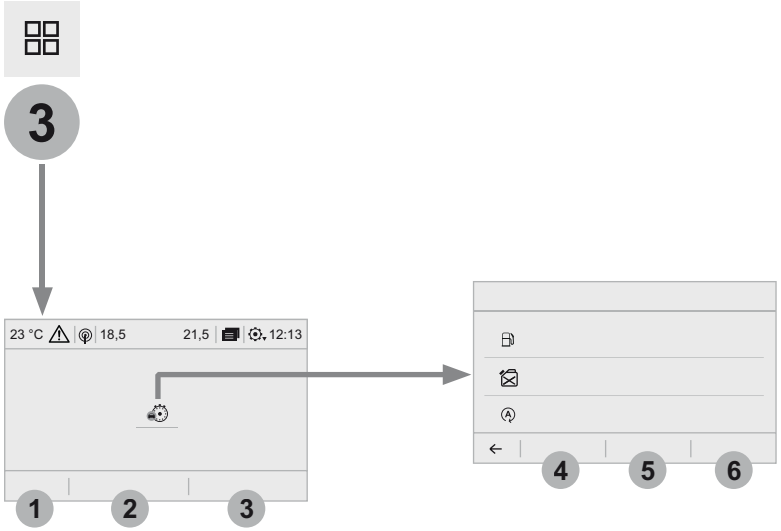
i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
16:19
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13

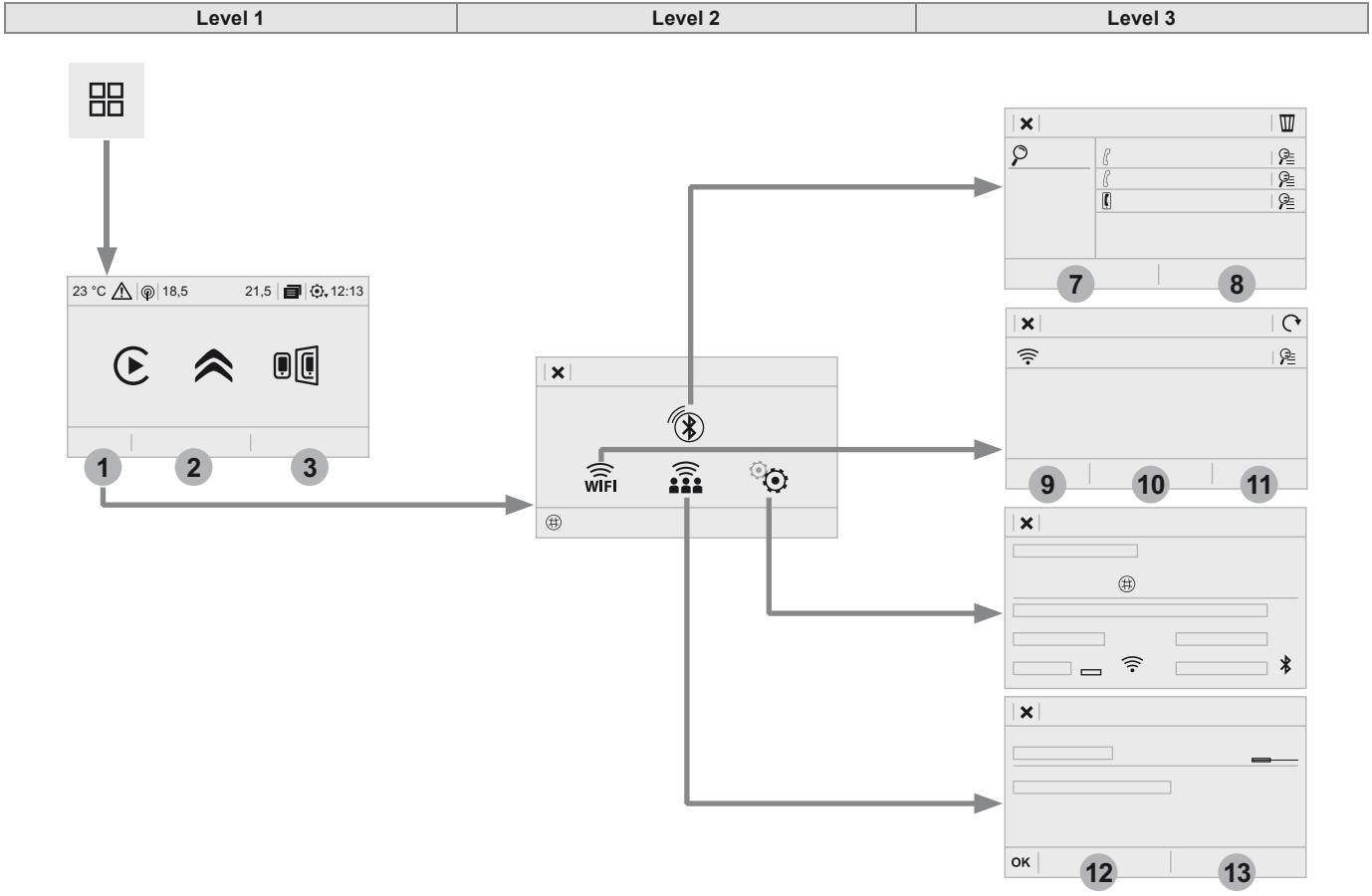
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
						Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
	**Applications** ↓ **MirrorLink™**					Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
						Go to the primary page of the "Applications" menu.

According to equipment

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications ↓ Trip computer	4	Instant	System providing information about the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).
		5	Trip 1	
		6	Trip 2	
		←		Back to the Applications page.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13
1
2
3
WIFI
7
8
9
10
11
OK
12
13

Level 2		Level 3		Comments
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Bluetooth connection		7	All	Display all telephones detected and saved.
		8	Connected	Display all telephones connected.
			Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Wi-Fi network connection		9	Secured	Display the secured Wi-Fi networks.
		10	Not secured	Display the not secured Wi-Fi networks.
		11	Stored	Display the stored Wi-Fi networks.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Manage connection				Display the status of the subscription to the connected services, the status of the network connection and the connection mode.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Share Wi-Fi connection		12	Activation	Activate or deactivate the Wi-Fi connection sharing.
		13	Settings	Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.
		OK		Save the settings.

Bluetooth® connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press on "**Connect-App**" to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press on "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone Wi-Fi.

Press "**Connect-App**" to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

i The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Sharing the Wi-Fi connection

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

12 Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And / Or

13 Select the "**Settings**" to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect from any piracy and provide maximum security for your systems, it is recommended that you use a security code or a complex password.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

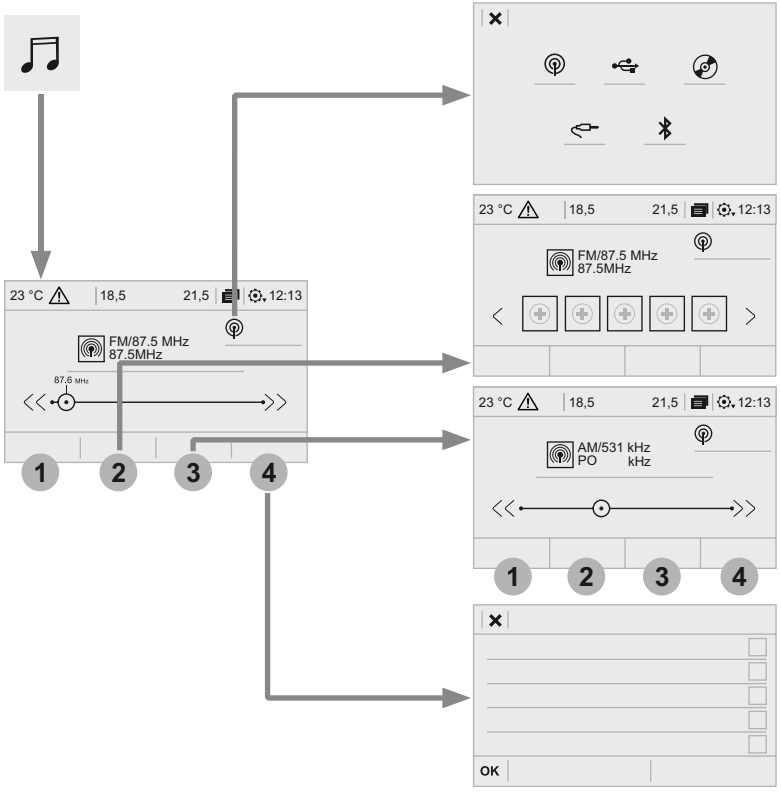
Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio Media

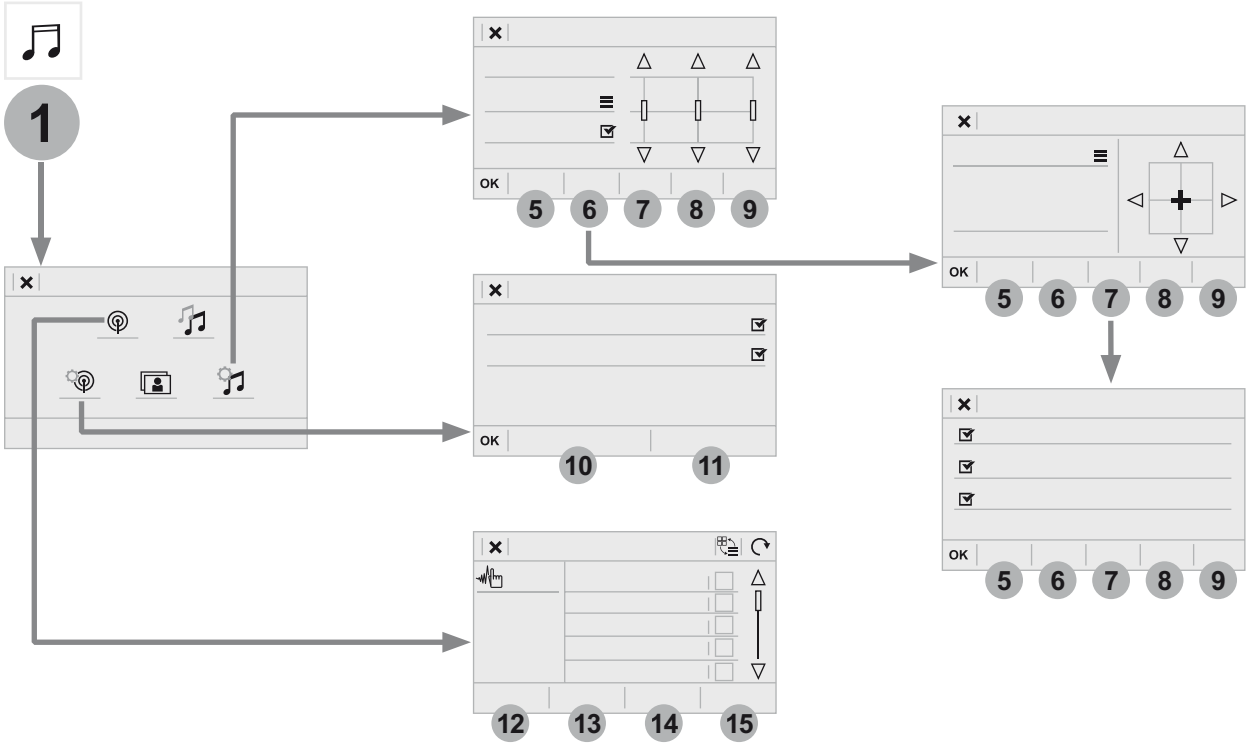
According to version

Level 1	Level 2



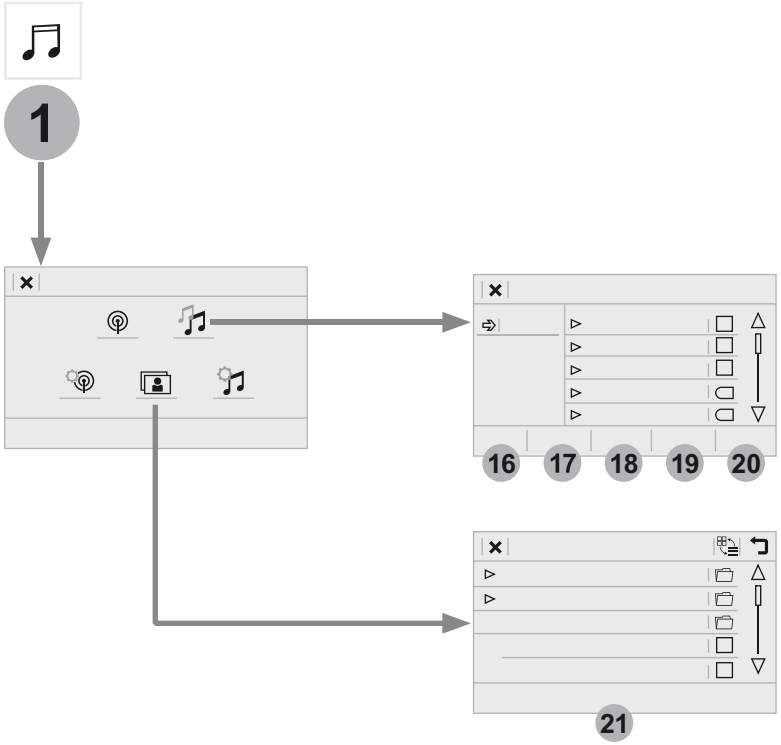
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
♫ /	Radio Media → Source		Radio	Select change of source.
			USB	
			iPod	
			CD	
			AUX	
			Bluetooth	
♫	Radio Media → Frequency / Presets		Frequency	Carry out an automatic or manual search for radio stations.
2			Presets	Make a long press on an empty location to preset a station.
♫	Radio Media → Band		FM	Press the Band button to change waveband.
3			DAB	
			AM	
♫	Radio Media → List		Radio stations	Open the list and press a radio station to select it.
4				

Level 2	Level 3

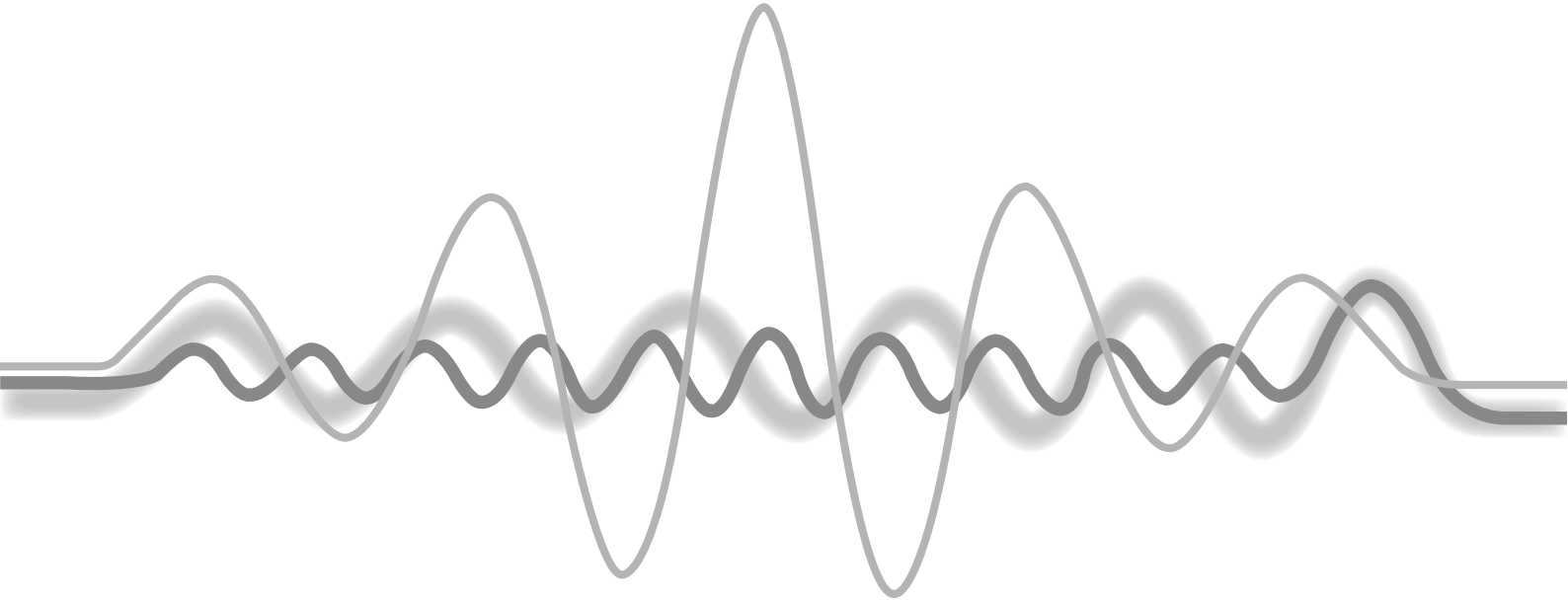


Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Audio settings	5	Ambience	Select the sound ambience.
		6	Distribution	Sound distribution by the Arkamys® system.
		7	Sound	Adjust the volume or activate volume linked to speed.
		8	Voice	Adjust the voice volume.
		9	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		Save settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Radio settings	10	General	Activate or deactivate settings.
		11	Announcements	
		OK		Save settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Radio stations	12	FM	Display the list of radio stations for the band selected.
		13	DAB	
		14	AM	
		15	Presets	Select a preset radio station.
			Frequency	Enter a frequency manually.
				Change the screen display mode.
				Update the list according to reception.

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1 ♫	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Music files	16	Albums	Choose a selection mode.
		17	Artists	
		18	Genres	
		19	Playlists	
		20	Folders	
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Managing photos	21	USB	Display photos. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .jpeg, .bmp, .png, .raw and .tiff with a maximum file size of 10 Mb per image.



Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.

2 Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

2 Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode.
This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

2 Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".



Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station, relating to the station or the song playing, to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".



Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Display radio text**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.


Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.


Select the audio source.

3 Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).


Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.


Select "**Radio settings**".

10 Select "**General**".


Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

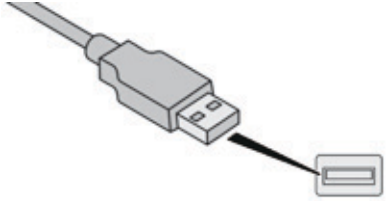
OK Press "**OK**".

i If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



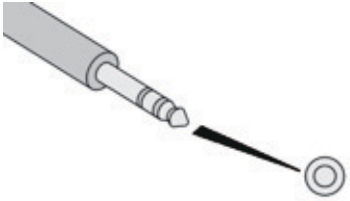
Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary (AUX) socket

(depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on equipment)
Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

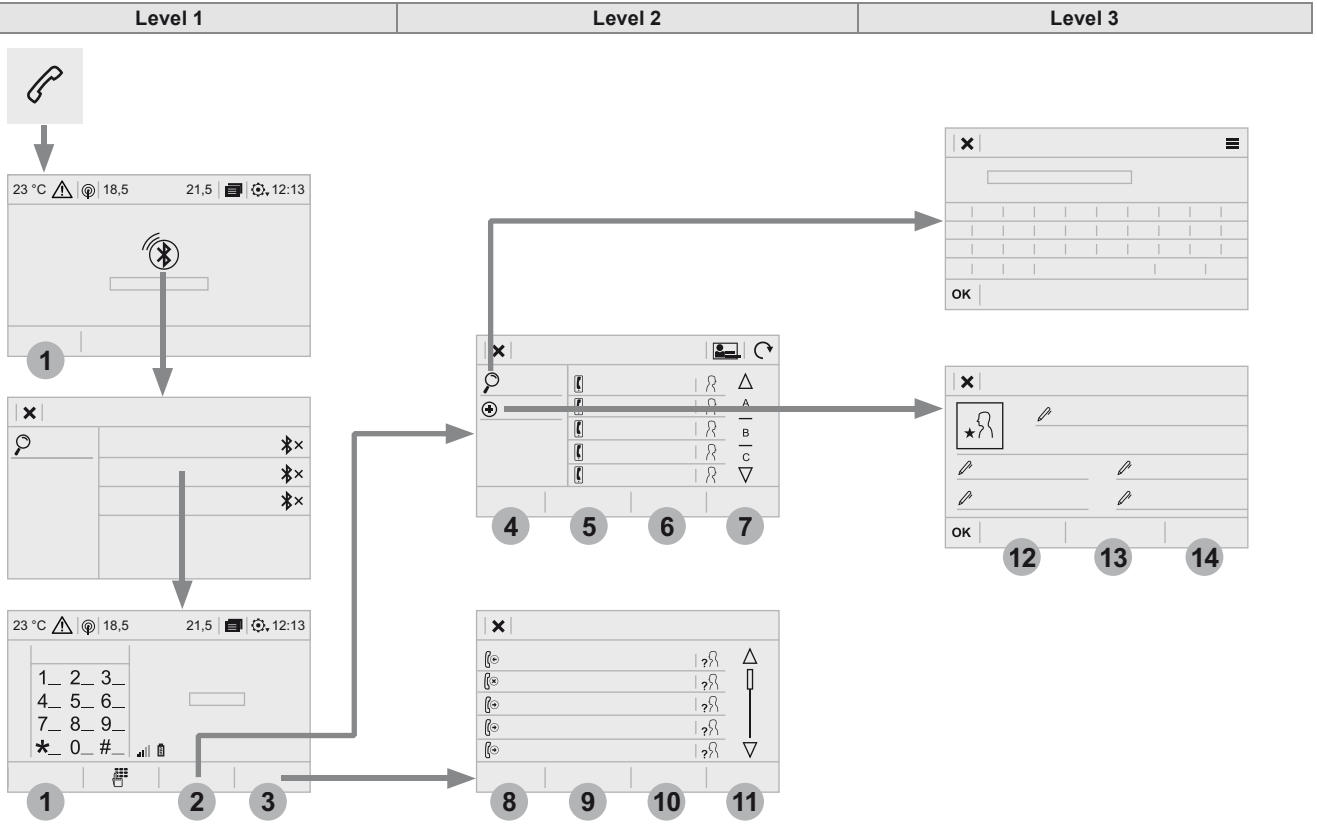
Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, when burning it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for the best sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

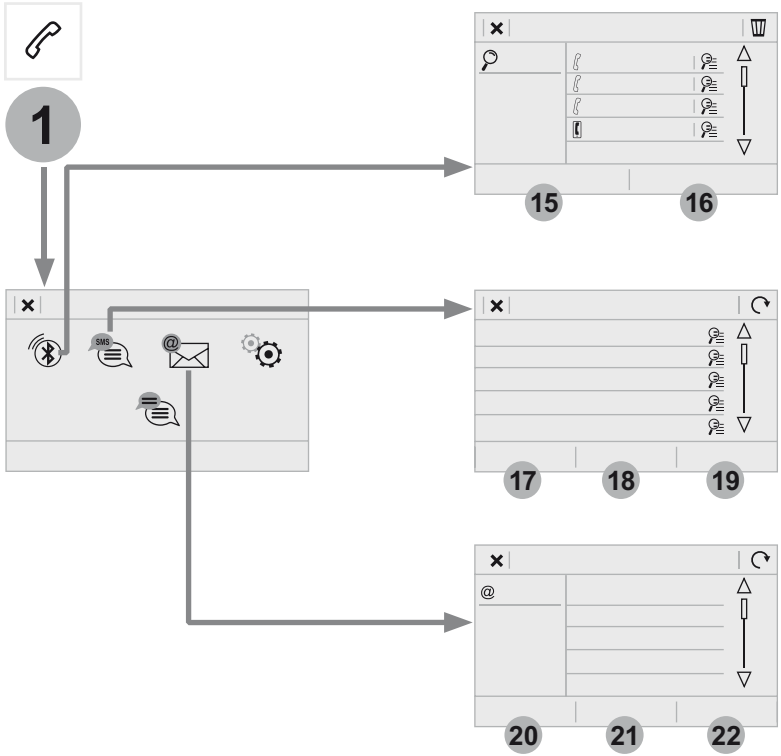
Telephone

According to version



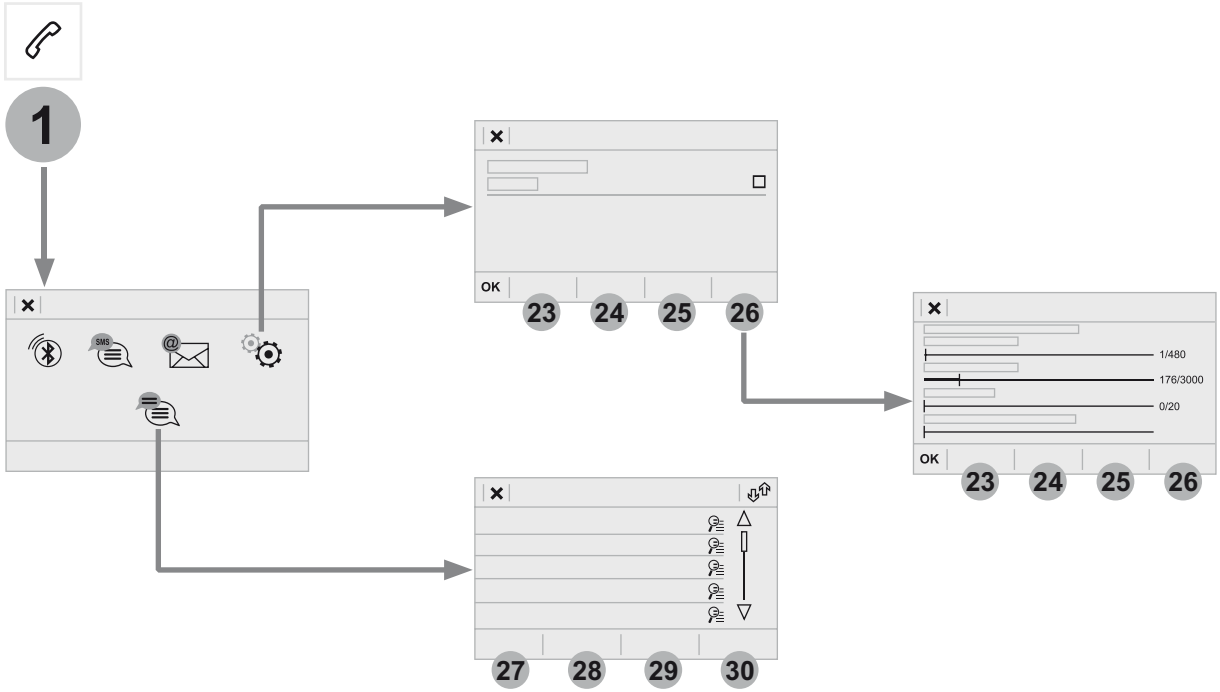
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
2	Telephone → Bluetooth → Contact	4	All			View contacts according to presentation choices. Select a contact or a favourite saved in the system via the profile selected to start the call.
		5	Telephone			
		6	Address			
		7	Favourites			
						Sort the contacts by Surname-First name or First name-Surname.
						Update the contacts from the telephone.
			Search	OK		Search for a contact in the directory.
			Create	12	Telephone	Create a new contact in the system.
				13	Address	
				14	Email	
				OK		
3	Telephone → Bluetooth → Calls	8	All			View calls according to choice of presentation. Select a contact to start the call.
		9	Incoming			
		10	Outgoing			
		11	Missed			
		?				View details for the contact.

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
1	Telephone → OPTIONS → Bluetooth connection	15	All	Display all telephones detected and saved.
		16	Connected	Display all connected telephones.
			Search	Start the search for a device to connect.
1	Telephone → OPTIONS → Messages	17	All	Display messages according to the choice made.
		18	Received	
		19	Sent	
1	Telephone → OPTIONS → Email	20	Received	Display emails according to the choice made.
		21	Sent	
		22	Not read	
		@	Mailbox	

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → OPTIONS → Settings	23	Security	Make driving safe.
		24	Voicemail	Enter and save the number for the telephone voicemail.
		25	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		26	Statistics	Display data for the telephone connected.
		OK		Save the options.
	Telephone → OPTIONS → Quick messages	27	Delayed	Select a quick message from the categories, as required.
		28	My arrival	
		29	Not available	
		30	Other	

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with theBluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **Telephone** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **Streaming** (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- **Mobile internet data**.

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, having first activated sharing of the connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts / entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

2 Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

12 In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

13 In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

14 In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

! The access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Received**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the email chosen in the list.



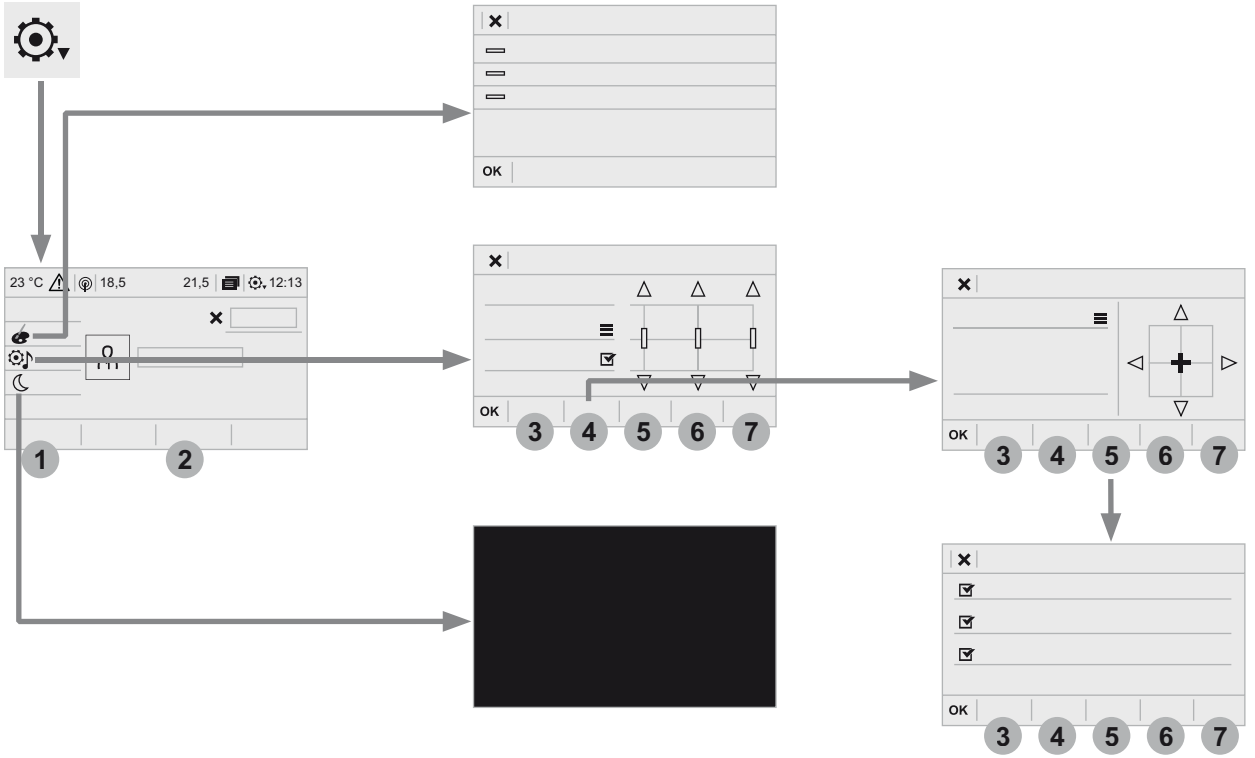
Press "**Play**" to start playing the email.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

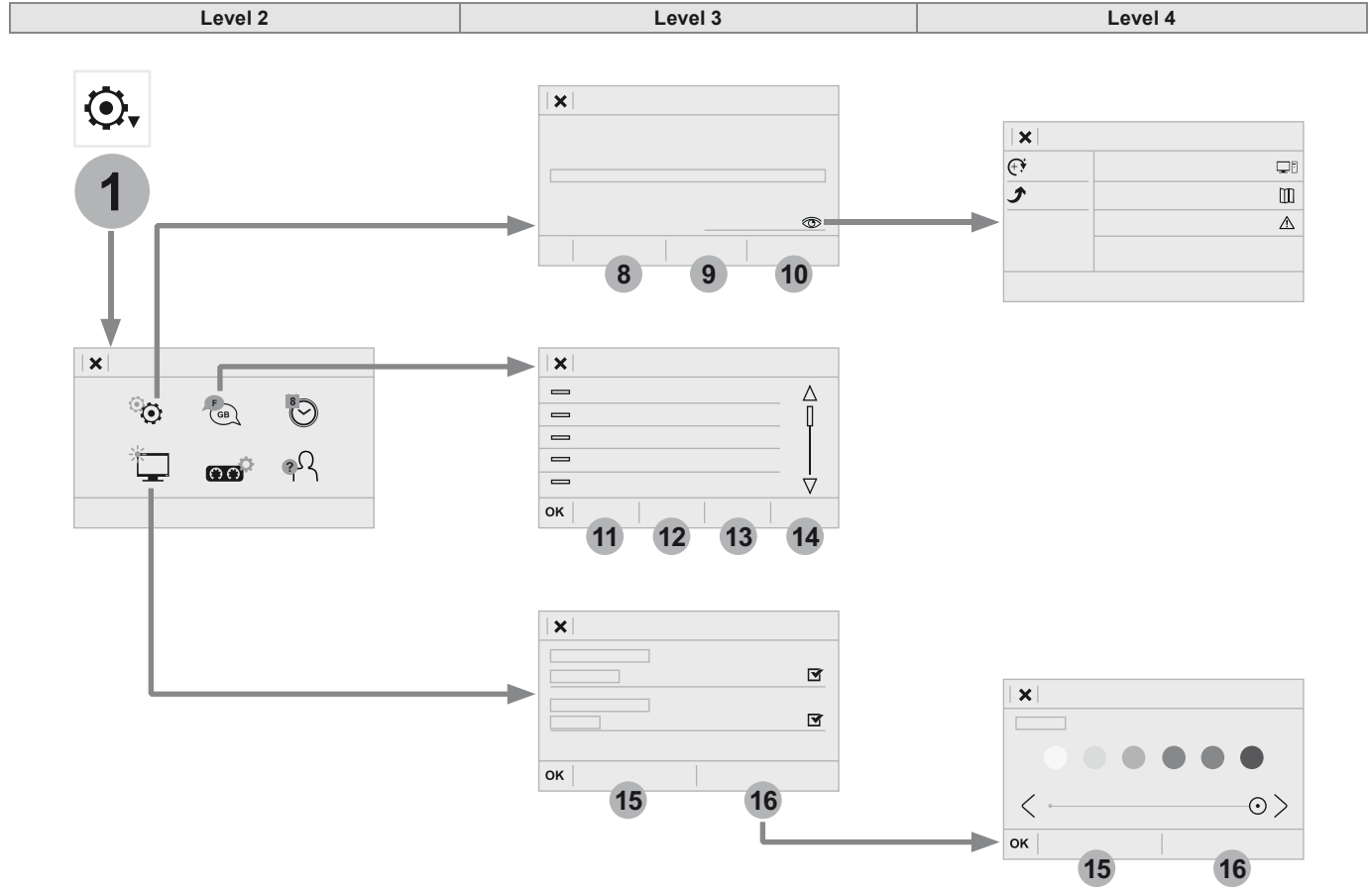
Settings

According to version

Level 1	Level 2

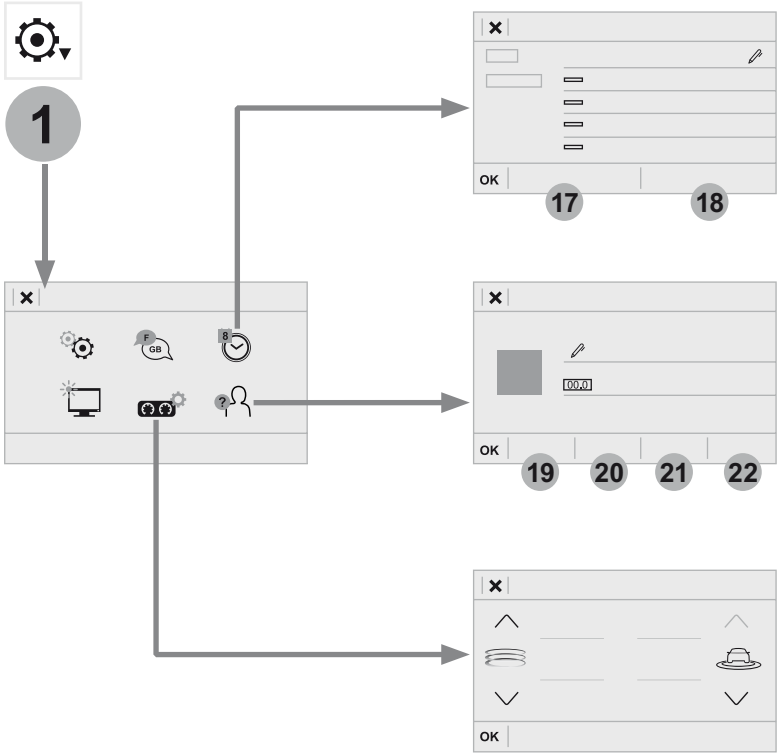


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → Color schemes		Color schemes: 1,2,3, ...	Having chosen the color scheme, save the setting.
		OK		
	Settings → Audio settings	3	Ambience	Select the sound ambience.
		4	Distribution	Sound distribution by the Arkamys© system.
		5	Sound	Adjust the volume or activate linked to speed.
		6	Voice	Adjust the voice volume.
		7	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		Save the settings.
	Settings → Turn off screen	■		Function allowing the display to be switched off. Pressing the screen reactivates it.
2	Settings → Profile (1, 2, 3)			Activate the profile selected.


Level 2
Level 3
Level 4
1
8
9
10
OK
11
12
13
14
OK
15
16
OK
15
16

Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
  	Settings → OPTIONS → System settings	8	Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Set the units used for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
					Temperature	
		9	Factory settings		Reinitialize	Restore the factory settings.
		10	System info		View	View the versions of the different modules (system, mapping, risk areas) installed in the system as well as the updates available.
		OK				Save the settings.
  	Settings → OPTIONS → Languages	11	All			Select the language then confirm.
		12	Europe			
		13	Asia			
		14	America			
		OK				Having selected the language, save the setting.
  	Settings → OPTIONS → Screen configuration	15	Animation			Activate or deactivate settings.
		16	Brightness			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.
		OK				Save the settings.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
	Settings → OPTIONS → Setting the time-date	17	Date		Date	Enter the date and select the date format.
					Date format:	
		18	Time		Time	Set the time.
					Time Zone	Define the time zone.
					Time format:	Select the time format: 12h / 24h.
					Synchronisation with GPS (UTC):	Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites.
		OK				Save the settings.
	Settings → OPTIONS → Setting of the profiles	19	Profile 1			Enter settings for the profiles.
		20	Profile 2			
		21	Profile 3			
		22	Common profile			
		OK				Save the settings.
	Settings → OPTIONS → Driver screen configuration		Personalisation of the dashboard			Choose and select the display information required on the dashboard.
		OK				Confirm the selections.

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

3

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

4

" **Position**".

Or

5

" **Sound**".

Or

6

" **Voice**".

Or

7

" **Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The audio **Ambience** settings (6 ambiences available) as well as the **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** settings are different and independent for each sound source.
Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**".

The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.

Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

19

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.
Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system deforms the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

2

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

3

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

4

"**Distribution**".

Or

5

"**Sound**".

Or

6

"**Voice**".

Or

7

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

15

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate "**Automatic scrolling**".

16

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

8

Select "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

9

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

10

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

17 Select "**Date**".

Press this button to define the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

18 Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Color schemes

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a color scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the color scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger areas" does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings (without the possibility of adjusting the volume) in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger area" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the "Danger area". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player does not recognise.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
	The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...).	
	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble, Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

CITROËN Connect Radio

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	96
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	98
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	99
Menus	100
Applications	102
Radio Media	106
Telephone	118
Settings	132
Frequently asked questions	143

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss

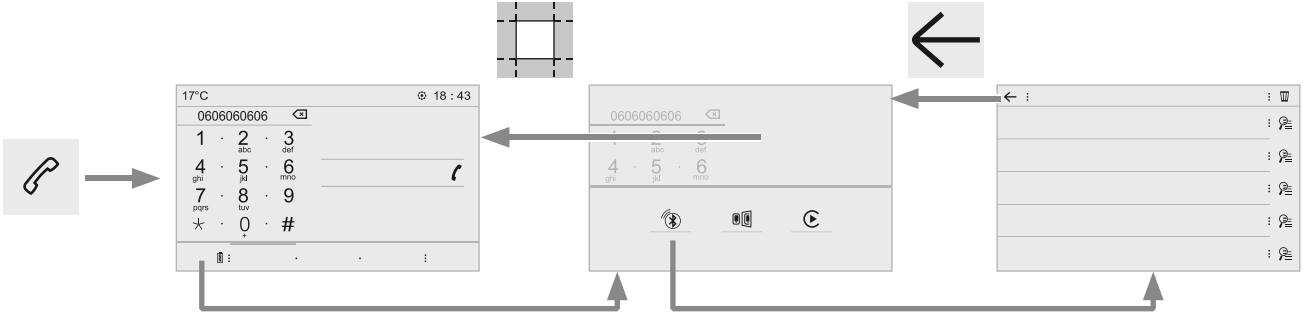
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



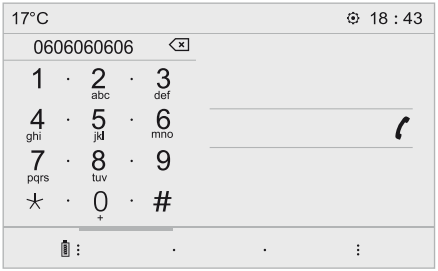
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

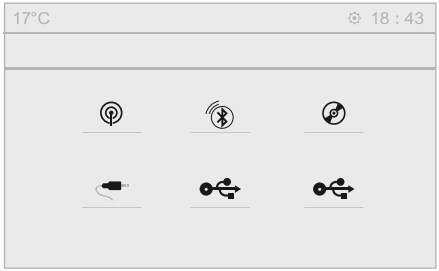
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* stations.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and using Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- CD player.
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.





In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select of the previous / next track
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.



Change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming)



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2



Voice commands:
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/ Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Radio (rotate): previous / next preset.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): call.



Call in progress (short press): access to telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.

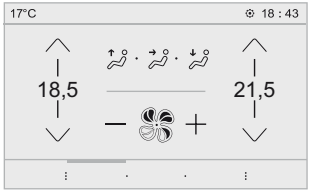


Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

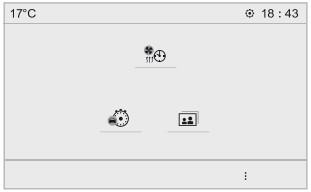
According to version.

Air conditioning



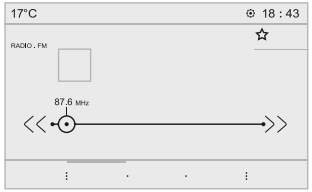
Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.

Applications



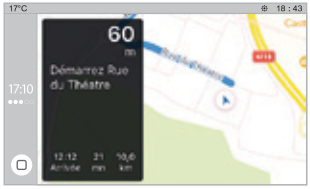
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



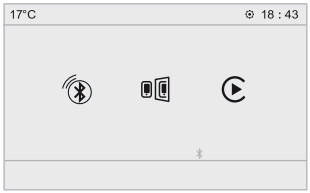
Select an audio source or radio station.

Navigation



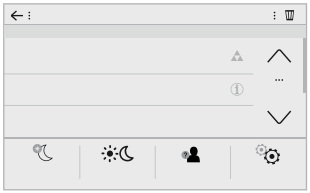
Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

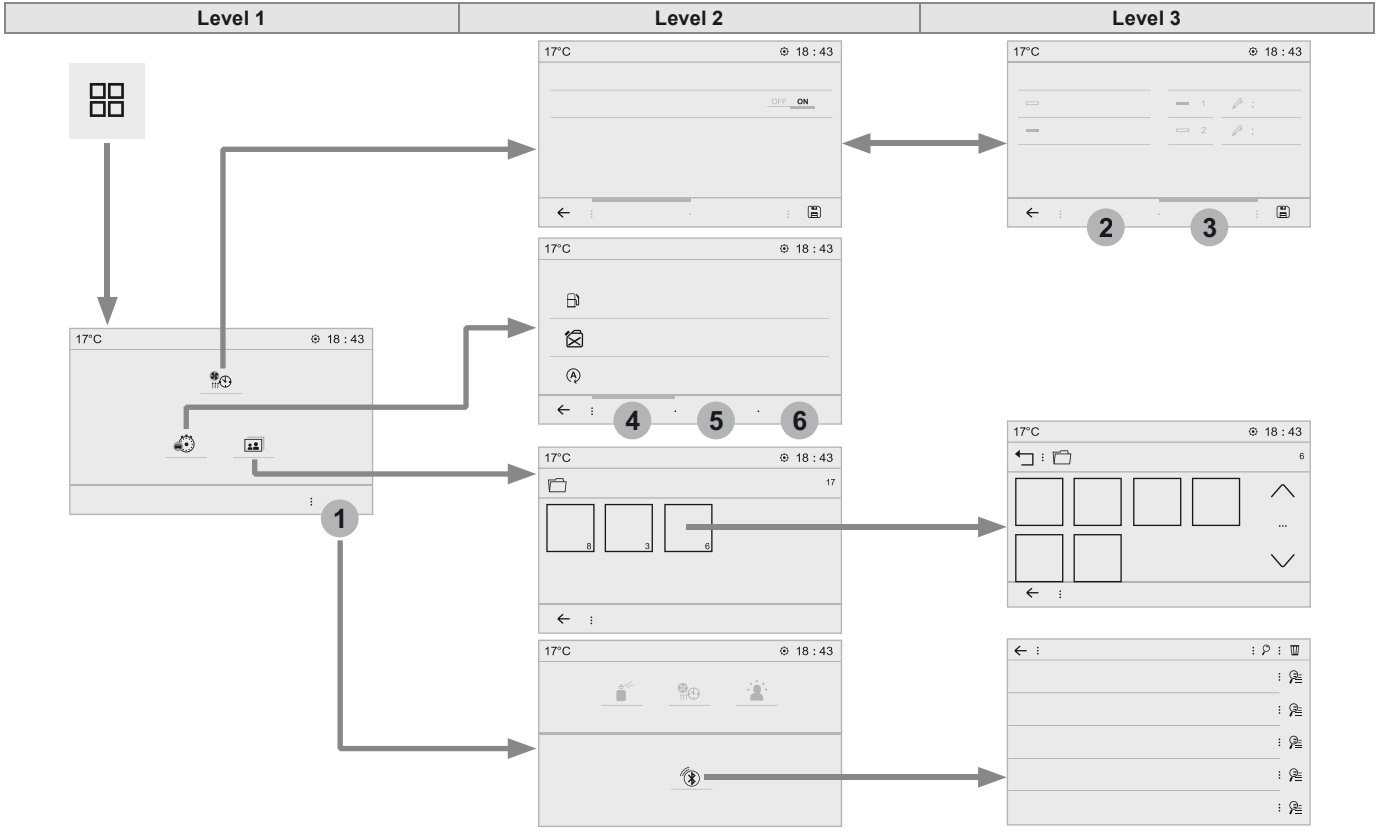
Driving



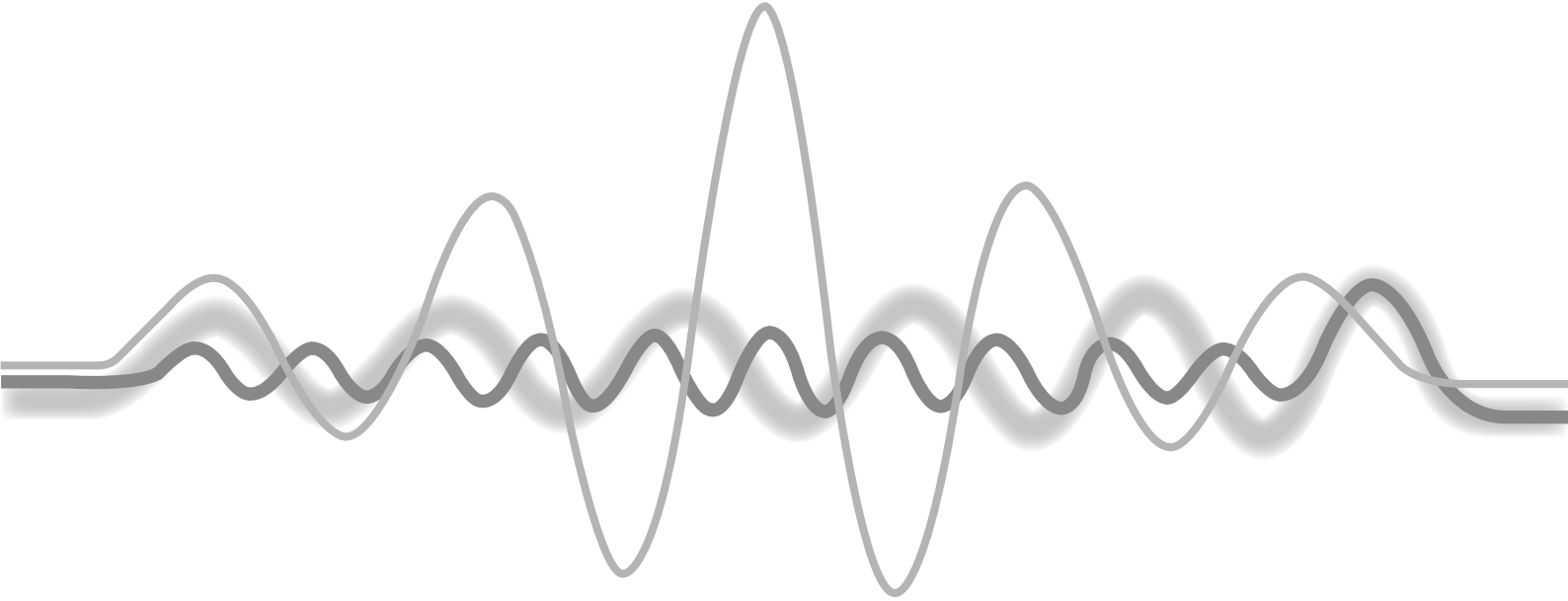
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Applications

According to version / according to equipment



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications → Temperature conditioning	2	State			Activate / deactivate the temperature conditioning.
		3	Settings			Configure the pre-conditioning.
						Save the parameters.
		←				Confirm the settings.
	Applications → Trip computer	4	Instant			System providing information about the current journey (range, consumption…).
		5	Trip 1			
		6	Trip 2			
		←				Go back to the Applications page.
	Applications → Photos		Photo gallery		Photos	Go to the photo gallery.
				↰		Go back a level.
	Applications → OPTIONS		Bluetooth connection		Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
1					Delete	Delete one or more devices.



Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.

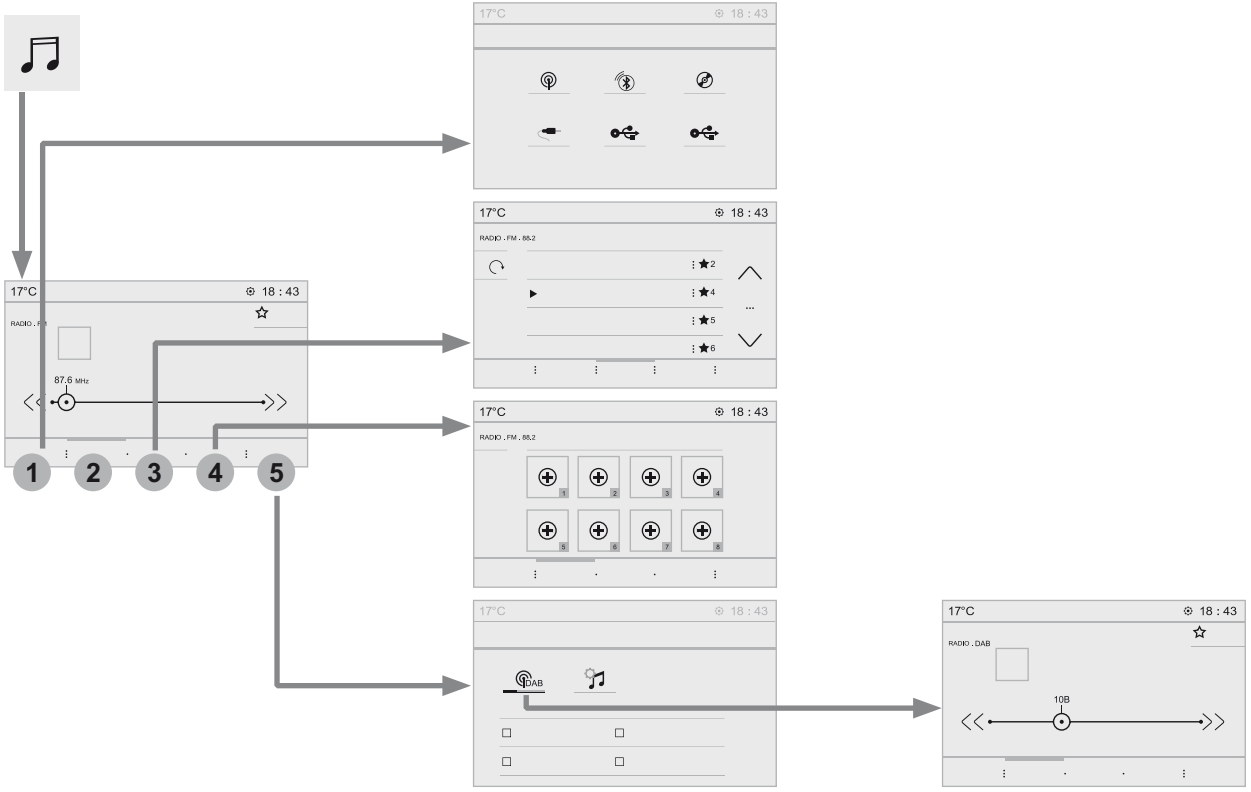


Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Radio Media

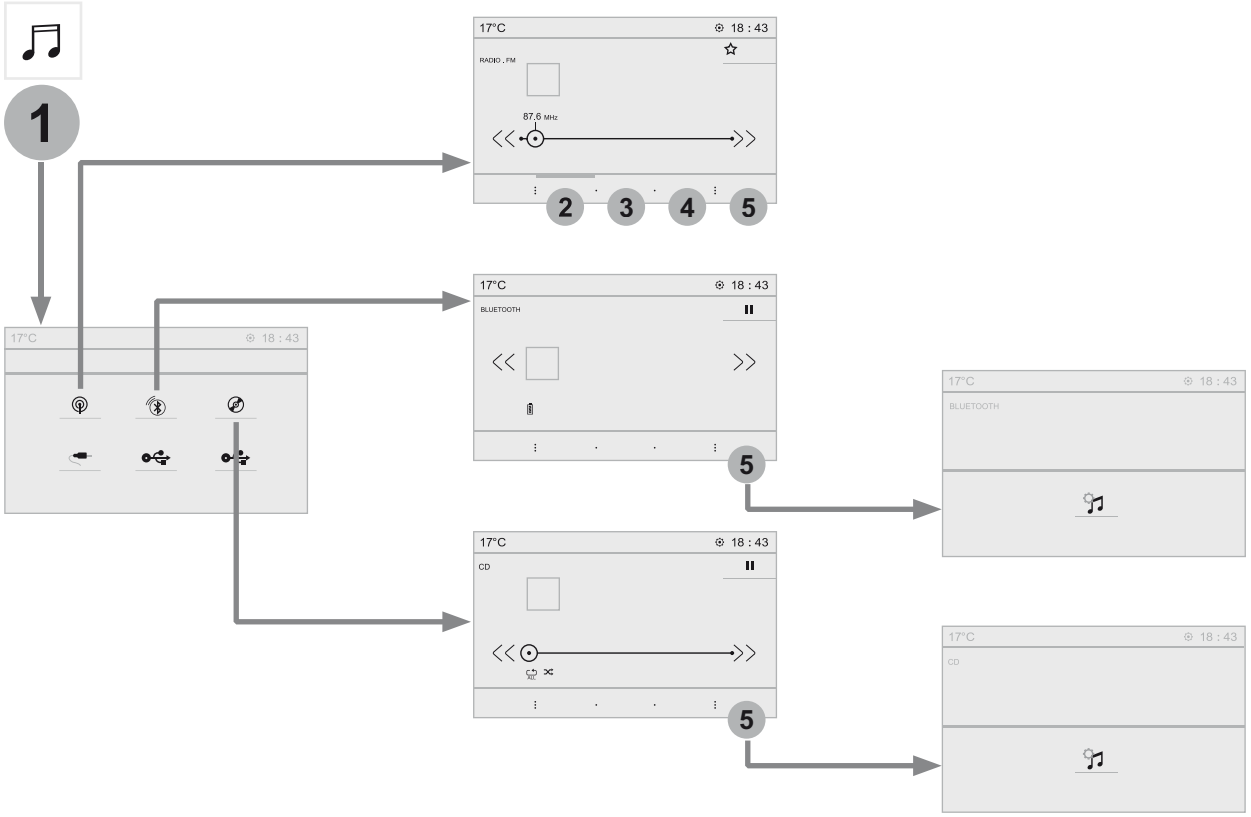
According to version

Level 1	Level 2



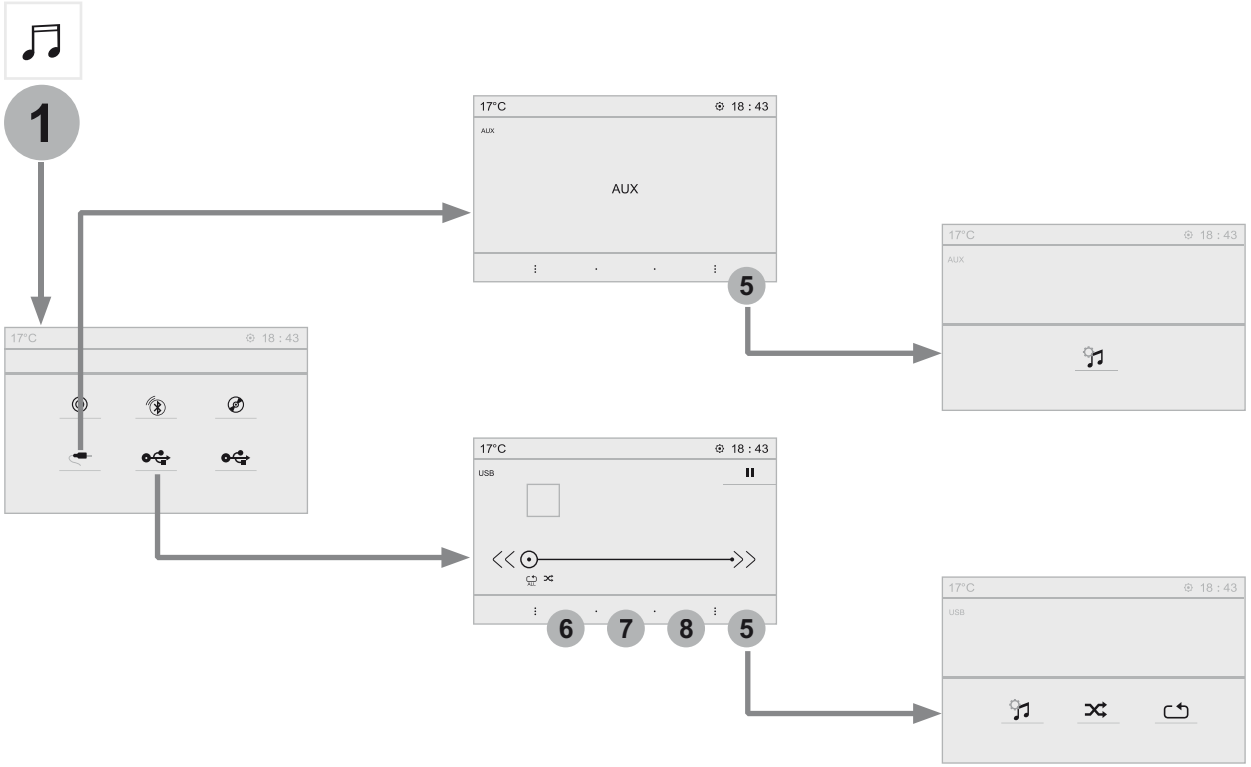
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
1	Radio Media → SOURCES		Radio	Select change of source.
			Bluetooth	
			CD	
			AUX	
			USB	
			iPod	
2	Radio Media → Frequency		FM / DAB / AM	Display the current radio station.
3	Radio Media → List			Update the list according to the stations received.
			Preset	Make a short press to preset the station.
4	Radio Media → Preset			Select a preset station or preset a station.
5	Radio Media → OPTIONS		AM band / DAB band / FM band	Press the Band button to change waveband.
			Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
			News	Activate or deactivate the options.
			TA	
			RDS	
			FM-DAB Follow-up	
MHz KHz	Radio Media → 87.5 MHz			Enter a frequency of the FM and AM bands on the virtual keypad.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → Radio	2	Frequency			Display the current radio station.
		3	List			Display the list of stations received.
		4	Preset			Select a preset station or preset a station.
		5	OPTIONS	FM	FM band / DAB band / AM band	Press the band button to change band.
					Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
				☑	News	Activate or deactivate the options.
				☑	TA	
				☑	RDS	
				☑	FM-DAB Follow-up	
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → Bluetooth	5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → CD					Display the details of the music being played.
		5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → AUX	5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → USB	6	Player			Display the details of the music being played.
		7	Tracks list			Display the current selection.
		8	Library			Display the music library.
		5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

> **!** Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.



Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**NEWS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TAalert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" **or** "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

On the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.

On the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

On the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".



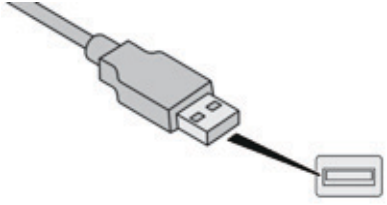
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

If the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth Streaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav, .wma, .aac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

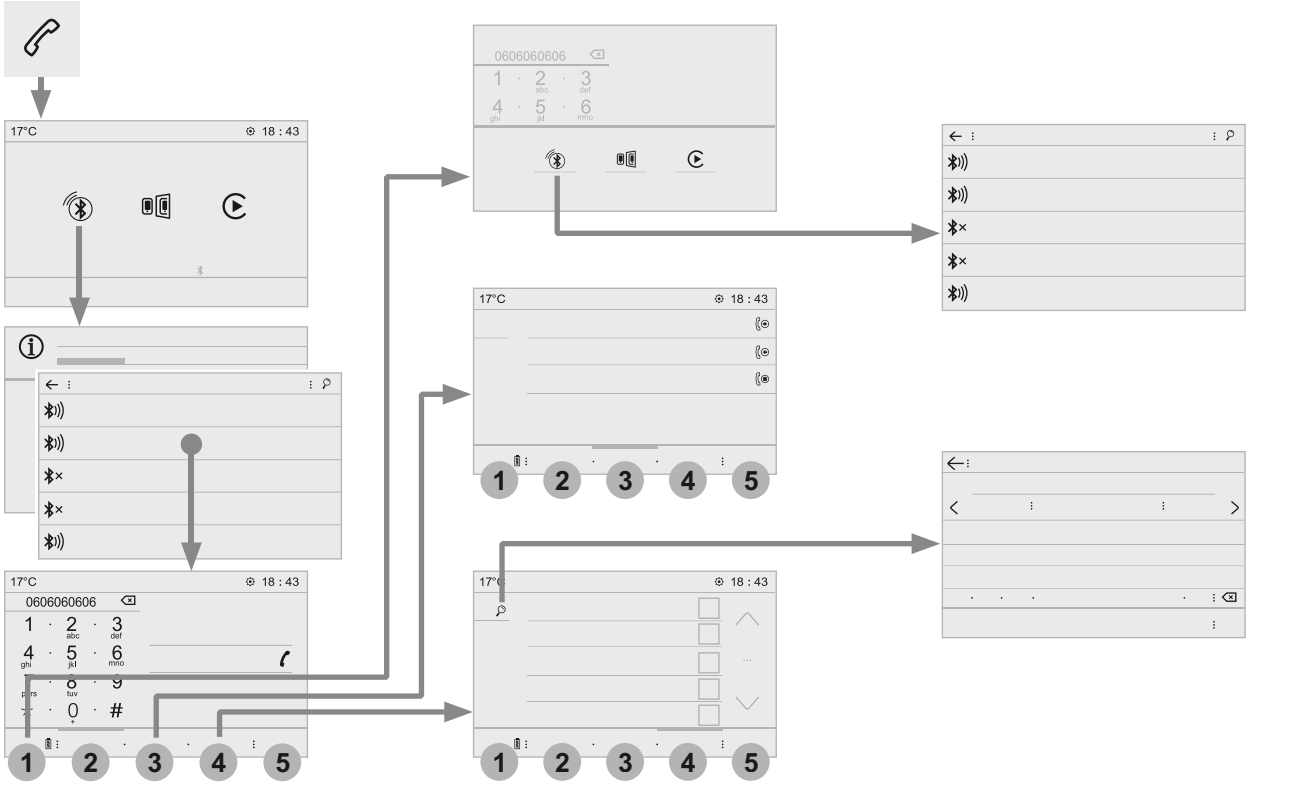
It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

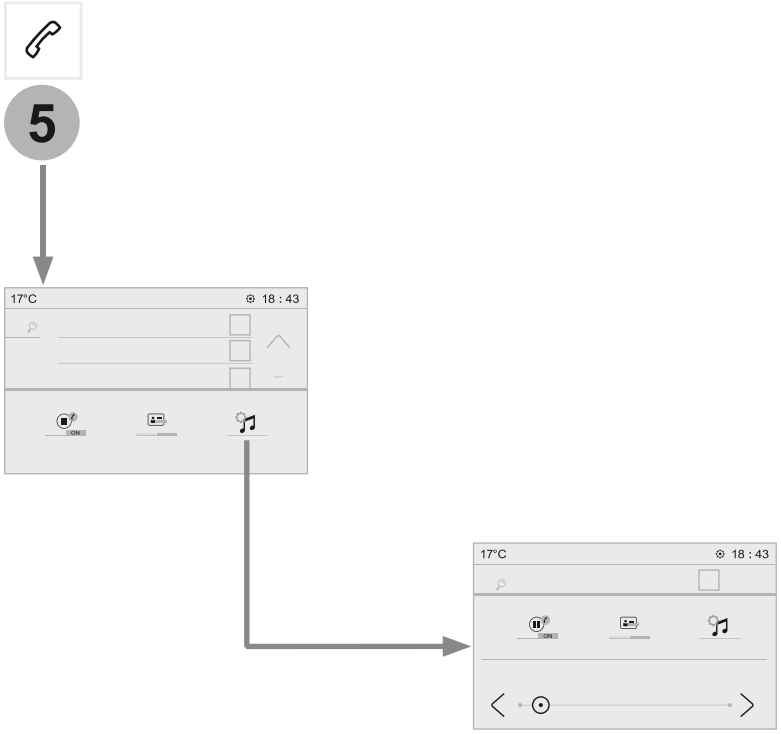
According to version

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



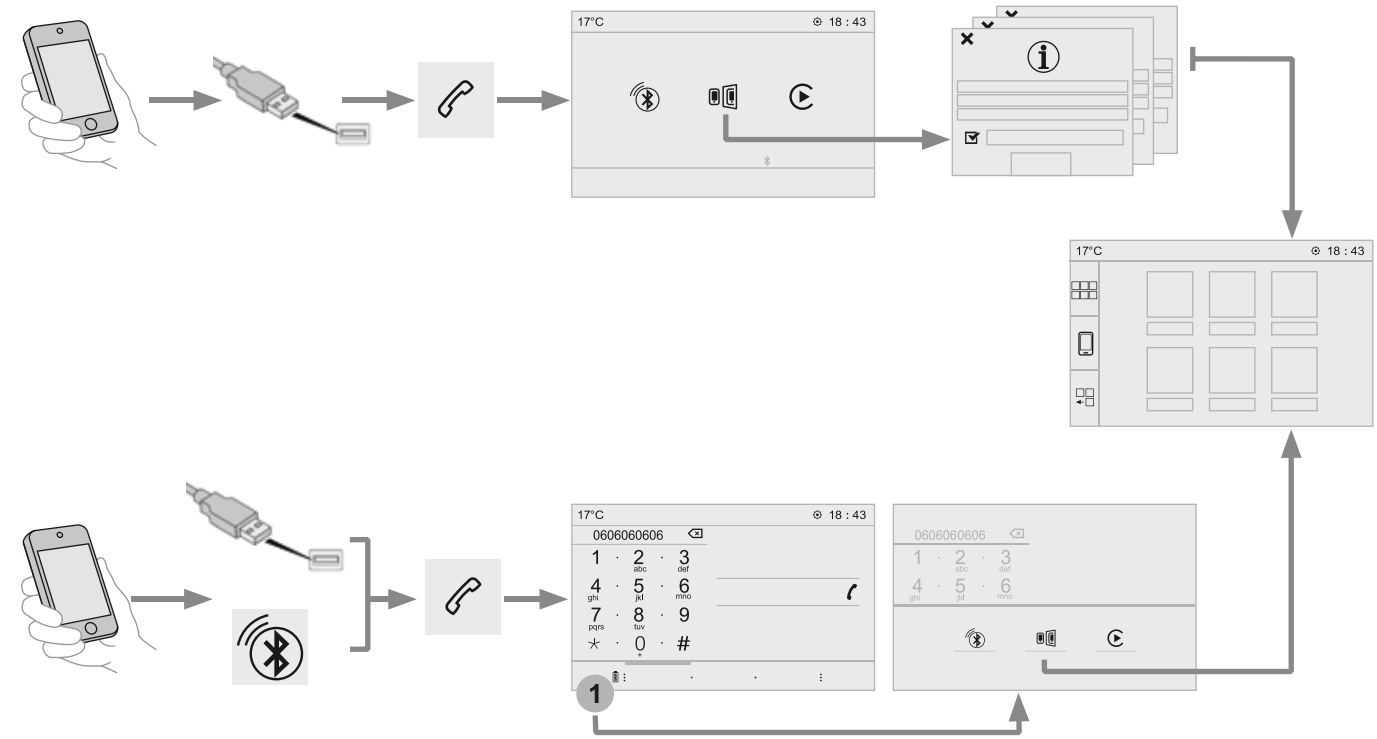
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
1	Telephone → Bluetooth search → PHONE		Bluetooth connection		Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
					Delete	Delete one or more devices.
			MirrorLink			Open the MirrorLink function.
			CarPlay			Open the CarPlay function.
2	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Keypad					Enter a telephone number.
3	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Recent calls		All			View the calls according to the presentation selected. Select a contact to make the call.
			Outgoing			
			Missed			
			Incoming			
4	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Contacts		Search		Confirm	Search for a contact in the contacts directory.
			Telephone			Go to the details of the contact sheet.

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ On hold (auto)		ON - OFF	Activate or deactivate the automatic placing on hold of the current conversation.
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Sort contacts by name Sort contacts by first name			Sort the contacts by Surname-first name or First name-surname.
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Ring volume			Adjust the volume of the ringtone.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; **update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that "Bluetooth"® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

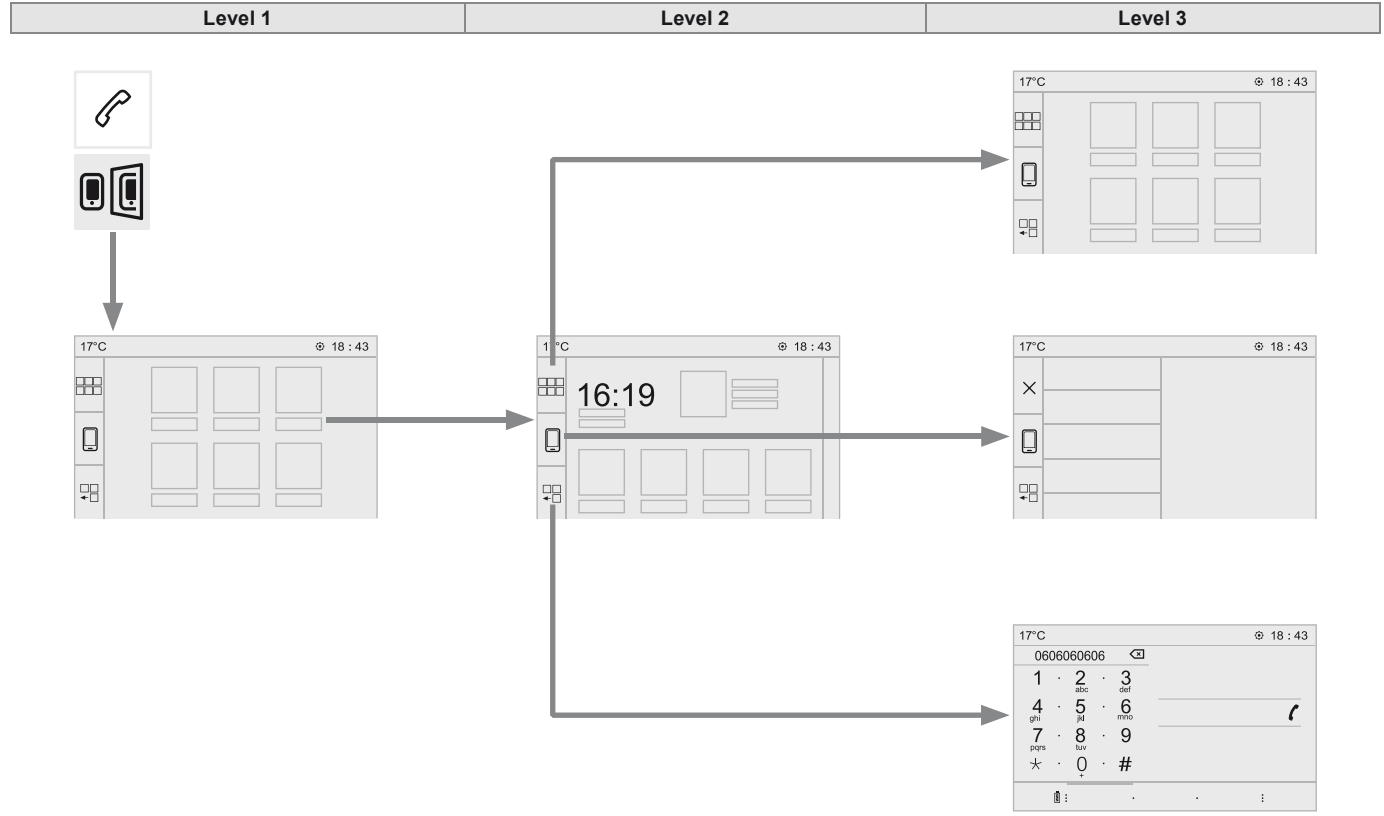


Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.

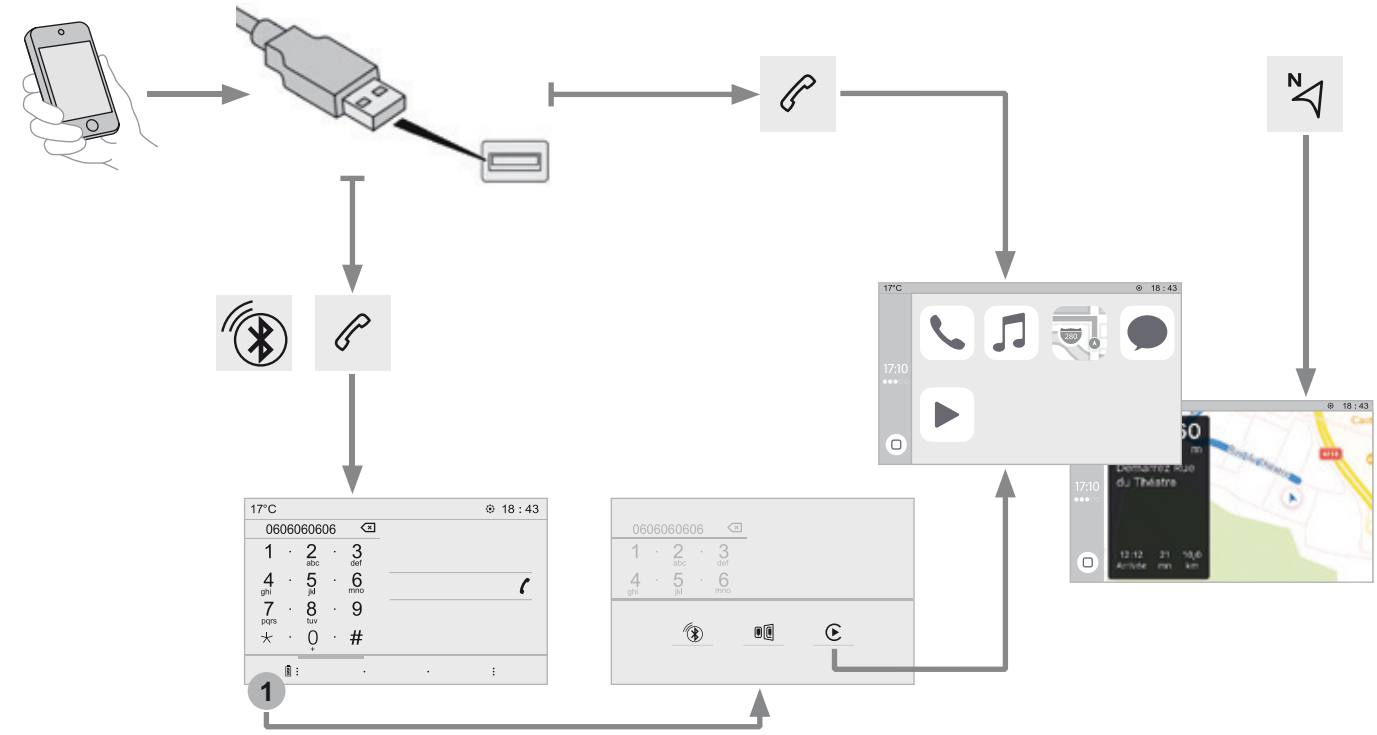
Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
17°C
18 : 43
16:19
0606060606

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
					Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.
	**Telephone** ↓ **MirrorLink™**				Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
					Go to the primary page of the "Telephone" menu.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the Carplay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.



Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

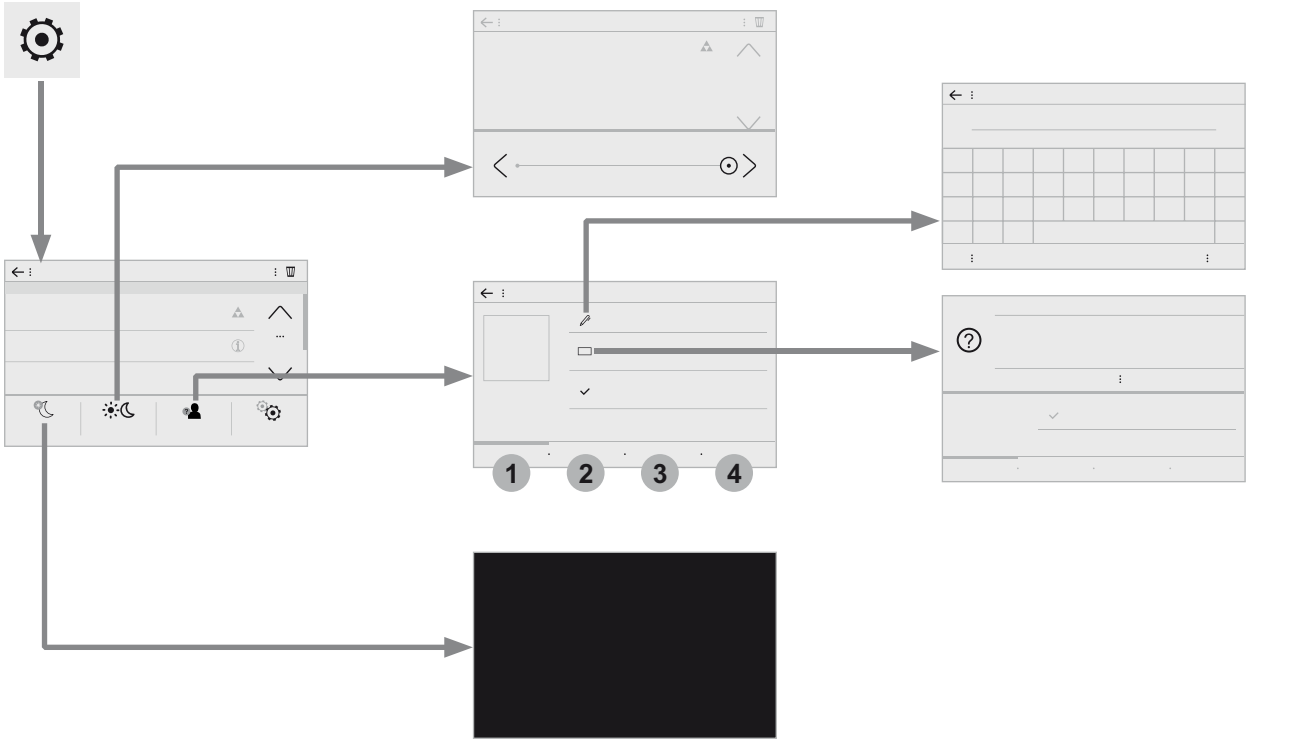


Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Settings

According to version / according to equipment

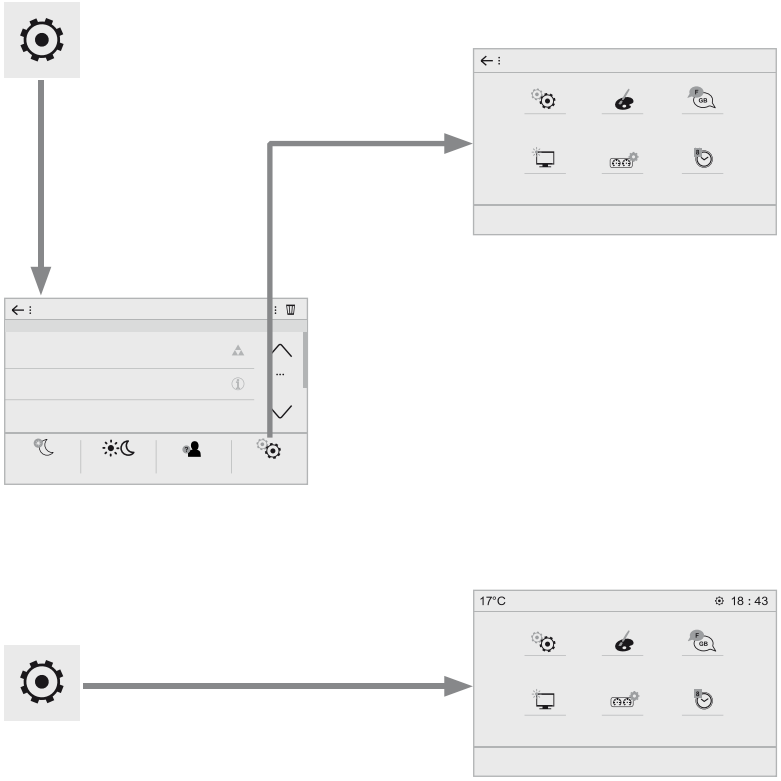
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings ↓ **Brightness**		**Ambience**			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.
	Settings ↓ **Profiles**	1	**Profile 1**			Select a profile.
		2	**Profile 2**			
		3	**Profile 3**			
		4	**Common profile**			
			Name:		**Profile name modification**	Configure the profiles.
		00.0	**Reset the profile**	?	**Yes / No**	
		✔	**Profile activated**			Activate/deactivate the profile selected.
		←				Save the settings.
	Settings ↓ **Dark**	■				Function which switches off the lit display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.

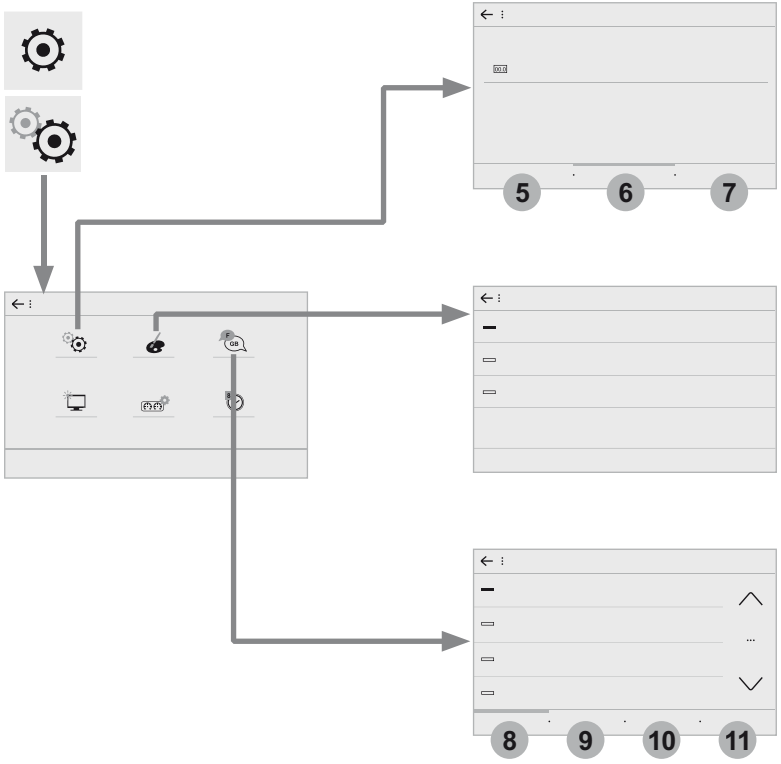
According to equipment

Level 1	Level 2

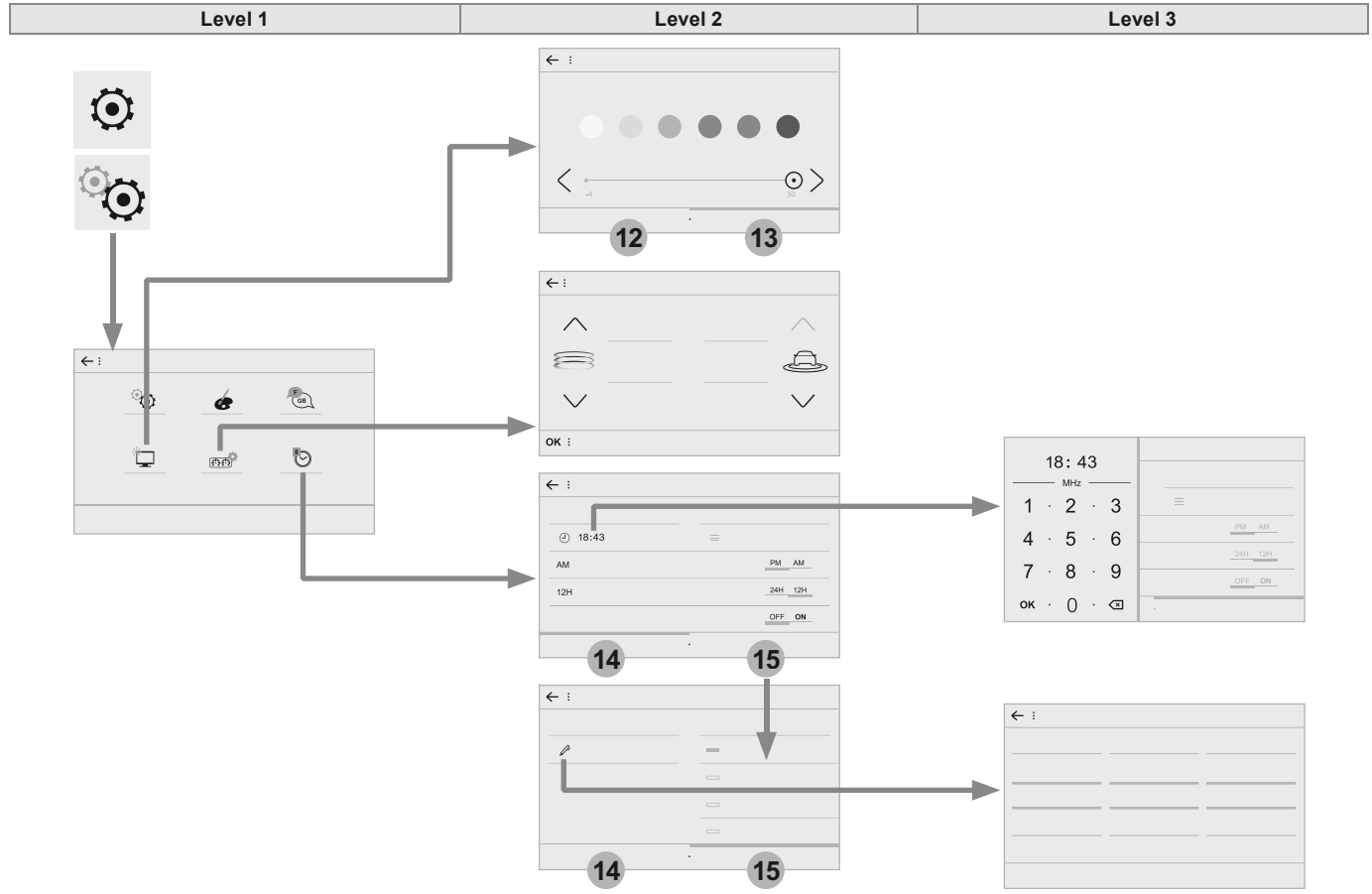


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings ↓ **Configuration**		**System configuration**	Configure certain system parameters.
			Ambience	Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.
			Language	Select the display language for the the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			Screen configuration	Set the configuration of the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			Customization	Configure the instrument panel for a personalised display.
			Date and time	Set the date and time and select the display format.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings → Configuration → System configuration	5	Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Configure the display units for the distance, consumption and temperature.
					Temperatures	
		6	Factory settings	00,0	Reset	Restore the original settings.
		7	System info		View	Consult the version of the different modules installed in the system.
		←				Save the parameters.
	Settings → Configuration → Ambience					Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.
		←				Confirm the selection and start the change of ambience.
	Settings → Configuration → Language	8	All			Select the display language for the screen and/or the instrument panel.
		9	Europe			
		10	Asia			
		11	America			
		←				Save the parameter.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
12
13
OK
18:43
AM
12H
PM AM
24H 12H
OFF ON
14
15
18: 43
MHz
1 · 2 · 3
4 · 5 · 6
7 · 8 · 9
OK · 0 ·
14
15

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings → Configuration → Screen configuration	12	Brightness			Select the display brightness level.
		13	Animation	☑	Automatic scrolling	Activate or deactivate the parameters.
				☑	Animated transitions	
		←				Save the parameters.
	Settings → Configuration → Temperature conditioning		Customization			Choose and select the display information required.
		OK	Confirm			Confirm the selections.
	Settings → Configuration → Date and time	14	Time		Time	Set the time.
					Time Zone	Set the time zone.
				—	AM	Select the display format.
				—	12h	
				—	GPS Synchronisation	Activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the satellites.
				←		Save the settings.
		15	Date		Date	Set the date and select the display format.
					Setting the date	
				←		Save the settings.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".



Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad



Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjust the brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

5 Press "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

6 Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (according to version).

7 Press "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

12 Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to set the brightness of the screen and/or instrument panel (according to version).

13 Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".



Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with satellites (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".



Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.

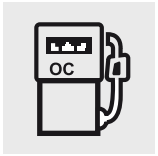
Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing a distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

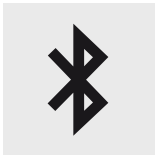
Bluetooth® audio system

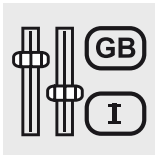












Contents

First steps	148
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	149
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	150
Menus	151
Radio	152
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	154
Media	156
Telephone	161
Frequently asked questions	166

The different functions and adjustments described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps



Press: On / Off
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC

Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activation / Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK

Confirm or display contextual menu.

1

Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a station.



Radio:
Automatic step by step search up / down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.



Radio:
Manual step by step search up / down for radio stations.
Select previous / next MP3 track.
Media:
Select previous / next folder / genre / artist / playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU

Access to main menu.

TA

Activate / Deactivate TA (traffic announcements)
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND

Select waveband: FM / DAB / AM.

 Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select of the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.

SRC /

Other than telephone calls:
Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

MENU

Access to the main menu.

Increase volume.

Mute / Restore sound.

Decrease volume.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

Start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.



"**Multimedia**": Media settings, Radio settings.



"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, End call.



"**Trip computer**".



"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, ...



"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.



"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle settings, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.



Press the "**MENU**" button.



Move from one menu to another.



Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).

Press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search for radio stations.

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.
To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears barred in the screen.

RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

Select "**RDS**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed in the screen.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message.
When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA — Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA traffic announcements. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.

TA — Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ — Select or deselect categories.

OK — Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display RADIO TEXT

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

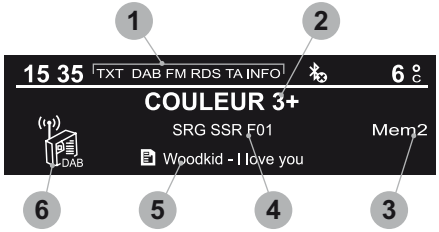
OK — With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼ — Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

According to version

i If the current "DAB" radio station is not available on "FM", "DAB FM", is struck out.



1 Display options:
if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

2 Display the name of the current radio station.

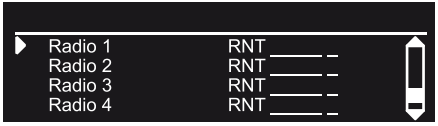
3 Preset radio station, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

4 Display the name of the multiplex service being used.

5 Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.

6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

i When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



LIST Display the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

i Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB,...)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex service".

TA Long press: select the desired categories of announcements from Transport, News, Entertainment and Flash special (availability according to the station).

DAB / FM tracking

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press on "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, ...)

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if there is one).
When "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is activated, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio, with sometimes a variation in volume.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.



Press the "**MENU**" button.



Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.



Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm

Media

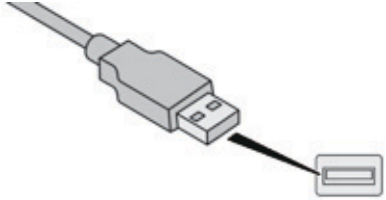
USB port

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket, depending on version.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system creates playlists (temporary memory), which can take from a few seconds to several minutes on the first connection. Reducing the number of non-music files and the number of folders reduces this waiting time. Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.



Insert a USB memory stick into the USB port or connect a USB peripheral device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

i While connected by USB, the portable device may be charged automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:
- **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ ▼ Press this button to select the play mode.

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST

Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Choose by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"*.

OK

Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST

Make a long press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK

Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.



Press one of these buttons to go to the next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"* in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Jack auxiliary (AUX) socket



Connect the portable device (MP3 player, …) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Operation of controls is via the portable device.

Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or fast back.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 CD compilation in the player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels.
However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC /

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST

Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the audio system.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a telephone**" section).

SRC /

Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SOURCE*** button.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls**. Contextual information may be displayed in the screen.

* In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
** If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with .mp3, .wma, .wav and .aac file extensions, with a bit rate of of 32 to 320 Kbps.
It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).
Other file types (mp4, ...) may be played.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, the ISO 9660 level 1. 2 or Joliet file format is recommended when recording.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3, .wma, .wav, .cbr, .vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
No other file types (.mp4, ...) can be played.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

File names should have less than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g.: " ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your a Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Refer to the instructions for your telephone and to your service provider for the services available to you.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

Press the **MENU** button.

Select the "**Connections**" menu.

Confirm with **OK**.

Select "**Search for a Bluetooth device**".

Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), check that the code displayed in the system and the telephone is the same and confirm.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**"*, "**Calls list**", "**View paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

Managing connections

The telephone connection automatically includes hands-free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU

Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Indicates that a device is connected.

A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.

Indicates the audio streaming profile.

Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.

Select a telephone.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Then select and confirm:
- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.



Confirm with **OK**.



Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Dial**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".



Confirm with **OK**.



Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**End call**".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.



During a call, press one of the buttons for more than 2 seconds.

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth, you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK

During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

Hang up



In the contextual menu, select "**End call**" to end the call.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)



In the contextual menu:
- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Telephone mode



In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Dual call



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and confirm to return to a call left on hold.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Directory

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.

Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

MENU

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.
Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.
You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR

Press this button.

Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, underground car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault in the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is broken.	The state of charge of the device may be too low.	Charge the battery of the portable device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The sound from the CD is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert a good quality CD and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (base, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manual activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call your voicemail box, via the telephone menu, using the number supplied by your service provider.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system AND of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

Optional Digital tuner (DAB) (RU-9472 variant has DAB / RU9475 does not have DAB)



4Dconcept
Diadeis
Interak

05-16
I 06-16





Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z

CITROËN

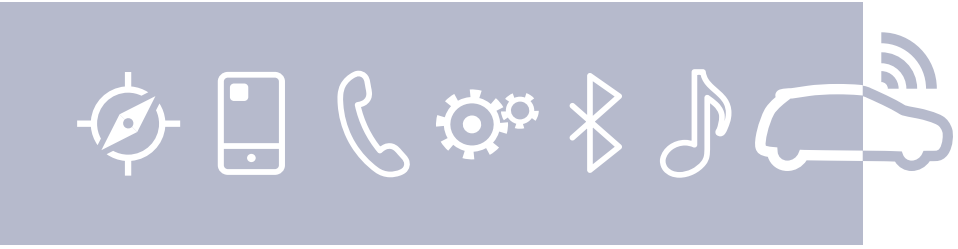


16SYSCC040
Anglais

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Česky [Czech]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH tímto prohlašuje, že tento "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbHerklærer herved, at følgende udstyr "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, dass sich das Gerät "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH seadme "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, declares that this "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que el "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ "PSA RCC" ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "PSA RCC" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH déclare que l'appareil "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dichiara che questo "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklarē, ka "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklaruoja, kad šis "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dat het toestel "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, jiddikjara li dan "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jikkonforma mal-ħtigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott,Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH nyilatkozom, hogy a "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH oświadcza, że "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que este "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH izjavlja, da je ta "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH vakuuttaa täten että "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att denna "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH yfir því að "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer herved at utstyret "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

ECE type-approval certificate No. is 057902 (concerning the type-approval of an electric/electronic sub-assembly under Regulation No. 10)	
emitted frequency range and power: Frequency band Radiated Power [EIRP] Hints / Restriction 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz WiFi < 51mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A2 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz Bluetooth < 2,6 mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A1 & A2 Antenna configuration: internal antenna Internal antenna not accessible by user. Any change of the user will violate the legal approval of this product.	
Brazil	 "Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."
Canada	***This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:*** ***(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and*** ***(2) this device must accept any interference received,*** ***including interference that may cause undesired operation.***
Japan	R= Radio Type Approval Number: BBBBBBBBBB T= Terminal Equipment Approval number: X JJ-5NNN AAA
Mexico	**NOM-121-SCT1-2009** **La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:** **(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y** **(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.**
South Korea	해당 무선 설비는 운용 중 전파혼신 가능성이 있음.
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 1. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 2. 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。
USA / Canada	This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by (Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH) may void the FCC and IC Canada authorization to operate this equipment.



AUDIO AND TELEMATICS GUIDE

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Find your handbook and the audio and telematic systems on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

http://service.citroen.com/ddb/

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



CITROËN Connect Nav

GPS satellite navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	5
Menus	6
Voice commands	8
Navigation	14
Connected navigation	30
Applications	40
Radio Media	54
Telephone	66
Settings	78
Frequently asked questions	88

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. Displaying of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss

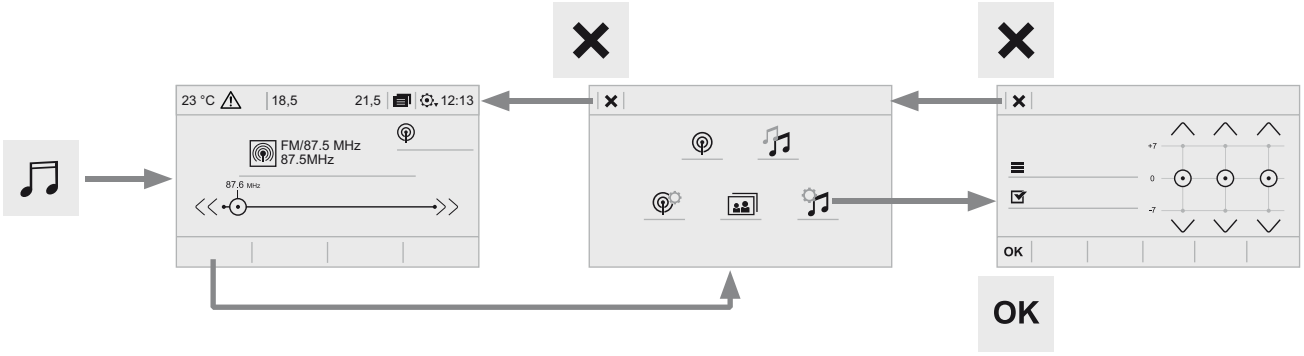
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



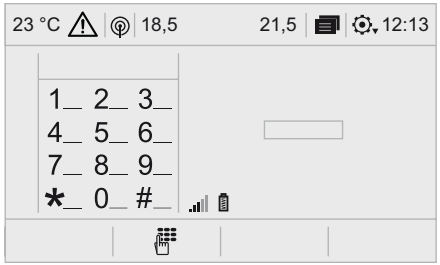
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

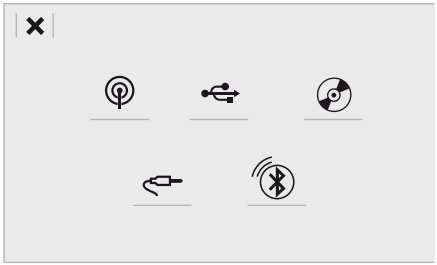
- Reminder of the air conditioning information and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* radio stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* using Bluetooth* audio streaming.

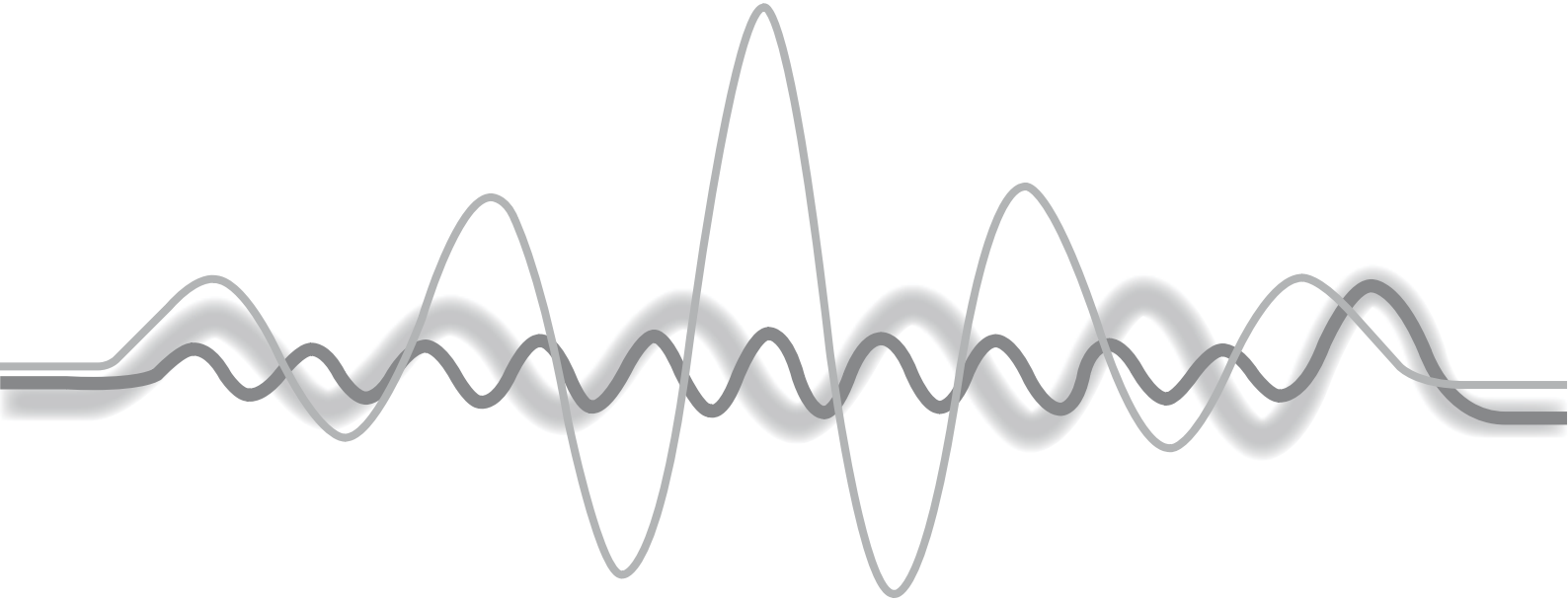
In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.





In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

* Depending on equipment.



Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute / Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): call.
Call in progress (short press): access to telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.

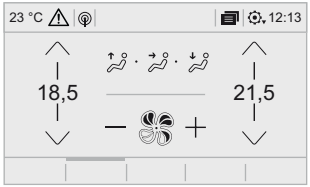


Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

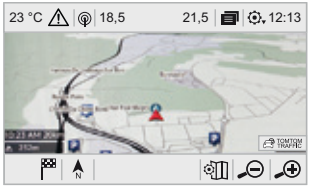
According to version

Air conditioning



Manage the various temperature and air flow settings.

Connected navigation



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

Applications



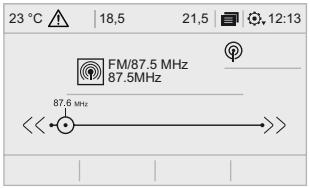
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or MirrorLink™.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Driving



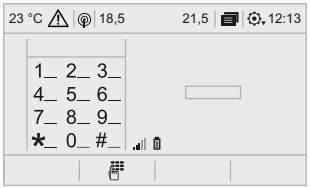
Activate, deactivate and configure certain vehicle functions.

Radio Media



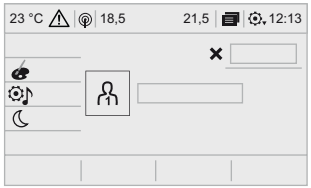
Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:
- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and opening roof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (according to version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London".

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna".

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller".

! The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.

Alternative synonyms can be used for some voice commands.
E.g. Guide to / Navigate to / Go to /...

The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

i 

Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Select "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be issued from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

"Voice command"	Help message
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 "Voice command"	 Help message
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box | voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Test message" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If no telephone has been connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 "Voice command"	 Help message
Send text to <...>	To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.
Listen to most recent message*	Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".

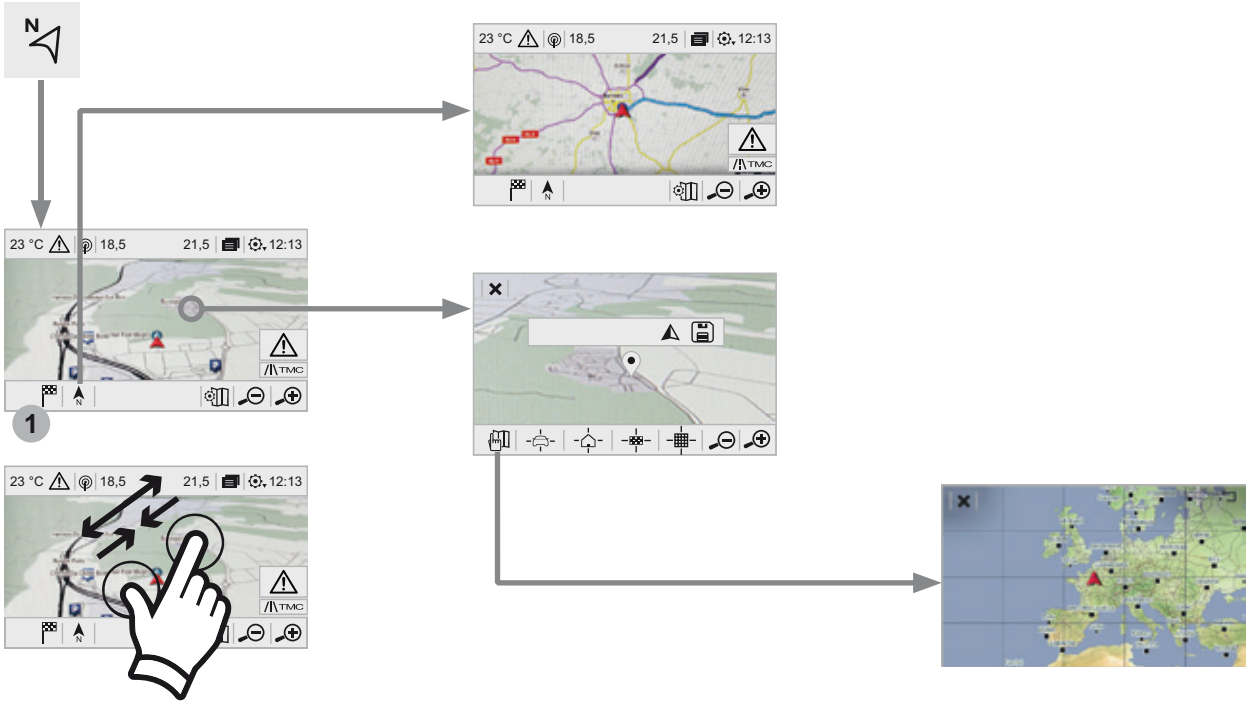
The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

* This function is only available if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

Navigation

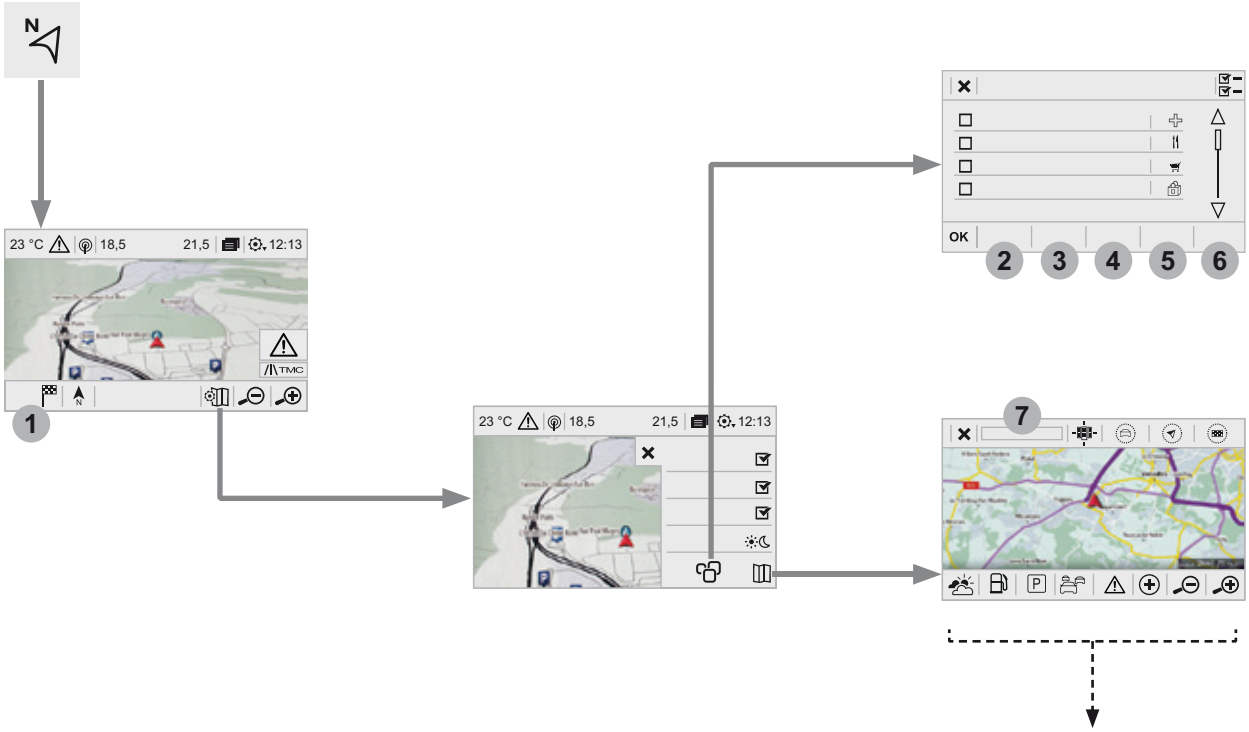
According to version

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



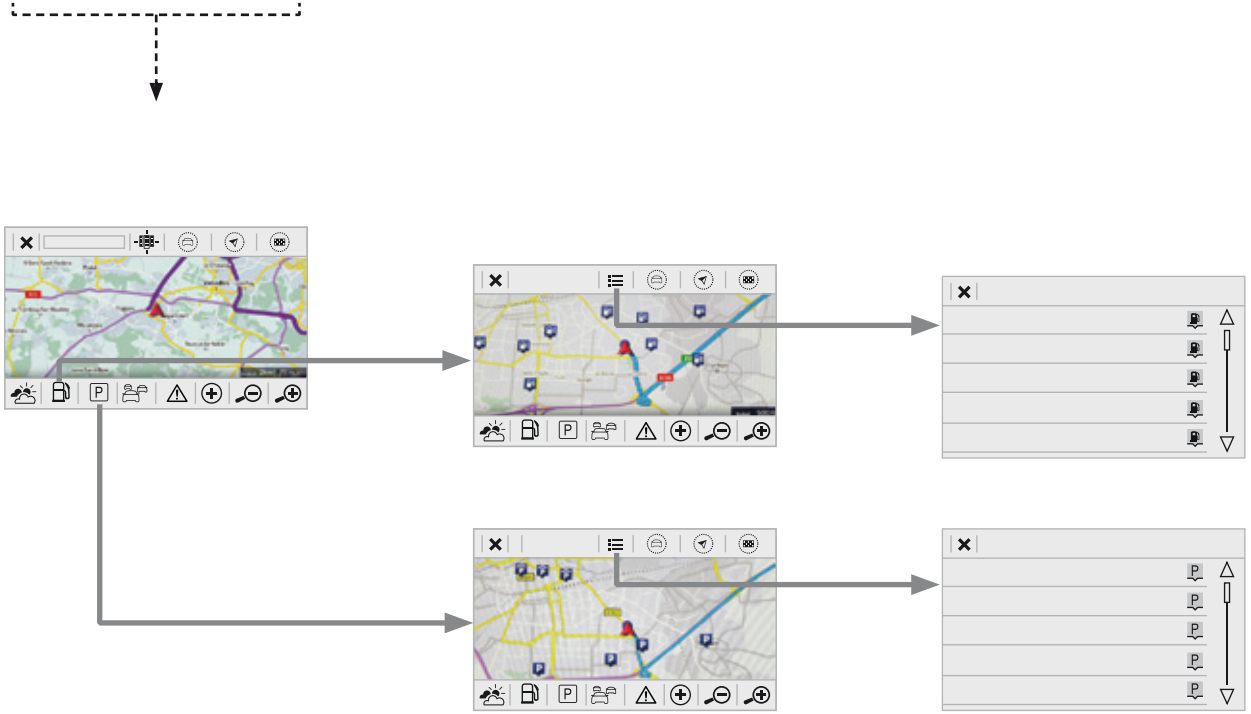
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.
	Navigation					Display the traffic information available.
	Navigation		World map			Manually locate an area on the world map or enter the latitude and longitude coordinates.
			Around the vehicle			Display the location criteria selected.
			Around home			
			Around the destination			
			2D mode			Switch to a 2D map.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.
						Start navigation to the current address.
						Save the current address.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

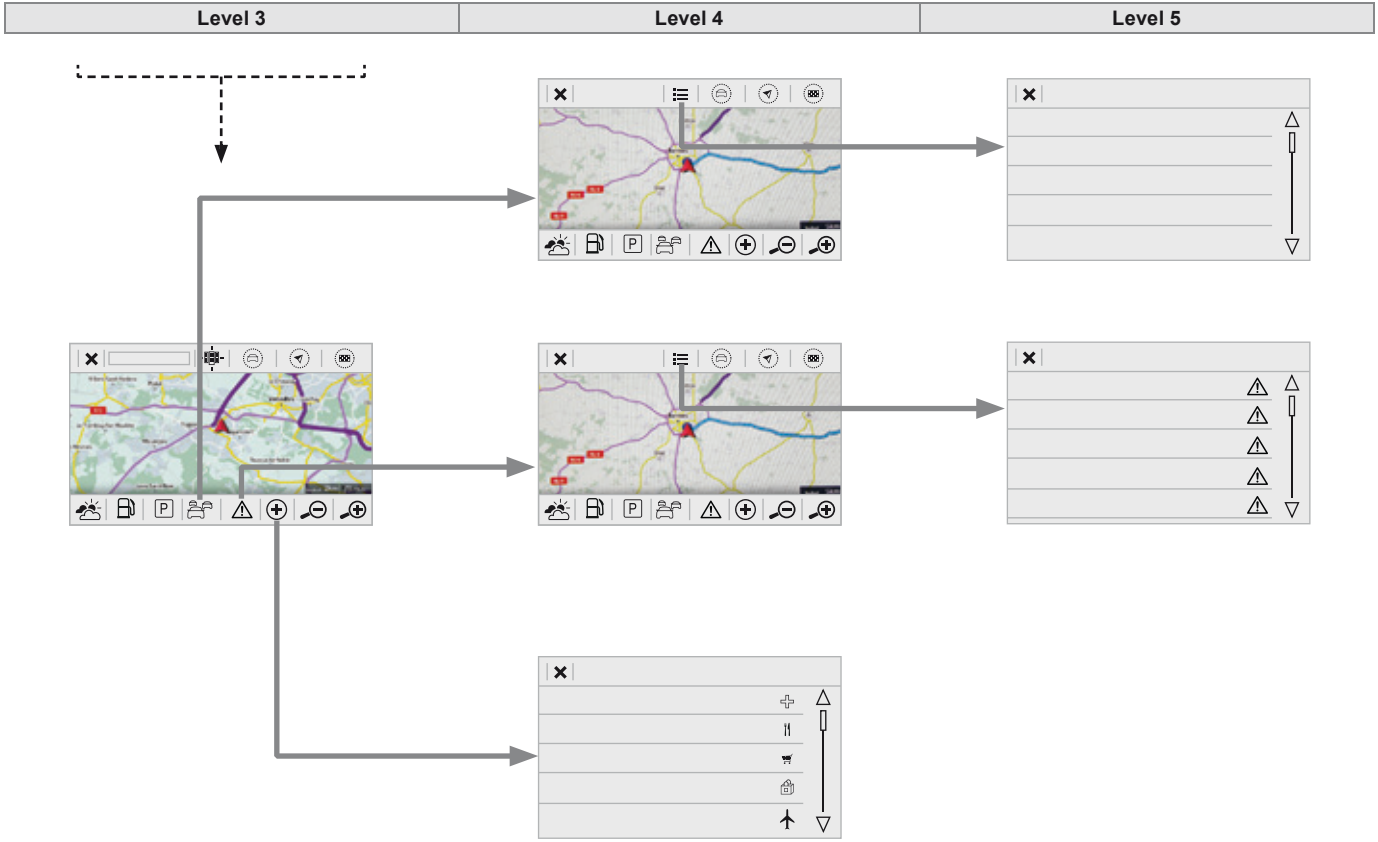


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
			Stations			Activate or deactivate the content available (stations, car parks, risk areas and danger areas).
			Car park			
			Danger area			
			Map color			Select day or night mode for display of the map.
			POI on map	2	Travel	Select the POIs available.
				3	Active life	
				4	Commercial	
				5	Public	
				6	Geographic	
	Navigation				Select all	Select or deselect all.
				OK		Save your choice or selection.
			View map	7	Modify city	Select or modify a city.
					Weather	Display on the map the content available in non-connected mode.
					Petrol Station	
					Car park	
					Traffic	
					Danger area	
					Select POI	Select from the POIs available.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5

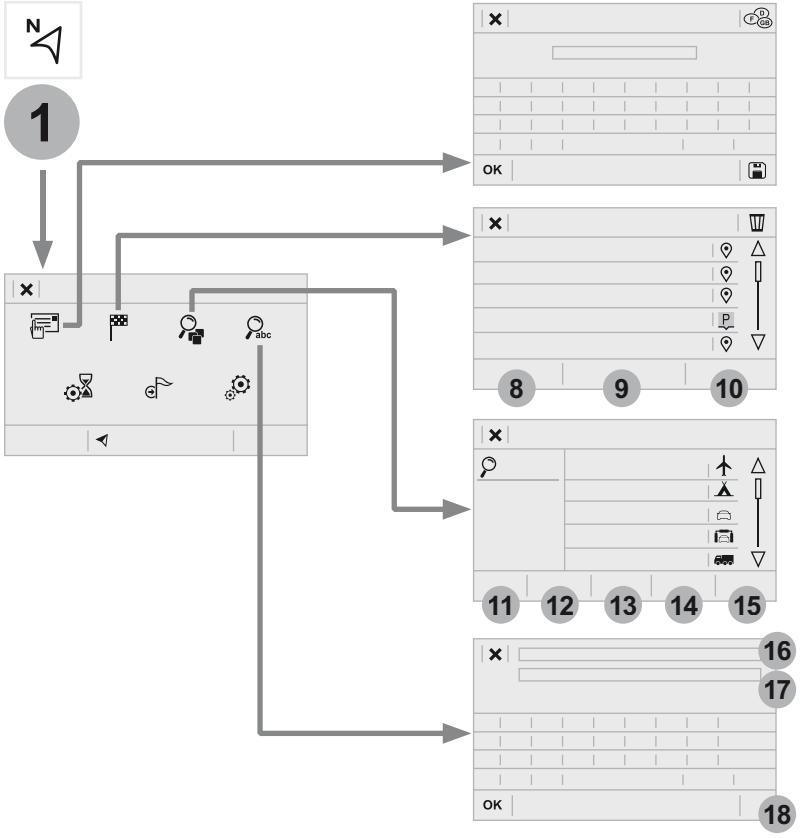


Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Zoom in	OK				Zoom in around the city selected.
	Around the vehicle					Select a location option.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather					Weather information transmitted in TMC mode.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of POIs.
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
P	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.


Level 3
Level 4
Level 5

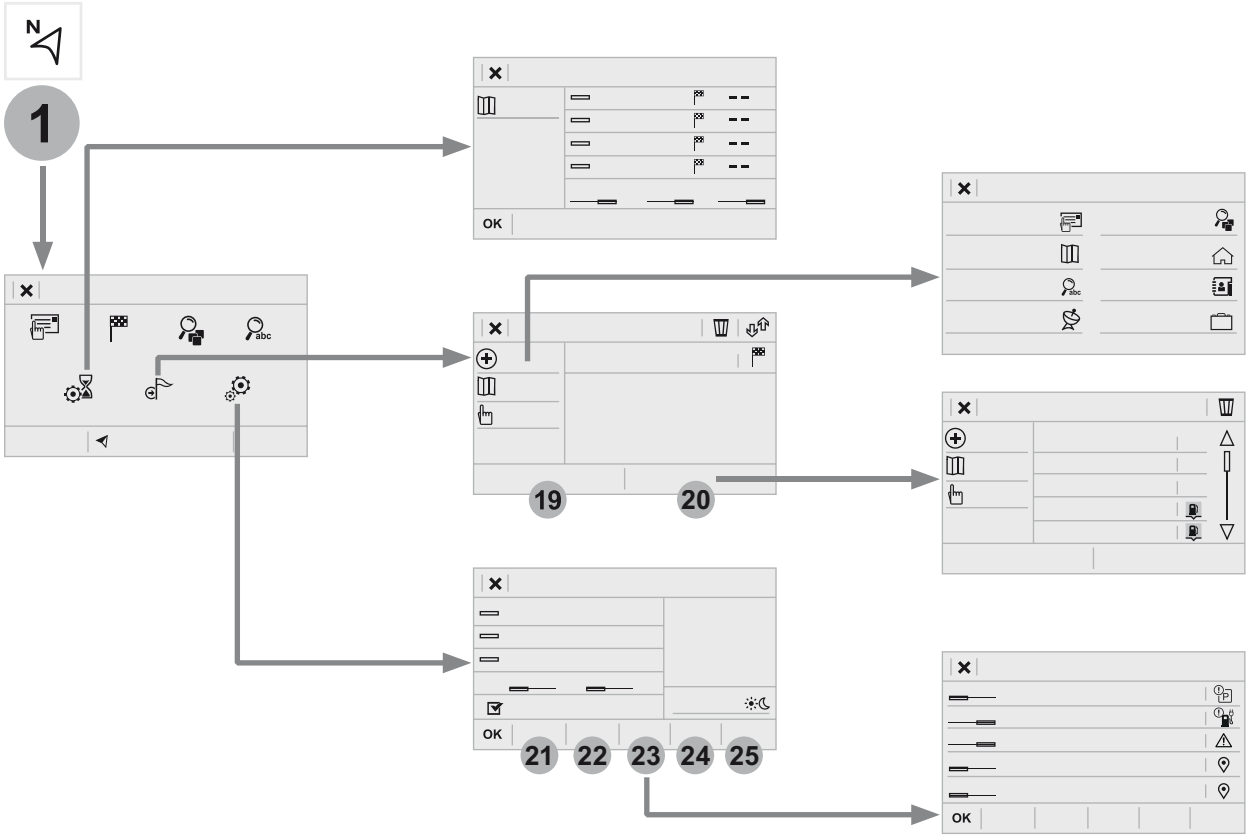
Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Traffic information sent in real time.
	Danger area				List of danger areas	Display the list of danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...).
	Select POI					Configure a category of POI to display.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Navigation → MENU → Enter address					Select the country.
						Save the current address.
		OK				Confirm the current address.
1	Navigation → MENU → My destinations	8	Recent			Display the lists of destinations and start navigation.
		9	Preferred		My home	
					My work	
		10	Contact			
						Delete one or more destinations.
1	Navigation → MENU → Points of interest	11	Travel			List of categories available. After selection of category, select the point of interest.
		12	Active life			
		13	Commercial			
		14	Public			
		15	Geographic			
			Search			Search for a point of interest.
1	Navigation → MENU → Search	16	Point of interest			Enter a point of interest.
		17	Address			Enter the address of a point of interest.
		18	Local / Connected			Enter settings for the POI search mode in a local or connected database depending on the services subscribed to.
		OK				Confirm the entry.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
1	Navigation → MENU → Guidance criteria		Fast			Select the guidance criteria (motorways, tolls and how traffic is taken into account).
			Short			
			Compromise			
			Ecological			
			See on map			Display the route selected using the criteria.
		OK				Save your selections.
1	Navigation → MENU → Routes / waypoints	19	Waypoints			Display the waypoints saved.
		20	Route			Display details of the route.
			Add waypoint		Add a waypoint	Add a waypoint from a list offered.
			Preview			Display the map.
			Finish			Press to calculate the route.
						Delete one or more waypoints.
						Move a waypoint in the list.
1	Navigation → MENU → Settings	21	Aspects			Enter choices and select the volume for the voice and stating the names of streets.
		22	Options			
		23	Alerts			
		24	Vocal			
		25	Mapping			
		OK				Save the selections adopted.

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.



Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And / Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

To use the navigation system, it is necessary to enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" using the virtual keypad, or to take them from the list of "**Contacts**" or from the "**History**" of addresses.

Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

Towards a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".



Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival geographically.

Towards "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a previously saved favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".



Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list offered to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.



Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

Towards a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed

i A long press on a point opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

Or



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

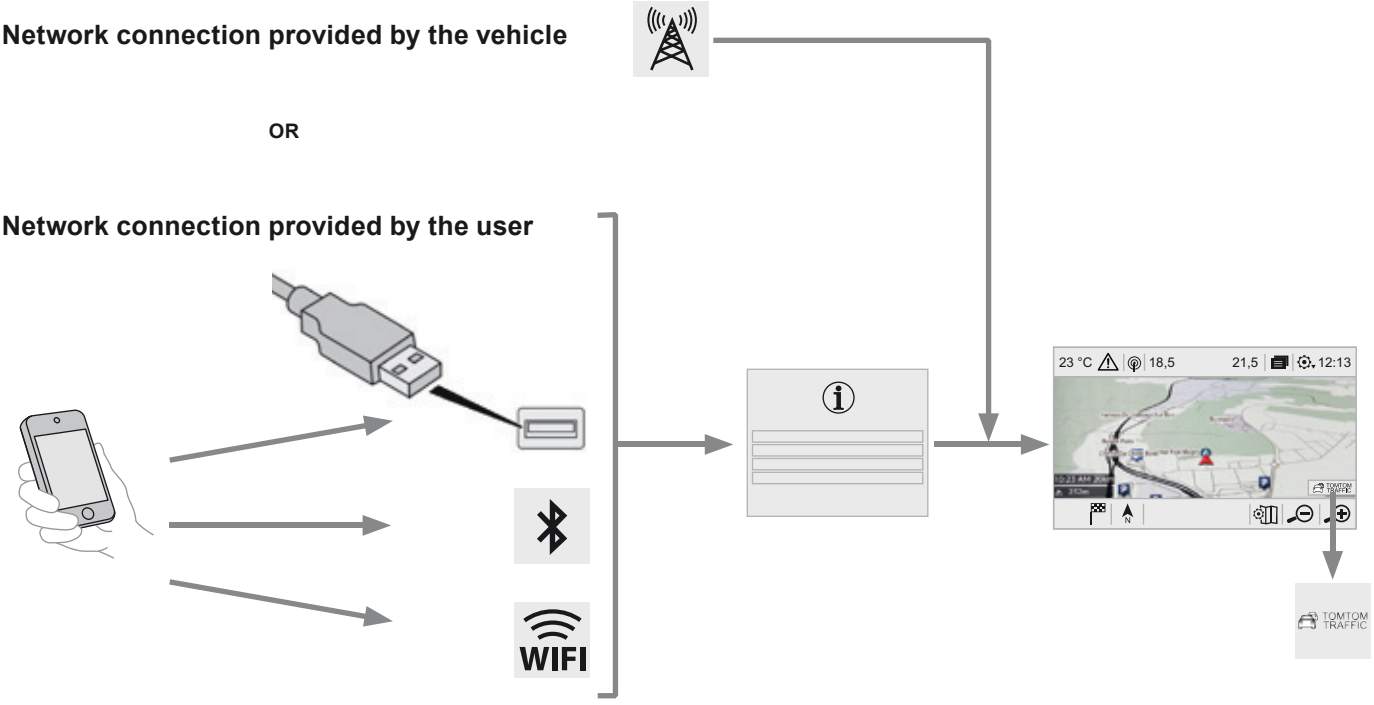
According to version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle

OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.
Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone is in charge mode when connected by USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi connection found by the system and connect to it (see the "Connect-App" section).

Restrictions of use:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

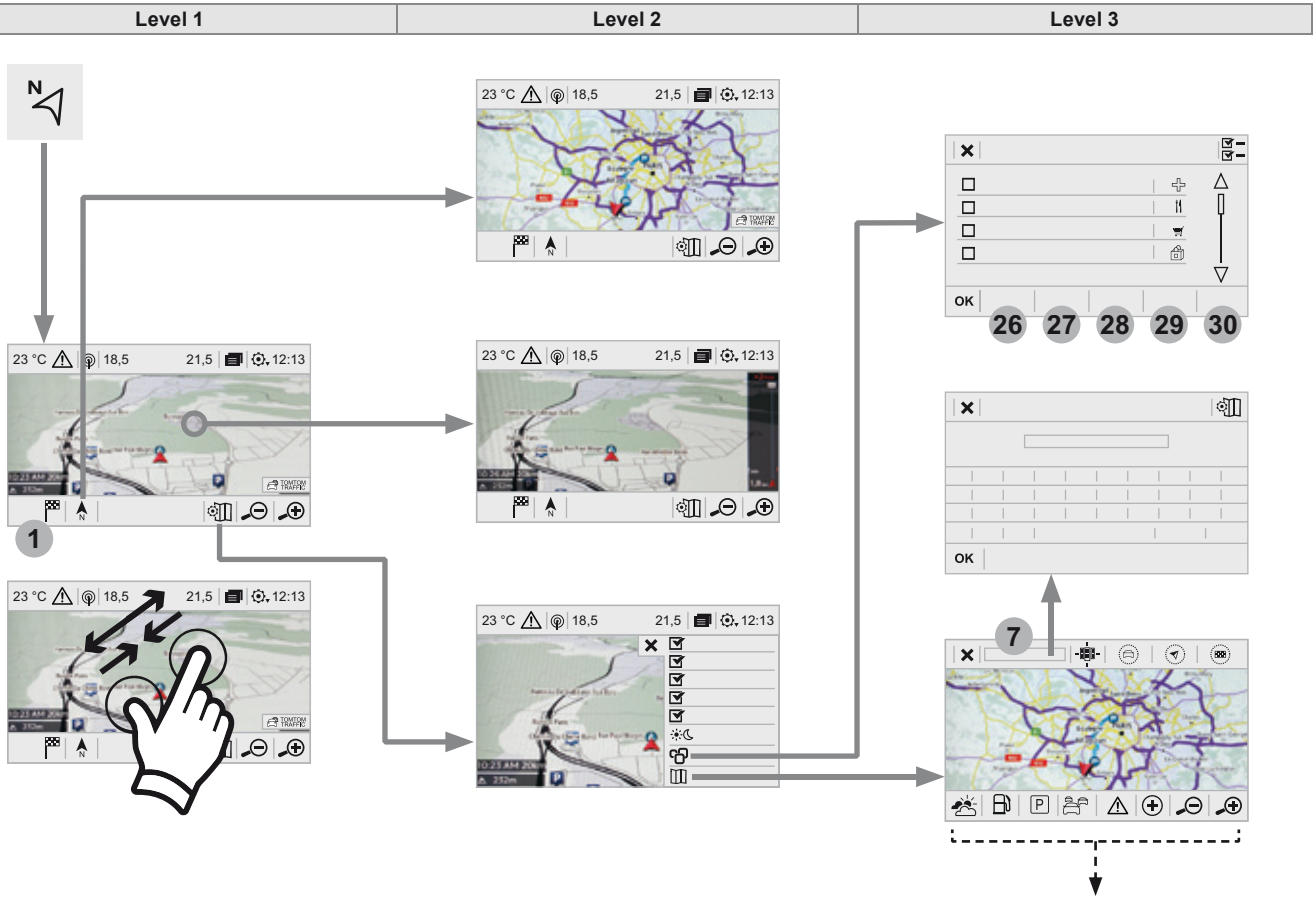


On the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

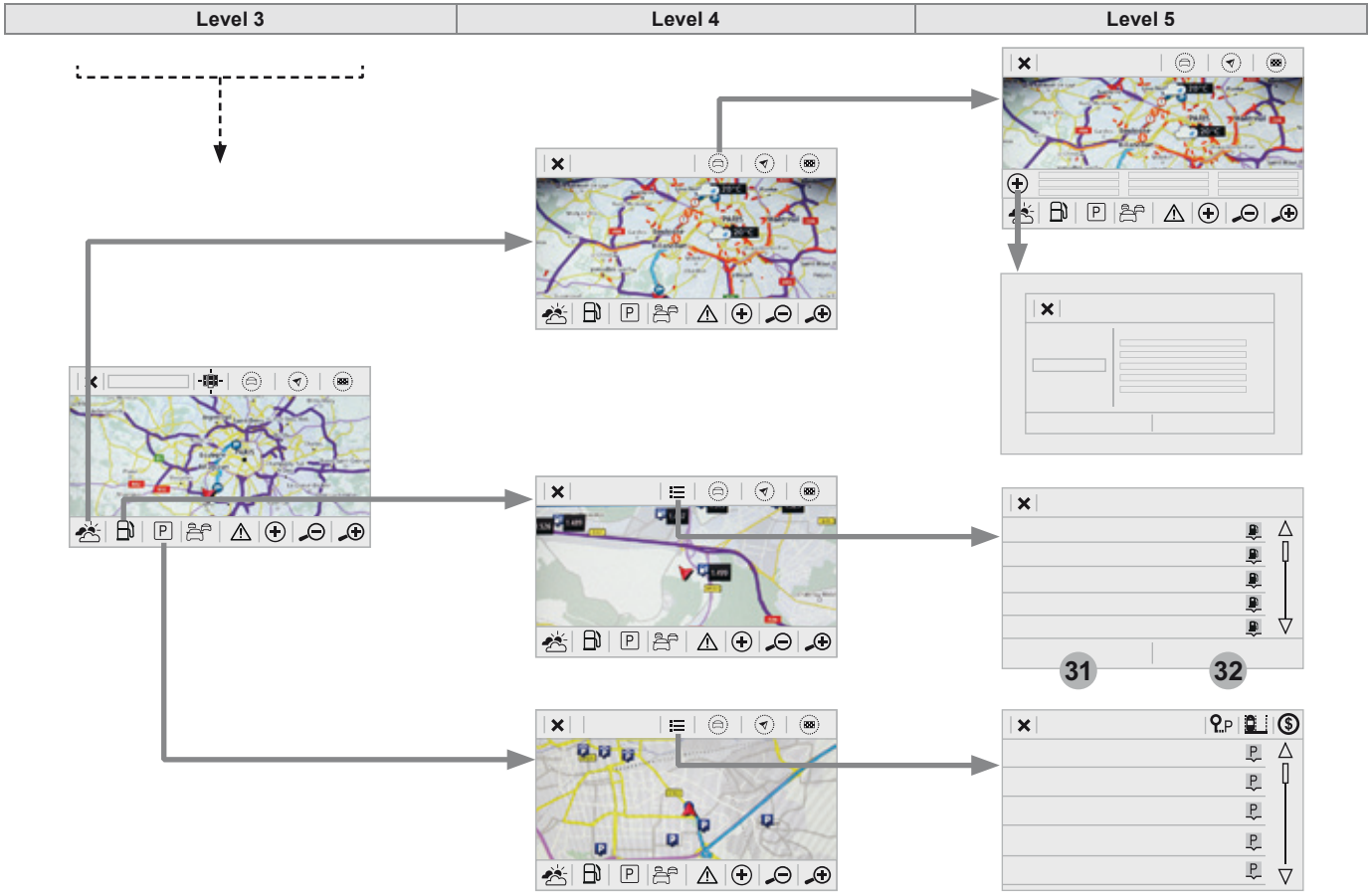
The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI, local search.

A Danger area pack (option).

The principles and standards are constantly changing. For communication between your smartphone and the system to operate correctly, we recommend that you **keep your smartphone's operating system up to date, and the time and date on your smartphone and the system correct**.

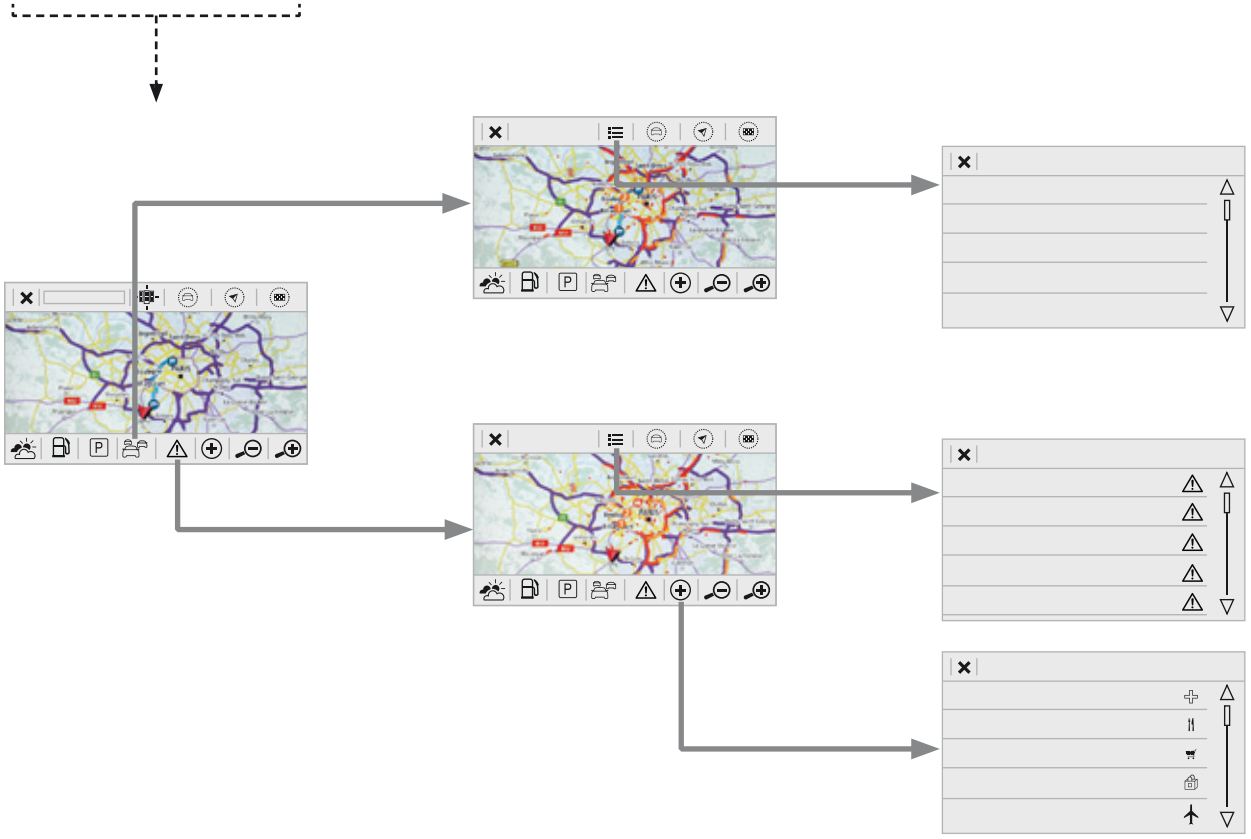

Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
N
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13
1
OK
26
27
28
29
30
7

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation					Select the orientation of the map; north up, vehicle direction up or perspective.
	Navigation → **TOMTOM TRAFFIC**					On connection of the system to a network, "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" is displayed instead of "TMC", for use of all of the options available, in real time.
	Navigation		**Weather**			Select the options. The map display the route chosen, depending on options.
			Stations			
			Car park			
			Traffic			
			Danger area			
			Map color			Select the display mode for the map.
			POI on map	26	Commercial	Select the POIs available.
				27	Geographic	
				28	Leisure	
				29	Public	
				30	Travel	
				OK		Save the options.
			View map	7	Modify city	Select or change a city.
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.


Level 3
Level 4
Level 5
31
32

Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Select city	OK				Select or change a city.
	Around the vehicle					Select or change a city.
	On the route					
	At the destination					
	Weather				**Weather information**	Display the weather forecast for the day or the following days.
	Filling stations				Filling stations around the vehicle	Display the list of filling stations and the associated information (address, prices, fuels, ...).
					Filling stations on the route	
					Filling stations at the destination	
				31	**By distance**	
				32	**By price**	
P	Car park				Car parks around the vehicle	Display the list of car parks and the associated information (address, distance, spaces available, price, ...).
					Car parks on the route	
					Car parks at the destination	
					Sort by distance	
					Sort by spaces	
					Sort by price	
						Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5



Level 3		Level 4		Level 5		Comments
	Traffic				Traffic observed	Display traffic information in real time: type, description and duration (in minutes).
	Danger areas				List of danger areas	Display danger areas (roadworks, breakdowns, accidents, ...) in real time.
	Points of interest		Points of interest		Select POI	Display the list of POIs for the location selected.

Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display the first level of information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the morning will be the maximum temperature for the day.
The temperature displayed at 6 o'clock in the evening will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Settings specific to connected navigation



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Options**".



Activate or deactivate:

- "**Allow declaration of danger areas**"
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**"
- "**Authorise sending information**"



Select "**Alerts**".



Activate or deactivate "**Warn of danger zones**".

For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: "**Authorise sending information**".

The display of danger zones is conditioned by the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger areas"

! To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger areas**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the "**Declare a new danger area**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen.



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger area".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger areas" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to view the version of the various modules installed in the system.



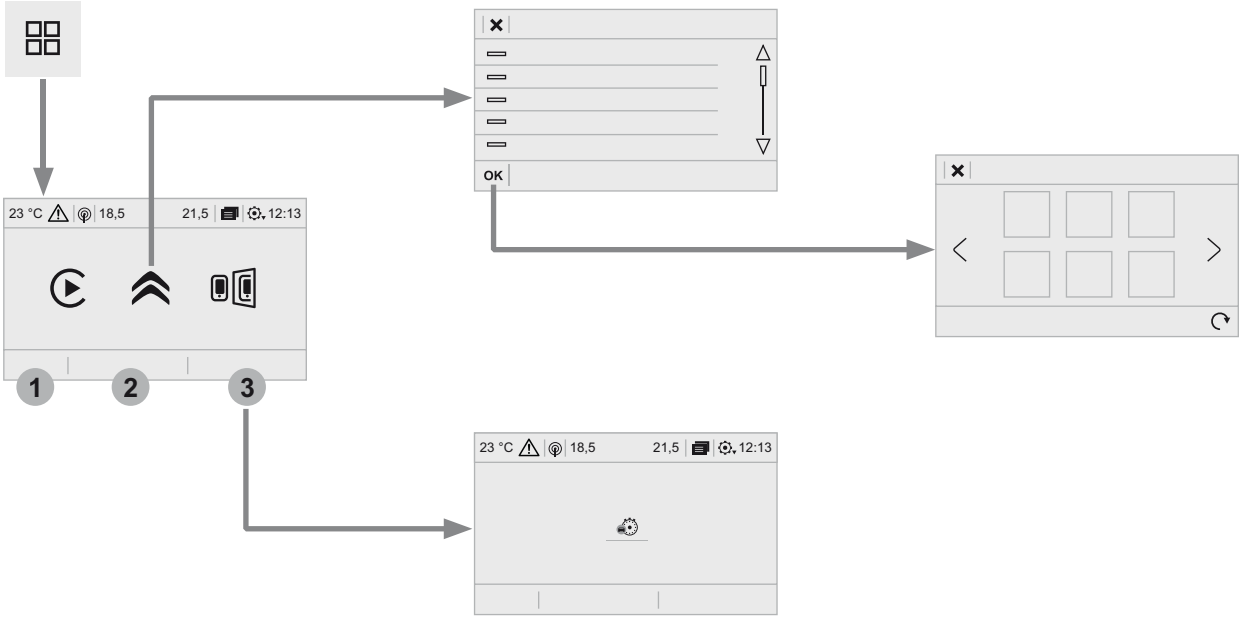
Select "**Update(s) due**".

i You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.
The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Applications

According to version / according to equipment

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

2

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.



Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

2

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**® or **MirrorLink**™ function.

Applications

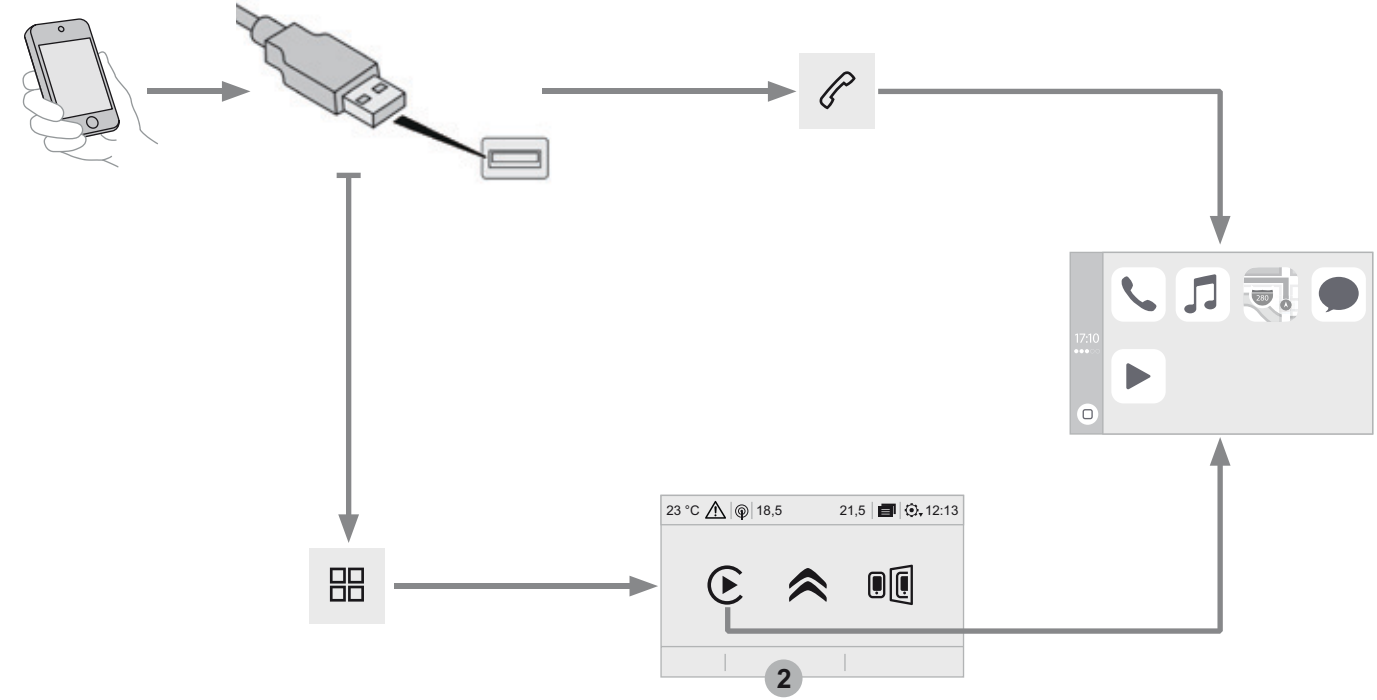


Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

3

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connecte d by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



In the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

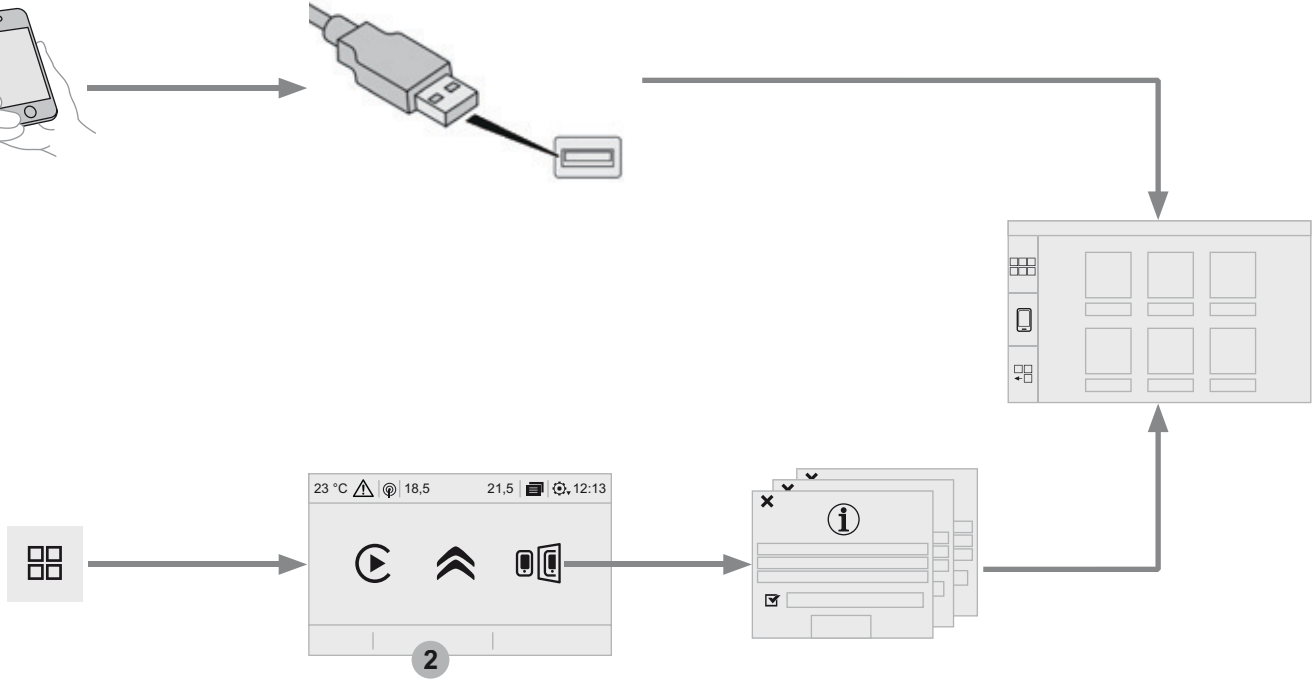
2 Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; **update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press on "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

2 Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the system's application.

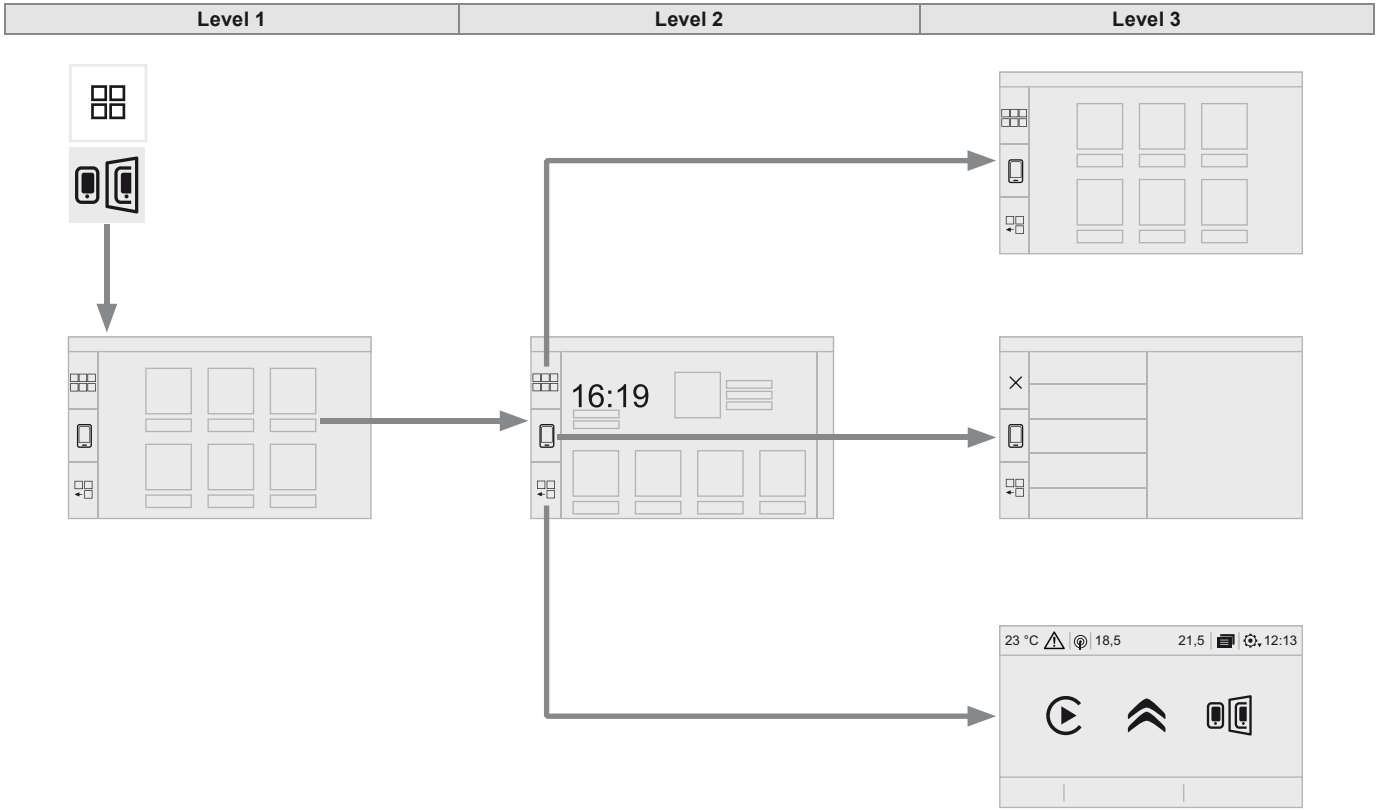
Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

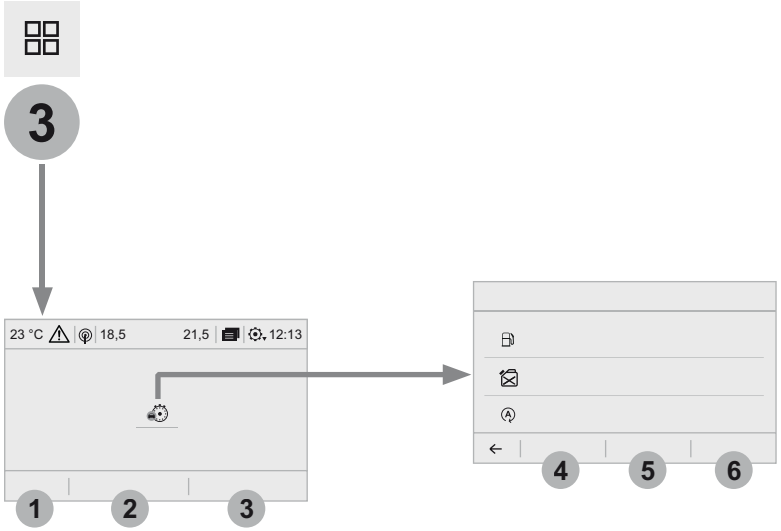
i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
16:19
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13

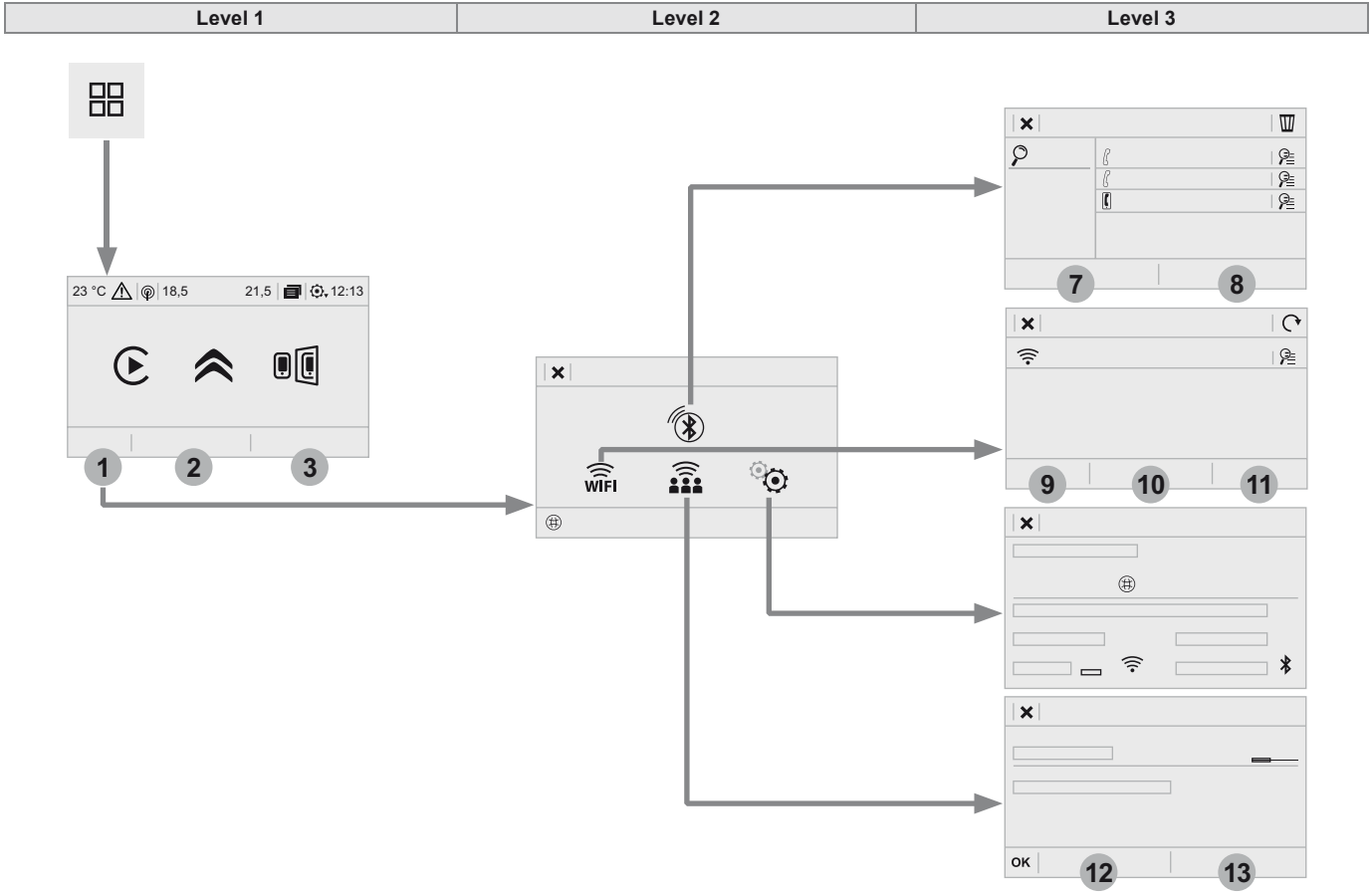
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
						Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
	**Applications** ↓ **MirrorLink™**					Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
						Go to the primary page of the "Applications" menu.

According to equipment

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications ↓ Trip computer	4	Instant	System providing information about the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).
		5	Trip 1	
		6	Trip 2	
		←		Back to the Applications page.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
23 °C
18,5
21,5
12:13
1
2
3
WIFI
7
8
9
10
11
OK
12
13

Level 2		Level 3		Comments
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Bluetooth connection		7	All	Display all telephones detected and saved.
		8	Connected	Display all telephones connected.
			Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Wi-Fi network connection		9	Secured	Display the secured Wi-Fi networks.
		10	Not secured	Display the not secured Wi-Fi networks.
		11	Stored	Display the stored Wi-Fi networks.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Manage connection				Display the status of the subscription to the connected services, the status of the network connection and the connection mode.
Applications → 1 → OPTIONS → Share Wi-Fi connection		12	Activation	Activate or deactivate the Wi-Fi connection sharing.
		13	Settings	Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.
		OK		Save the settings.

Bluetooth® connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press on "**Connect-App**" to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press on "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone Wi-Fi.

Press "**Connect-App**" to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

i The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Sharing the Wi-Fi connection

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

12 Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And / Or

13 Select the "**Settings**" to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect from any piracy and provide maximum security for your systems, it is recommended that you use a security code or a complex password.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

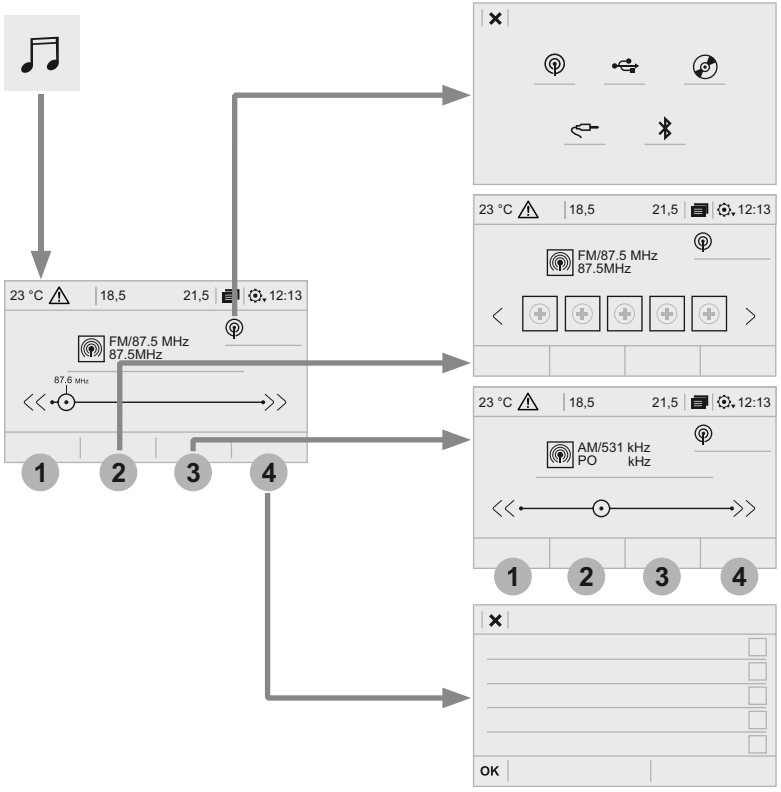
Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio Media

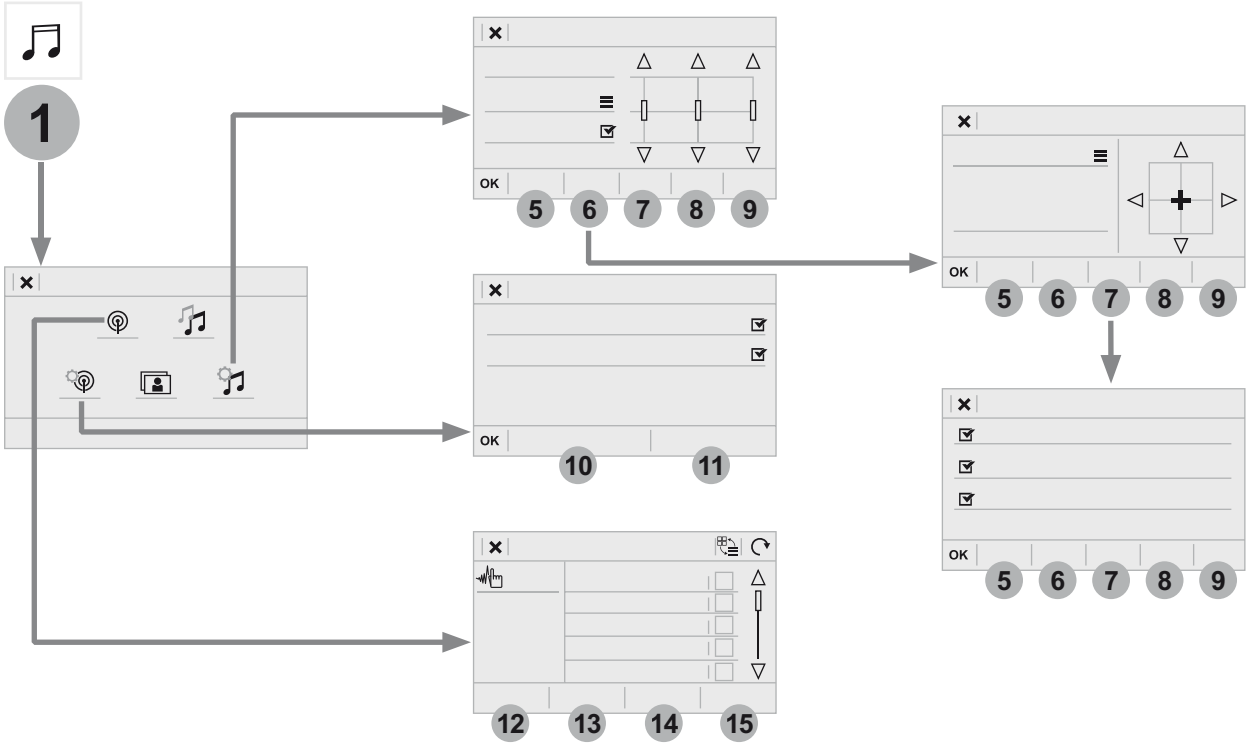
According to version

Level 1	Level 2



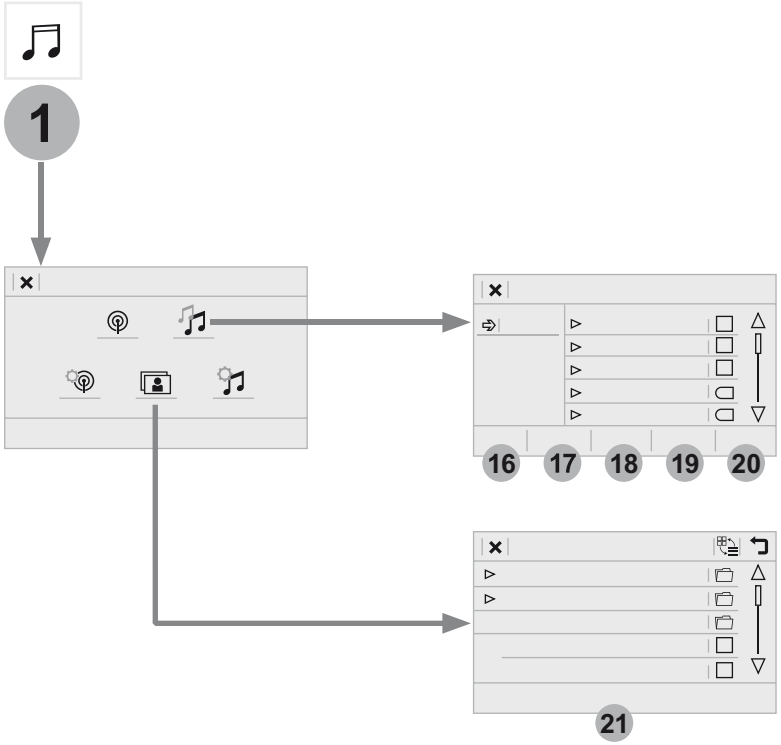
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
♫ /	Radio Media → Source		Radio	Select change of source.
			USB	
			iPod	
			CD	
			AUX	
			Bluetooth	
♫	Radio Media → Frequency / Presets		Frequency	Carry out an automatic or manual search for radio stations.
2			Presets	Make a long press on an empty location to preset a station.
♫	Radio Media → Band		FM	Press the Band button to change waveband.
3			DAB	
			AM	
♫	Radio Media → List		Radio stations	Open the list and press a radio station to select it.
4				

Level 2	Level 3

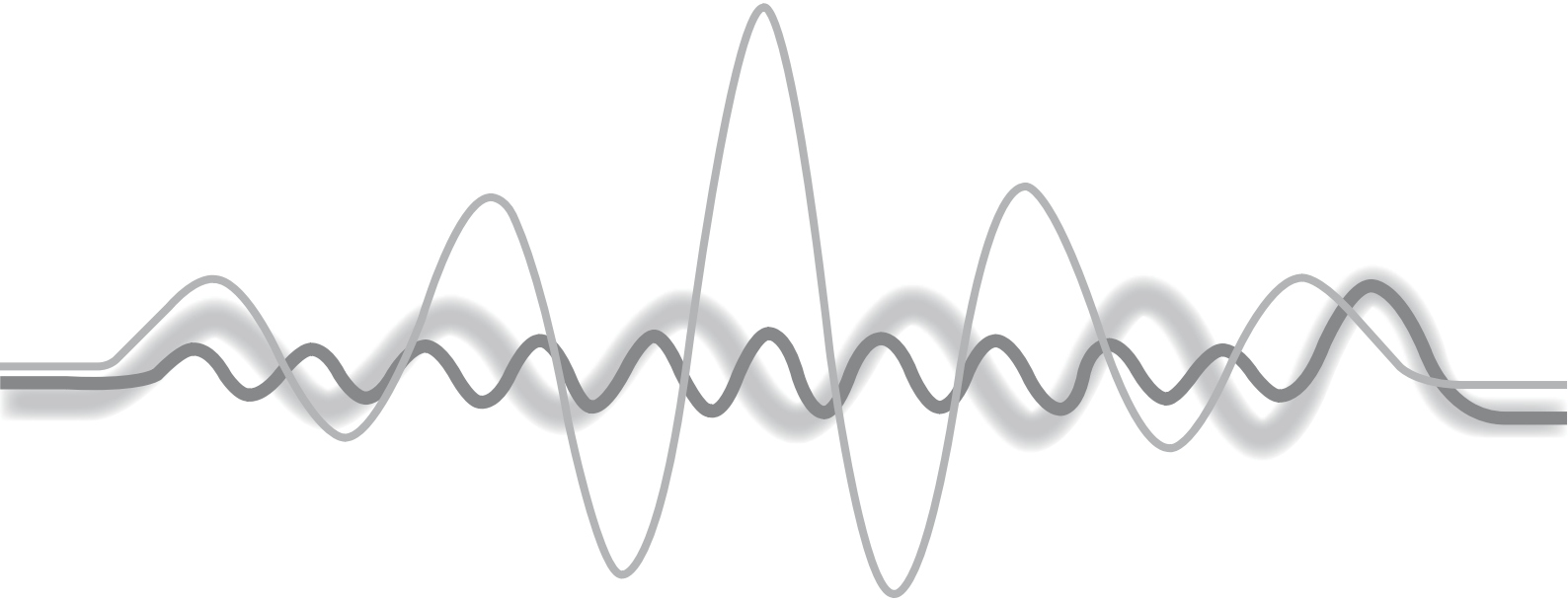


Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Audio settings	5	Ambience	Select the sound ambience.
		6	Distribution	Sound distribution by the Arkamys® system.
		7	Sound	Adjust the volume or activate volume linked to speed.
		8	Voice	Adjust the voice volume.
		9	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		Save settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Radio settings	10	General	Activate or deactivate settings.
		11	Announcements	
		OK		Save settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Radio stations	12	FM	Display the list of radio stations for the band selected.
		13	DAB	
		14	AM	
		15	Presets	Select a preset radio station.
			Frequency	Enter a frequency manually.
				Change the screen display mode.
				Update the list according to reception.

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1 ♫	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Music files	16	Albums	Choose a selection mode.
		17	Artists	
		18	Genres	
		19	Playlists	
		20	Folders	
♫ 1	Radio Media → OPTIONS → Managing photos	21	USB	Display photos. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .jpeg, .bmp, .png, .raw and .tiff with a maximum file size of 10 Mb per image.



Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.

2 Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

2 Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode.
This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

2 Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".



Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station, relating to the station or the song playing, to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".



Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Display radio text**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.


Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.


Select the audio source.

3 Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).


Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.


Select "**Radio settings**".

10 Select "**General**".


Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

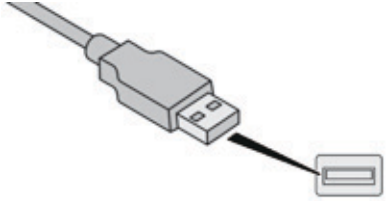
OK Press "**OK**".

i If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



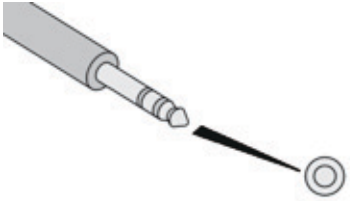
Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary (AUX) socket

(depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on equipment)
Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

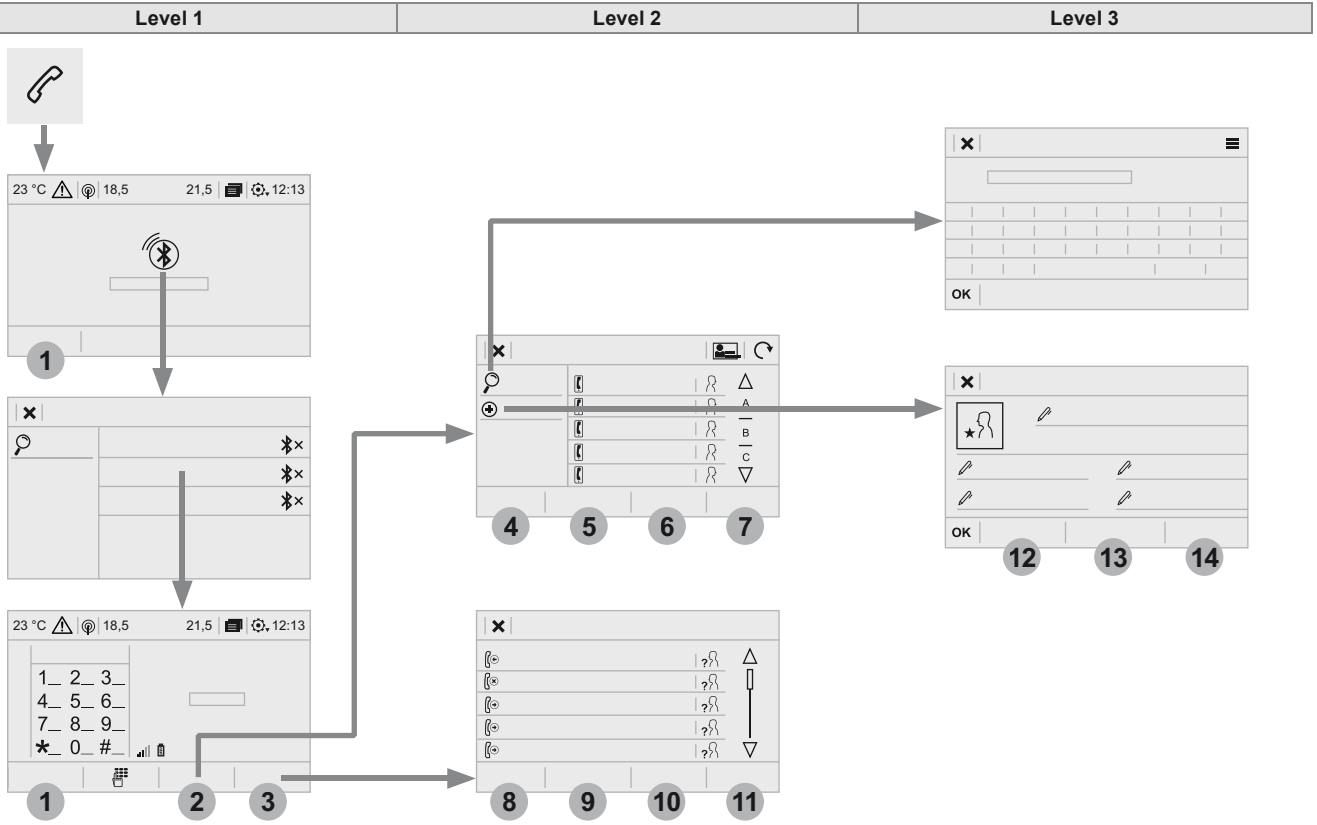
Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, when burning it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for the best sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

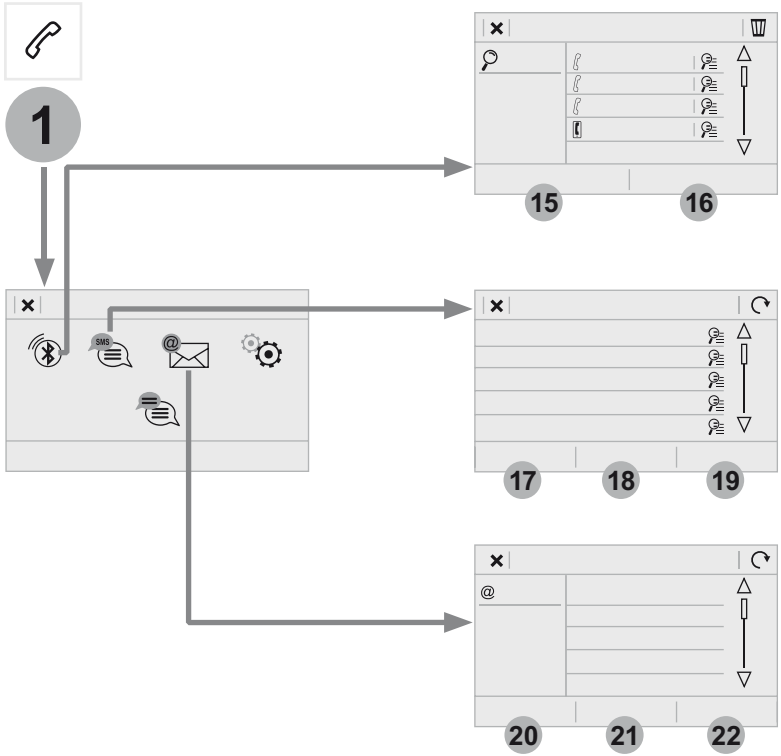
Telephone

According to version



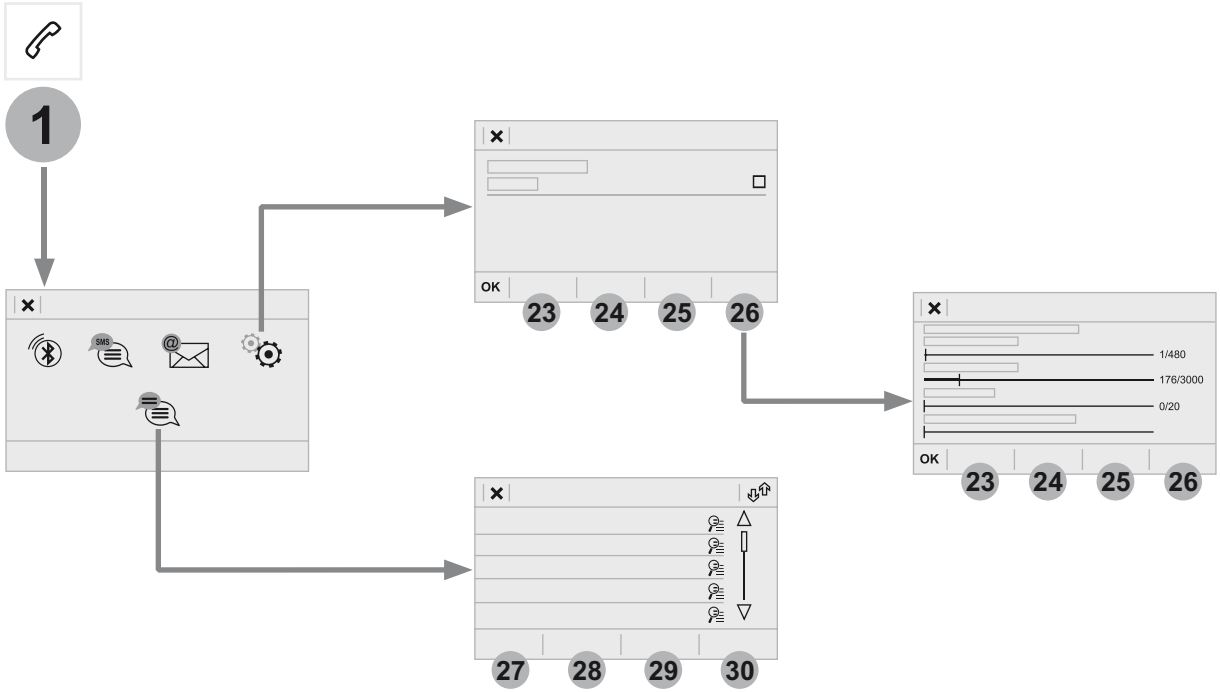
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
2	Telephone → Bluetooth → Contact	4	All			View contacts according to presentation choices. Select a contact or a favourite saved in the system via the profile selected to start the call.
		5	Telephone			
		6	Address			
		7	Favourites			
						Sort the contacts by Surname-First name or First name-Surname.
						Update the contacts from the telephone.
			Search	OK		Search for a contact in the directory.
			Create	12	Telephone	Create a new contact in the system.
				13	Address	
				14	Email	
				OK		
3	Telephone → Bluetooth → Calls	8	All			View calls according to choice of presentation. Select a contact to start the call.
		9	Incoming			
		10	Outgoing			
		11	Missed			
		?				View details for the contact.

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
1	Telephone → OPTIONS → Bluetooth connection	15	All	Display all telephones detected and saved.
		16	Connected	Display all connected telephones.
			Search	Start the search for a device to connect.
1	Telephone → OPTIONS → Messages	17	All	Display messages according to the choice made.
		18	Received	
		19	Sent	
1	Telephone → OPTIONS → Email	20	Received	Display emails according to the choice made.
		21	Sent	
		22	Not read	
		@	Mailbox	

Level 2	Level 3



Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → OPTIONS → Settings	23	Security	Make driving safe.
		24	Voicemail	Enter and save the number for the telephone voicemail.
		25	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		26	Statistics	Display data for the telephone connected.
		OK		Save the options.
	Telephone → OPTIONS → Quick messages	27	Delayed	Select a quick message from the categories, as required.
		28	My arrival	
		29	Not available	
		30	Other	

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with theBluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **Telephone** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **Streaming** (wireless play of audio files on the telephone),
- **Mobile internet data**.

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, having first activated sharing of the connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts / entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

2 Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

12 In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

13 In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

14 In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

! The access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Received**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the email chosen in the list.



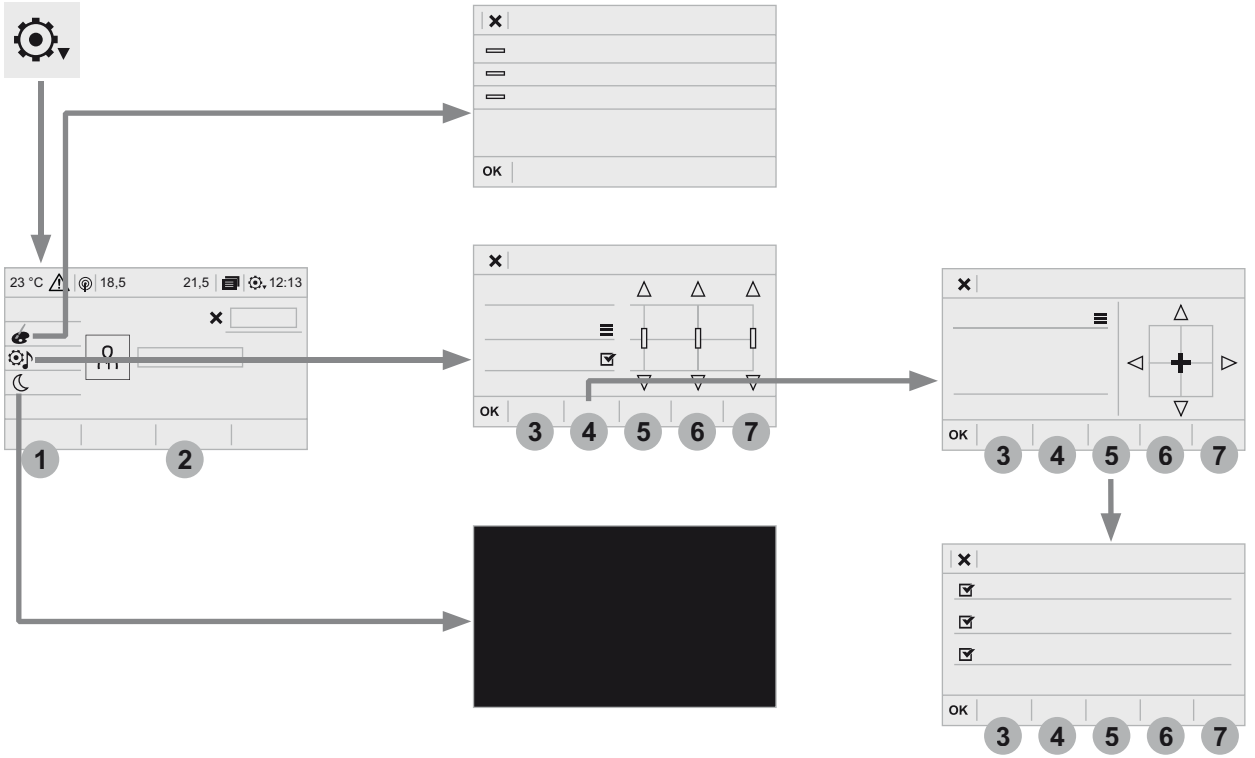
Press "**Play**" to start playing the email.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

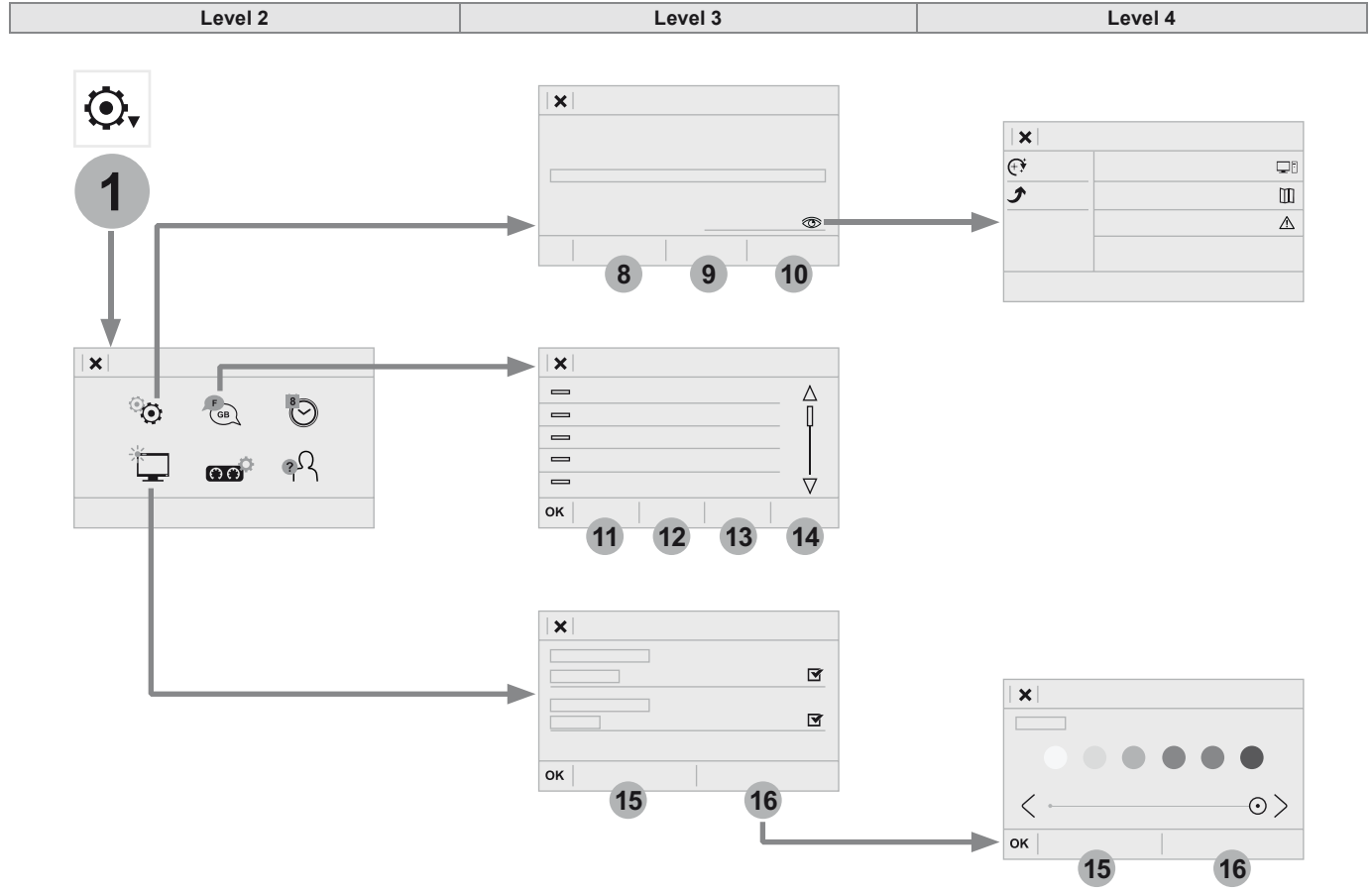
Settings

According to version

Level 1	Level 2

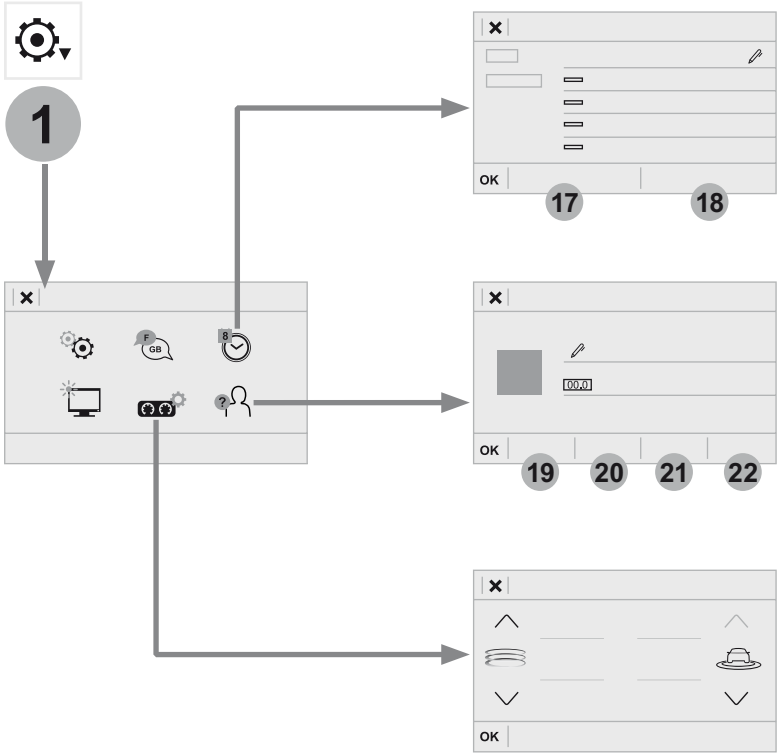


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → Color schemes		Color schemes: 1,2,3, ...	Having chosen the color scheme, save the setting.
		OK		
	Settings → Audio settings	3	Ambience	Select the sound ambience.
		4	Distribution	Sound distribution by the Arkamys© system.
		5	Sound	Adjust the volume or activate linked to speed.
		6	Voice	Adjust the voice volume.
		7	Ringtone	Adjust the ringtone volume.
		OK		Save the settings.
	Settings → Turn off screen	■		Function allowing the display to be switched off. Pressing the screen reactivates it.
2	Settings → Profile (1, 2, 3)			Activate the profile selected.


Level 2
Level 3
Level 4
1
8
9
10
OK
11
12
13
14
OK
15
16
OK
15
16

Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
  	Settings → OPTIONS → System settings	8	Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Set the units used for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
					Temperature	
		9	Factory settings		Reinitialize	Restore the factory settings.
		10	System info		View	View the versions of the different modules (system, mapping, risk areas) installed in the system as well as the updates available.
		OK				Save the settings.
  	Settings → OPTIONS → Languages	11	All			Select the language then confirm.
		12	Europe			
		13	Asia			
		14	America			
		OK				Having selected the language, save the setting.
  	Settings → OPTIONS → Screen configuration	15	Animation			Activate or deactivate settings.
		16	Brightness			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.
		OK				Save the settings.

Level 2	Level 3	Level 4



Level 2		Level 3		Level 4		Comments
	Settings → OPTIONS → Setting the time-date	17	Date		Date	Enter the date and select the date format.
					Date format:	
		18	Time		Time	Set the time.
					Time Zone	Define the time zone.
					Time format:	Select the time format: 12h / 24h.
					Synchronisation with GPS (UTC):	Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites.
		OK				Save the settings.
	Settings → OPTIONS → Setting of the profiles	19	Profile 1			Enter settings for the profiles.
		20	Profile 2			
		21	Profile 3			
		22	Common profile			
		OK				Save the settings.
	Settings → OPTIONS → Driver screen configuration		Personalisation of the dashboard			Choose and select the display information required on the dashboard.
		OK				Confirm the selections.

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

3

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

4

" **Position**".

Or

5

" **Sound**".

Or

6

" **Voice**".

Or

7

" **Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The audio **Ambience** settings (6 ambiences available) as well as the **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** settings are different and independent for each sound source.
Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**".

The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.

Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

19

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.
Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system deforms the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

2

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

3

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

4

"**Distribution**".

Or

5

"**Sound**".

Or

6

"**Voice**".

Or

7

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

15

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate "**Automatic scrolling**".

16

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

8

Select "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

9

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

10

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

17 Select "**Date**".

Press this button to define the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

18 Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with the satellites (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Color schemes

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a color scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the color scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger areas" does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings (without the possibility of adjusting the volume) in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger area" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the "Danger area". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player does not recognise.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
	The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...).	
	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble, Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

CITROËN Connect Radio

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	96
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	98
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	99
Menus	100
Applications	102
Radio Media	106
Telephone	118
Settings	132
Frequently asked questions	143

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
http://www.psa-peugeot-citroen.com/oss

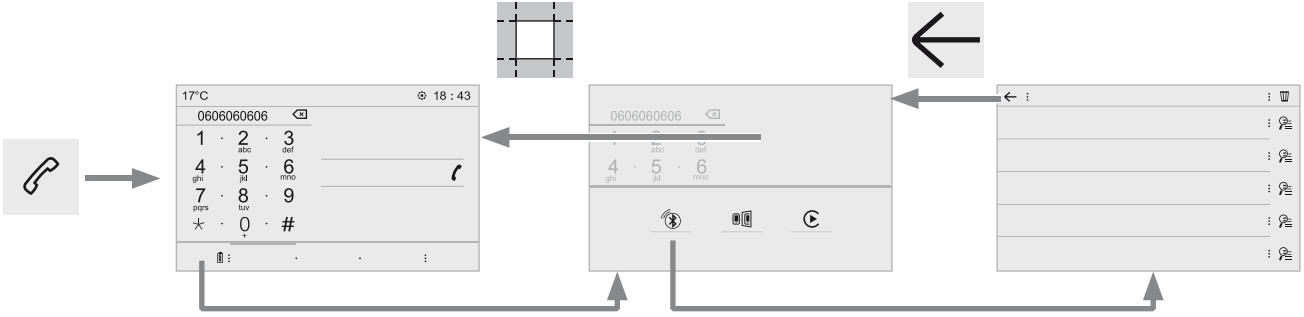
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.



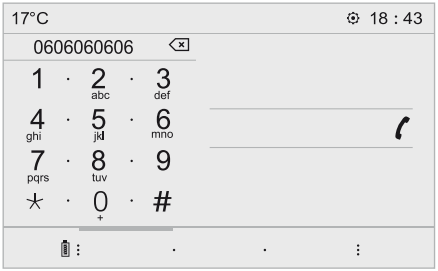
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

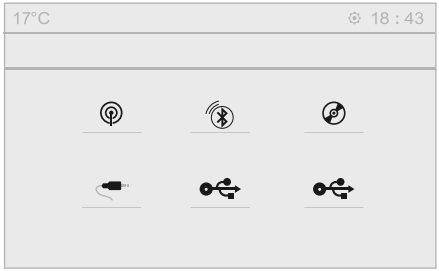
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* stations.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and using Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- CD player.
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (Jack, cable not supplied).

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.





In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select of the previous / next track
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.



Change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming)



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2



Voice commands:
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/ Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Radio (rotate): previous / next preset.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; other than selection, access to presets.



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): call.



Call in progress (short press): access to telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call, access to telephone menu.

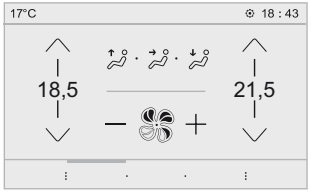


Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

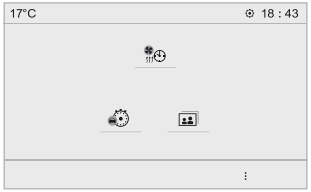
According to version.

Air conditioning



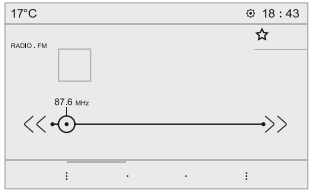
Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.

Applications



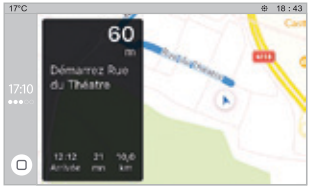
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



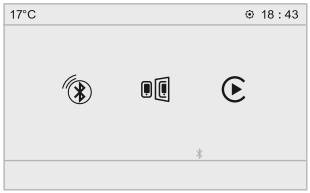
Select an audio source or radio station.

Navigation



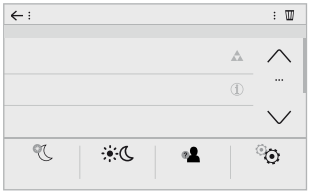
Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

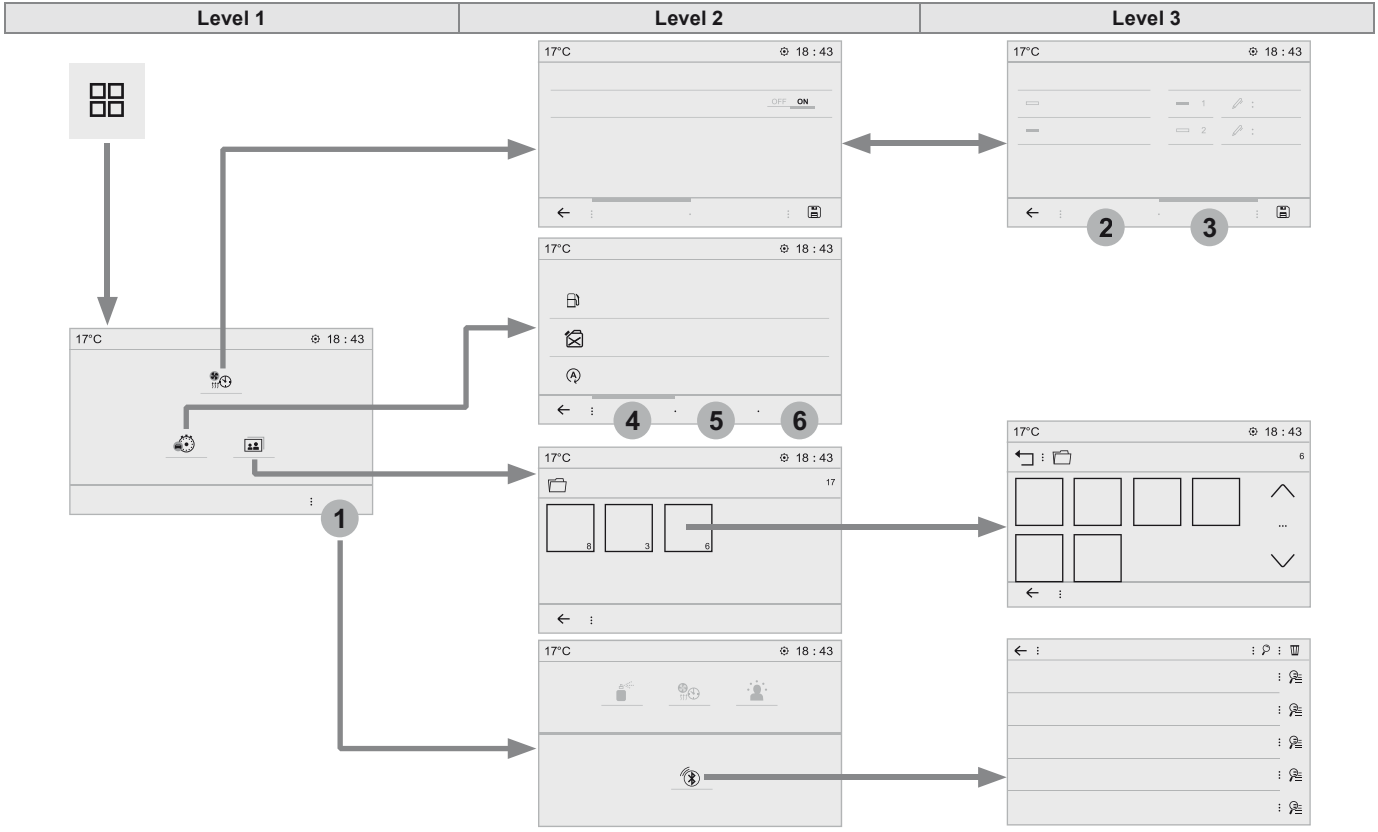
Driving



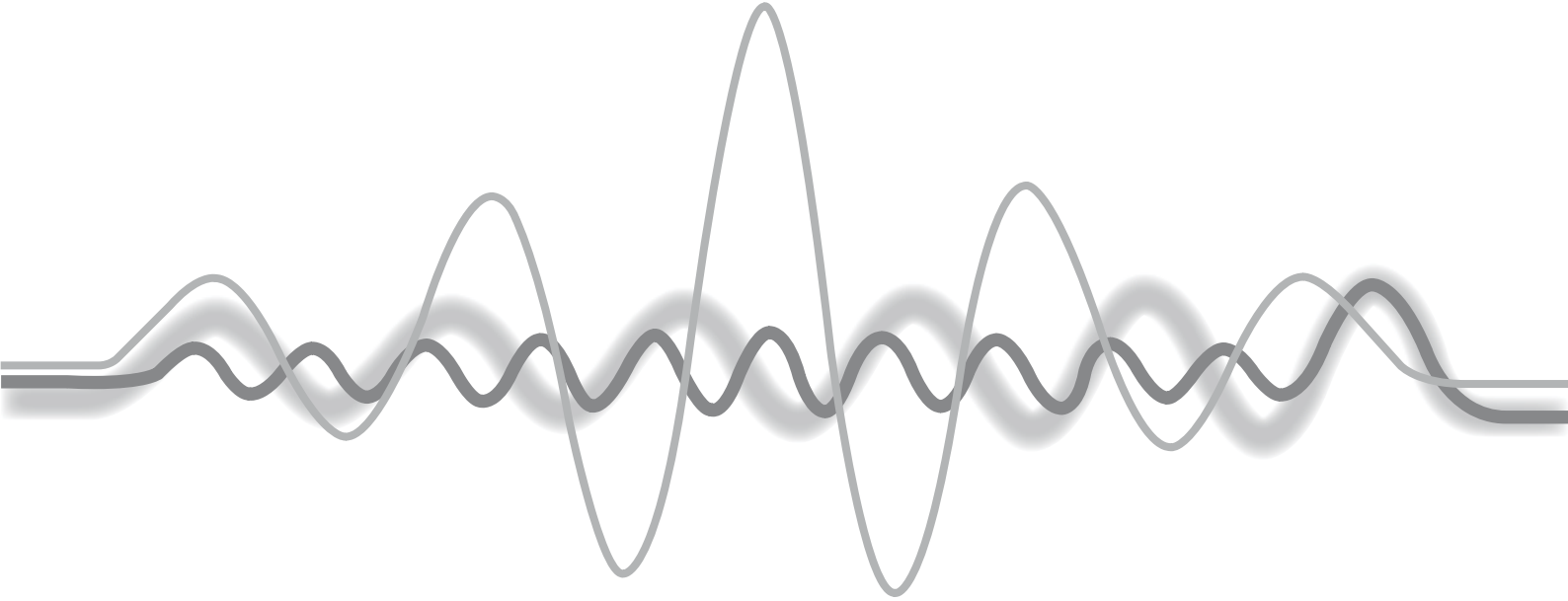
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Applications

According to version / according to equipment



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Applications → Temperature conditioning	2	State			Activate / deactivate the temperature conditioning.
		3	Settings			Configure the pre-conditioning.
						Save the parameters.
		←				Confirm the settings.
	Applications → Trip computer	4	Instant			System providing information about the current journey (range, consumption…).
		5	Trip 1			
		6	Trip 2			
		←				Go back to the Applications page.
	Applications → Photos		Photo gallery		Photos	Go to the photo gallery.
				↰		Go back a level.
	Applications → OPTIONS		Bluetooth connection		Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
1					Delete	Delete one or more devices.



Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.

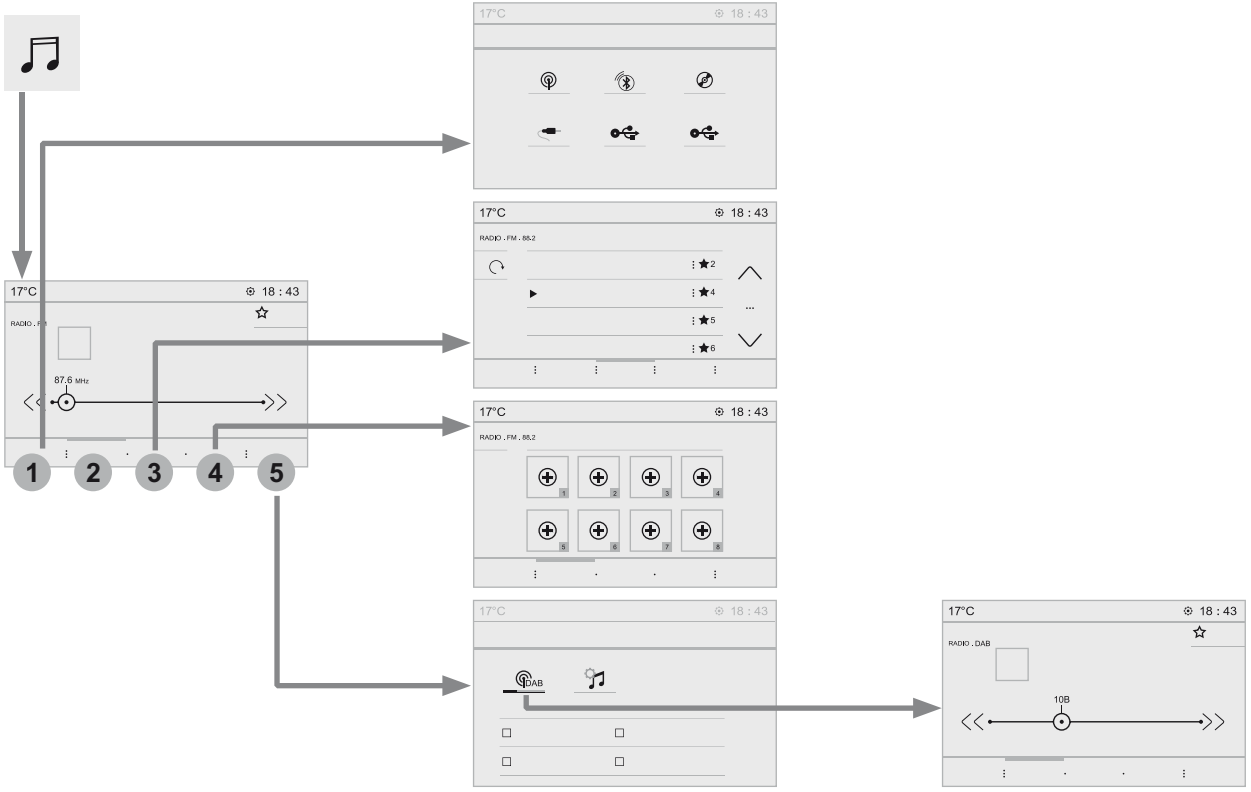


Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Radio Media

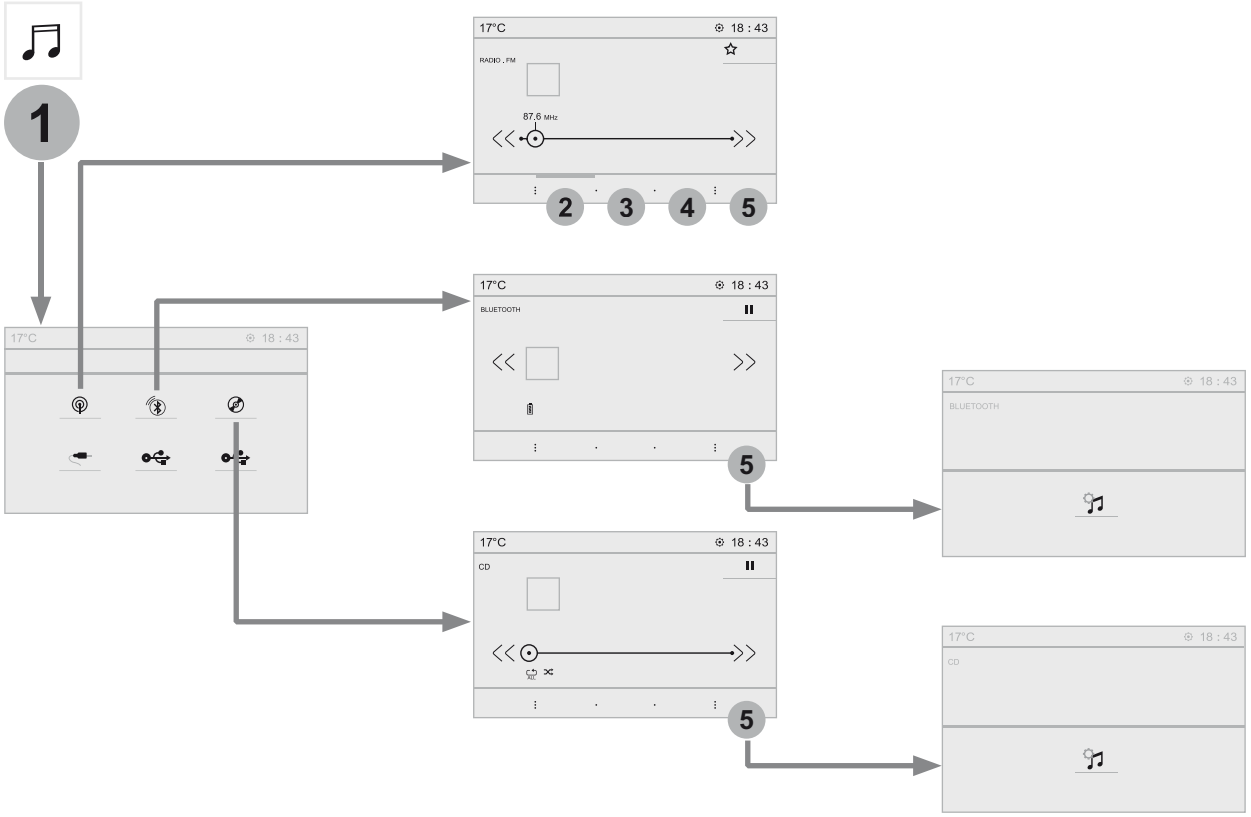
According to version

Level 1	Level 2



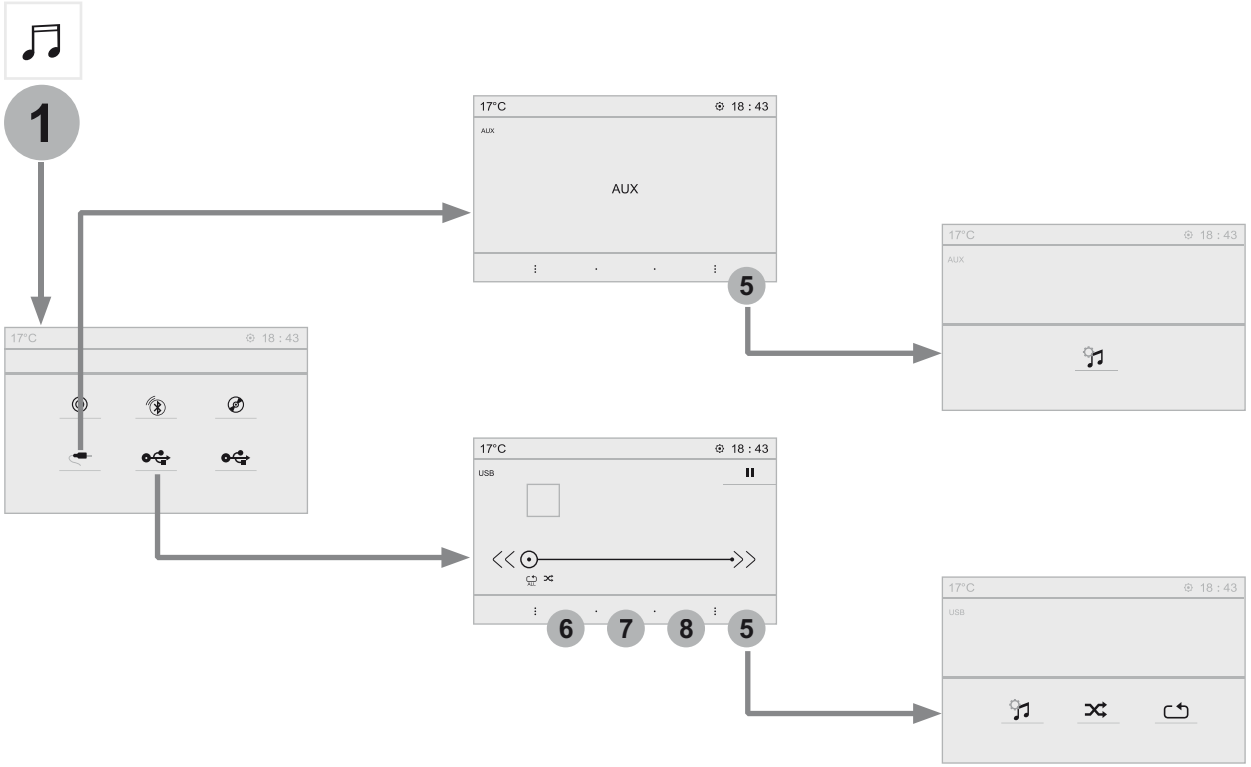
Level 1		Level 2		Comments
1	Radio Media → SOURCES		Radio	Select change of source.
			Bluetooth	
			CD	
			AUX	
			USB	
			iPod	
2	Radio Media → Frequency		FM / DAB / AM	Display the current radio station.
3	Radio Media → List			Update the list according to the stations received.
			Preset	Make a short press to preset the station.
4	Radio Media → Preset			Select a preset station or preset a station.
5	Radio Media → OPTIONS		AM band / DAB band / FM band	Press the Band button to change waveband.
			Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
			News	Activate or deactivate the options.
			TA	
			RDS	
			FM-DAB Follow-up	
MHz KHz	Radio Media → 87.5 MHz			Enter a frequency of the FM and AM bands on the virtual keypad.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → Radio	2	Frequency			Display the current radio station.
		3	List			Display the list of stations received.
		4	Preset			Select a preset station or preset a station.
		5	OPTIONS	FM	FM band / DAB band / AM band	Press the band button to change band.
					Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
				☑	News	Activate or deactivate the options.
				☑	TA	
				☑	RDS	
				☑	FM-DAB Follow-up	
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → Bluetooth	5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → CD					Display the details of the music being played.
		5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → AUX	5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.
♫ 1	Radio Media → SOURCES → USB	6	Player			Display the details of the music being played.
		7	Tracks list			Display the current selection.
		8	Library			Display the music library.
		5	OPTIONS		Audio settings	Configure the audio settings.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the menu.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

> **!** Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.



Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**NEWS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TAalert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" **or** "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

On the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.

On the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

On the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".



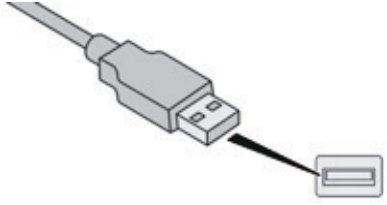
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

If the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

1 Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth Streaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your telephone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated. First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav, .wma, .aac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

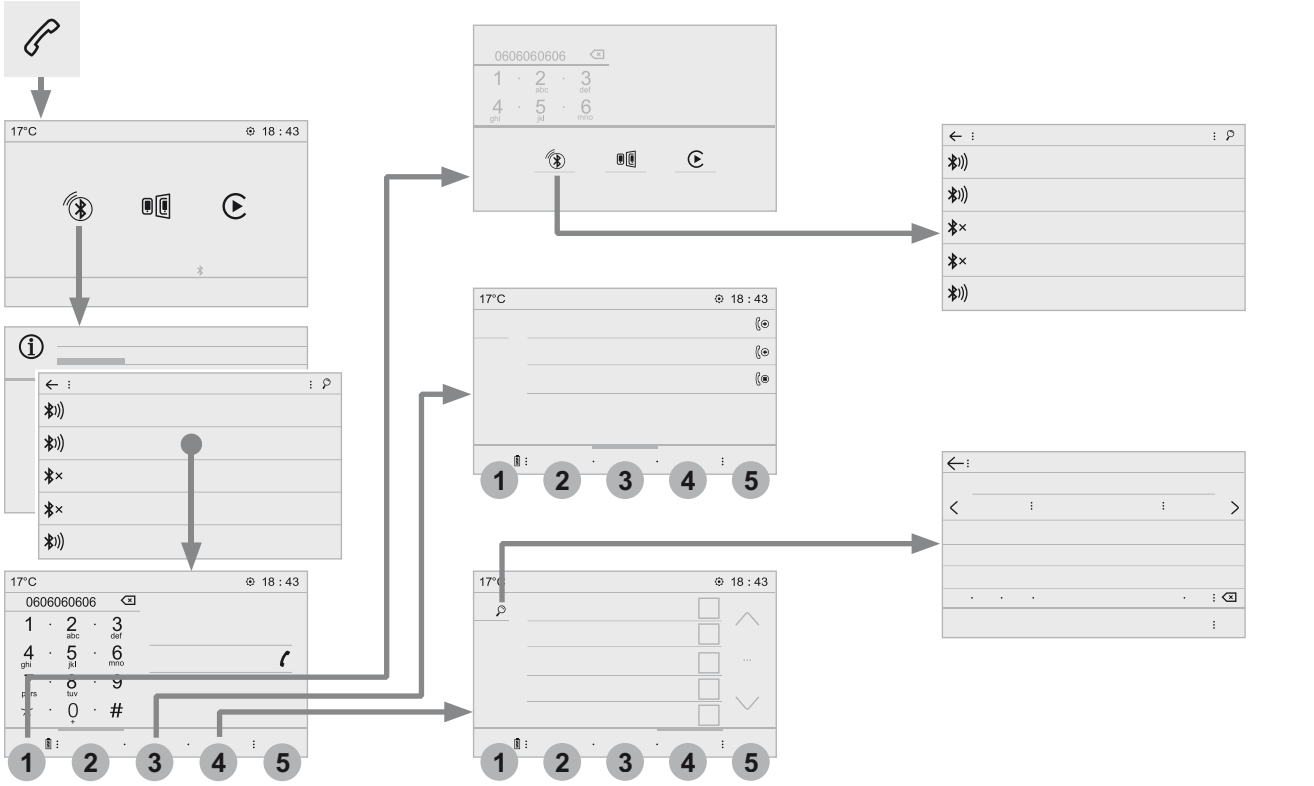
It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

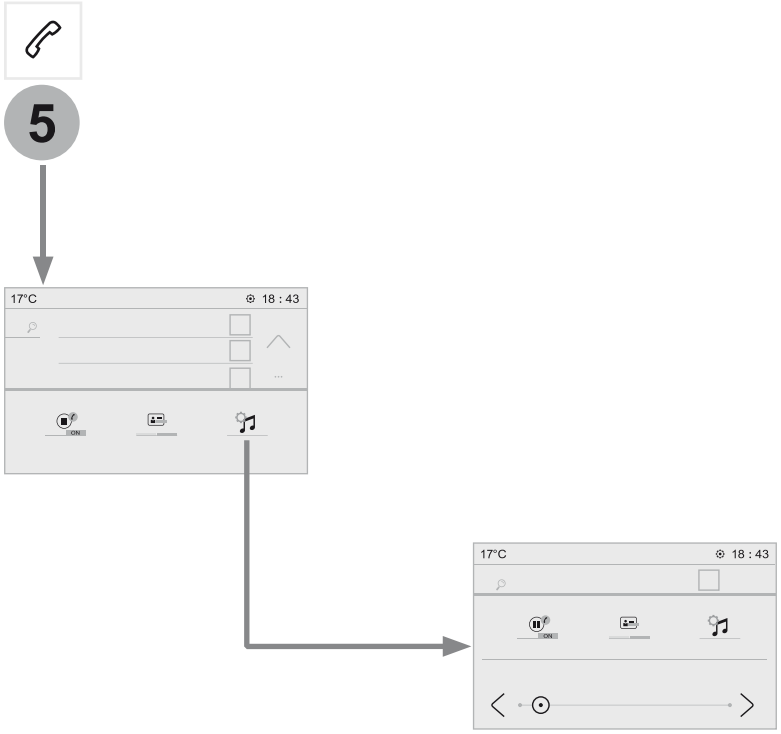
According to version

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



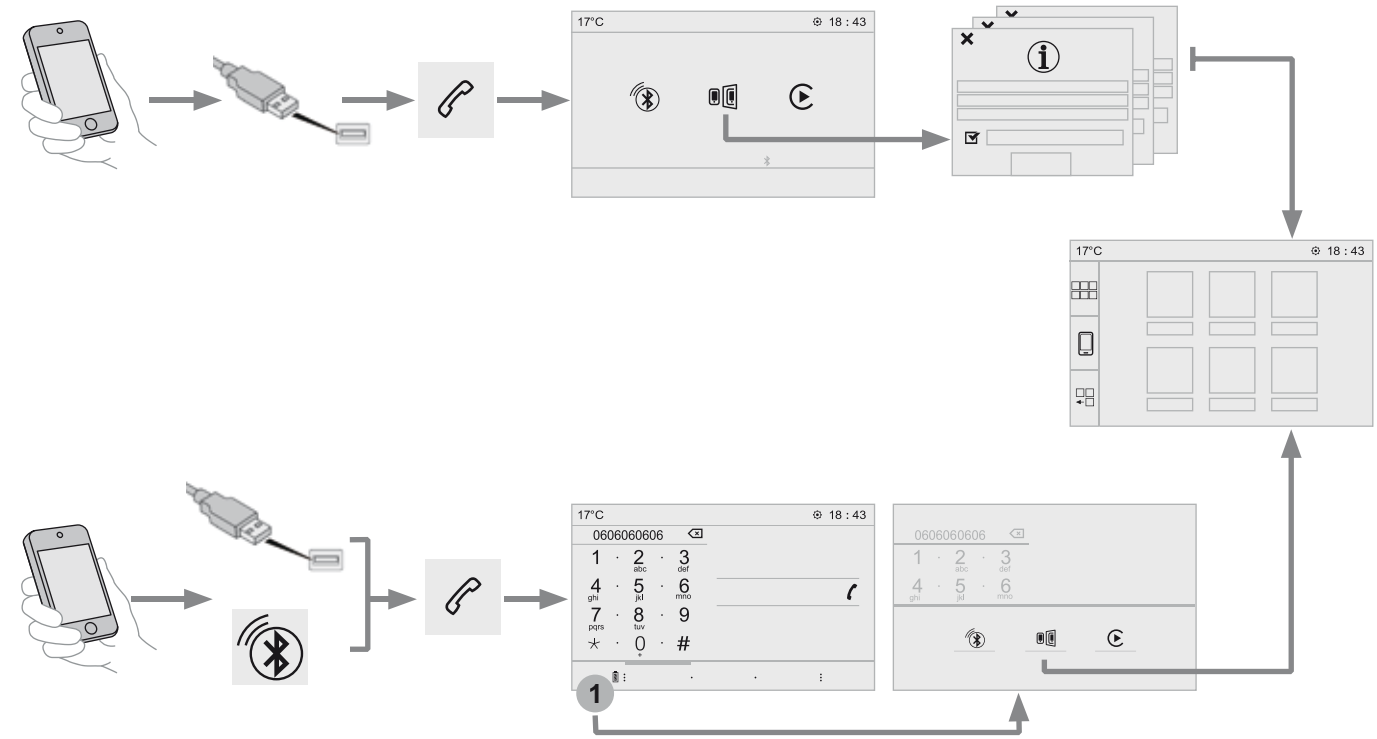
Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
1	Telephone → Bluetooth search → PHONE		Bluetooth connection		Search	Start the search for a device to be connected.
					Delete	Delete one or more devices.
			MirrorLink			Open the MirrorLink function.
			CarPlay			Open the CarPlay function.
2	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Keypad					Enter a telephone number.
3	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Recent calls		All			View the calls according to the presentation selected. Select a contact to make the call.
			Outgoing			
			Missed			
			Incoming			
4	Telephone → Bluetooth search → Contacts		Search		Confirm	Search for a contact in the contacts directory.
			Telephone			Go to the details of the contact sheet.

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ On hold (auto)		ON - OFF	Activate or deactivate the automatic placing on hold of the current conversation.
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Sort contacts by name Sort contacts by first name			Sort the contacts by Surname-first name or First name-surname.
5	Telephone ↓ OPTIONS ↓ Ring volume			Adjust the volume of the ringtone.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; **update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that "Bluetooth"® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

1

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

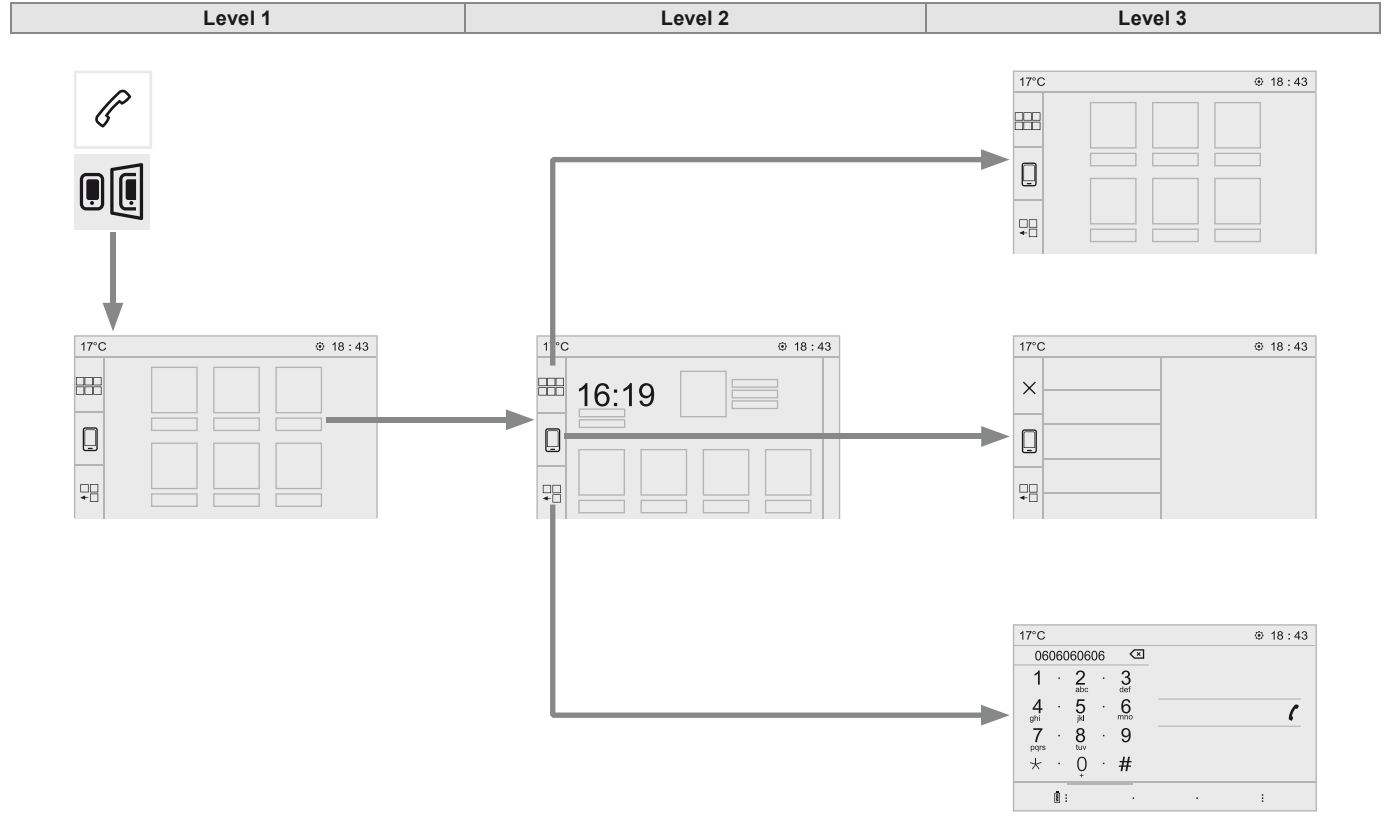


Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.

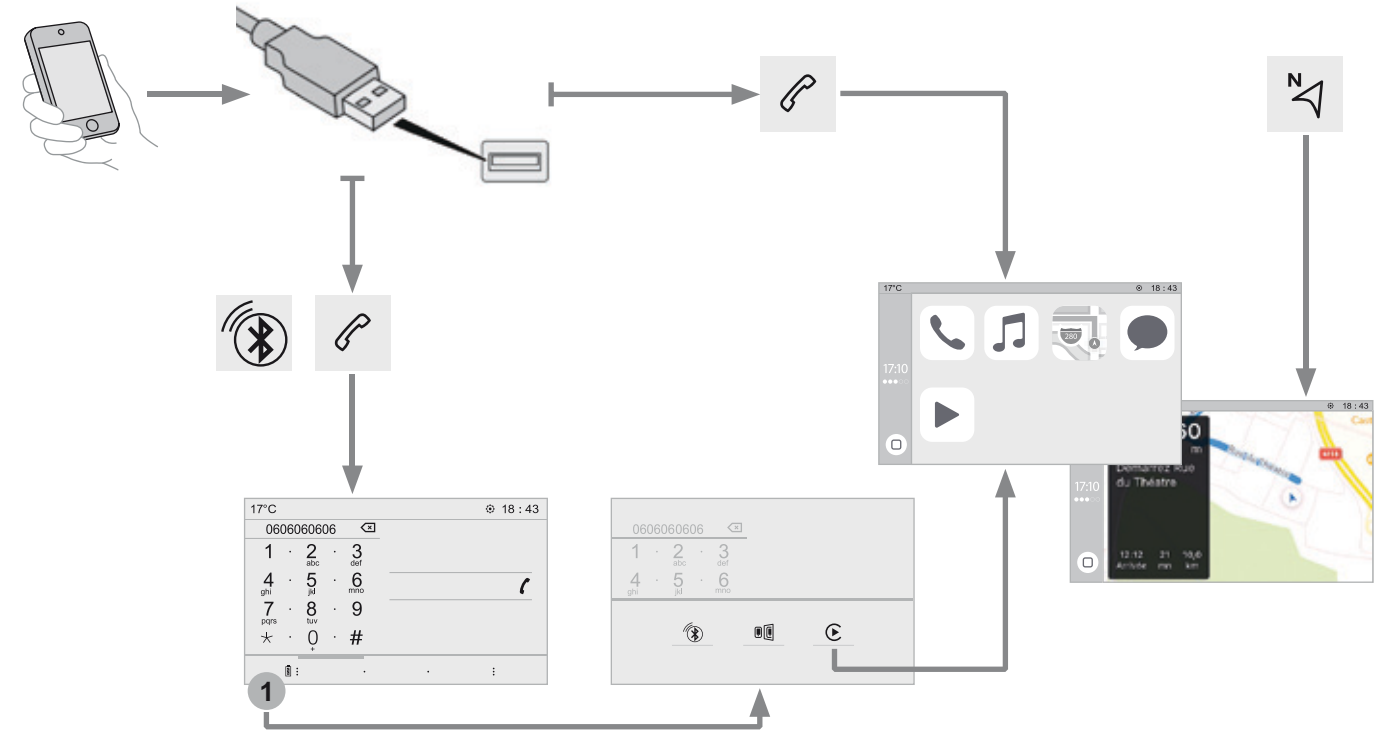
Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
17°C
18 : 43
16:19
0606060606

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
					Go to or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology.
	**Telephone** ↓ **MirrorLink™**				Go to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": go to or return to the "Car mode" page on your smartphone.
					Go to the primary page of the "Telephone" menu.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
Operation must be with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen, having first activated the CarPlay® function in the smartphone.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the Carplay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect with just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in your telephone's manual and with your service provider for the services available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.



Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.



Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

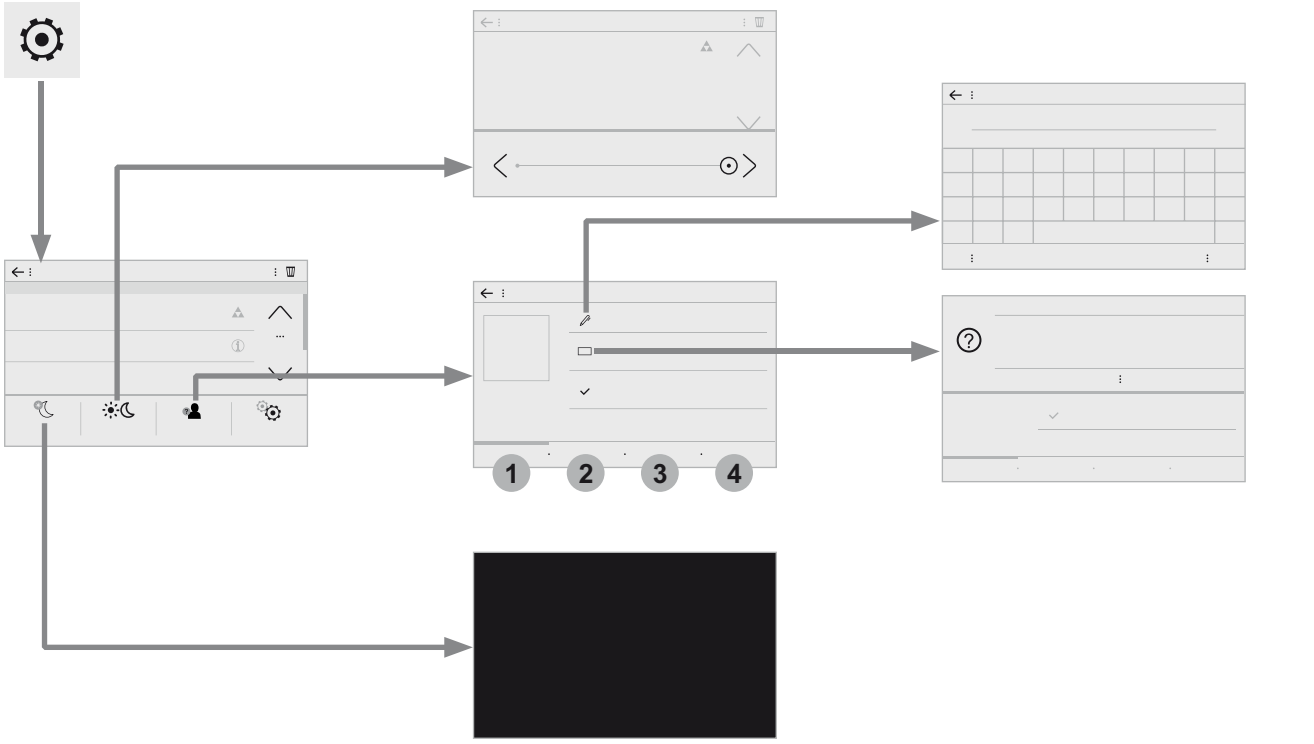


Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Settings

According to version / according to equipment

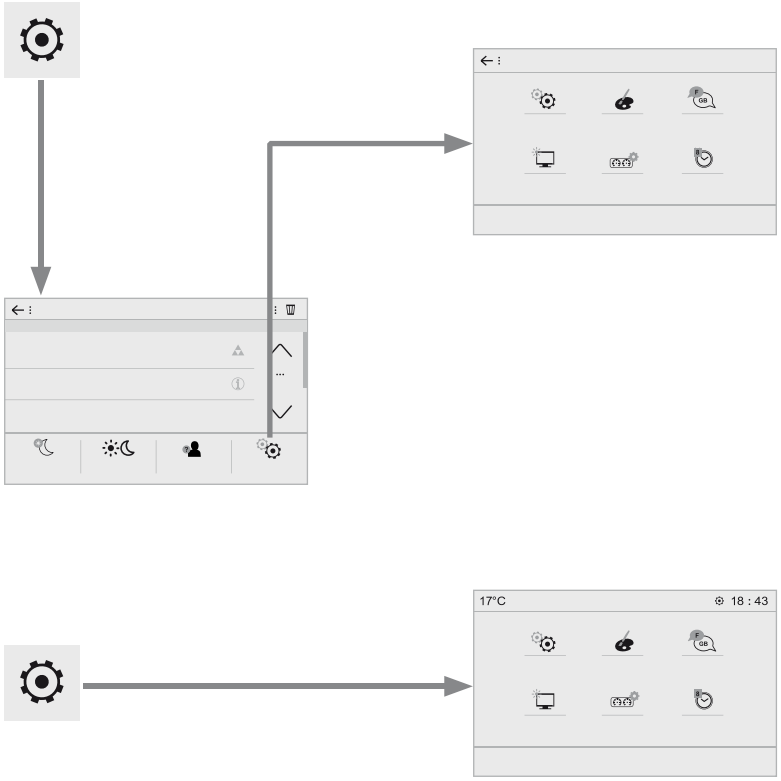
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings ↓ **Brightness**		**Ambience**			Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.
	Settings ↓ **Profiles**	1	**Profile 1**			Select a profile.
		2	**Profile 2**			
		3	**Profile 3**			
		4	**Common profile**			
			Name:		**Profile name modification**	Configure the profiles.
		00.0	**Reset the profile**	?	**Yes / No**	
		✔	**Profile activated**			Activate/deactivate the profile selected.
		←				Save the settings.
	Settings ↓ **Dark**	■				Function which switches off the lit display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.

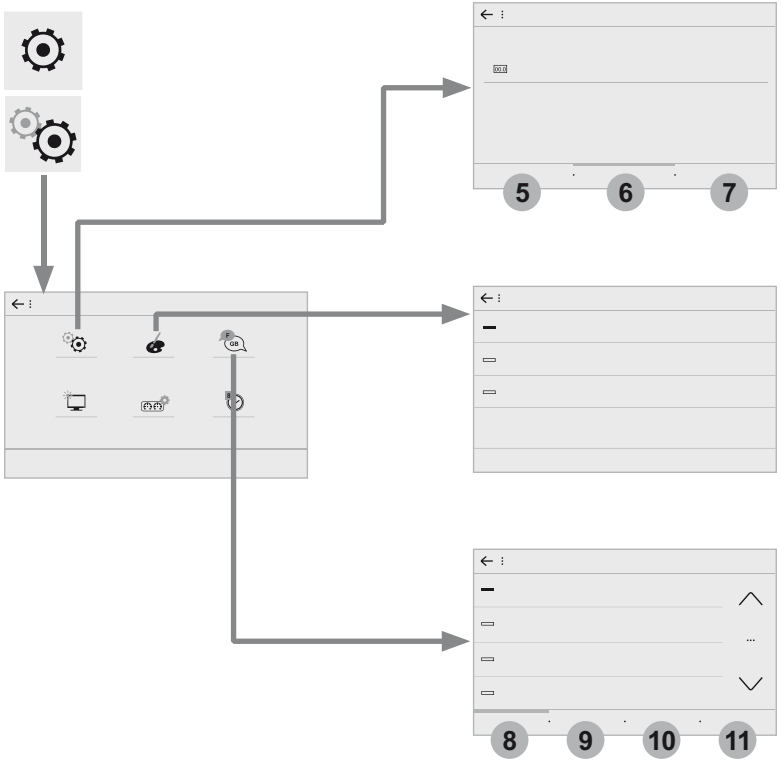
According to equipment

Level 1	Level 2

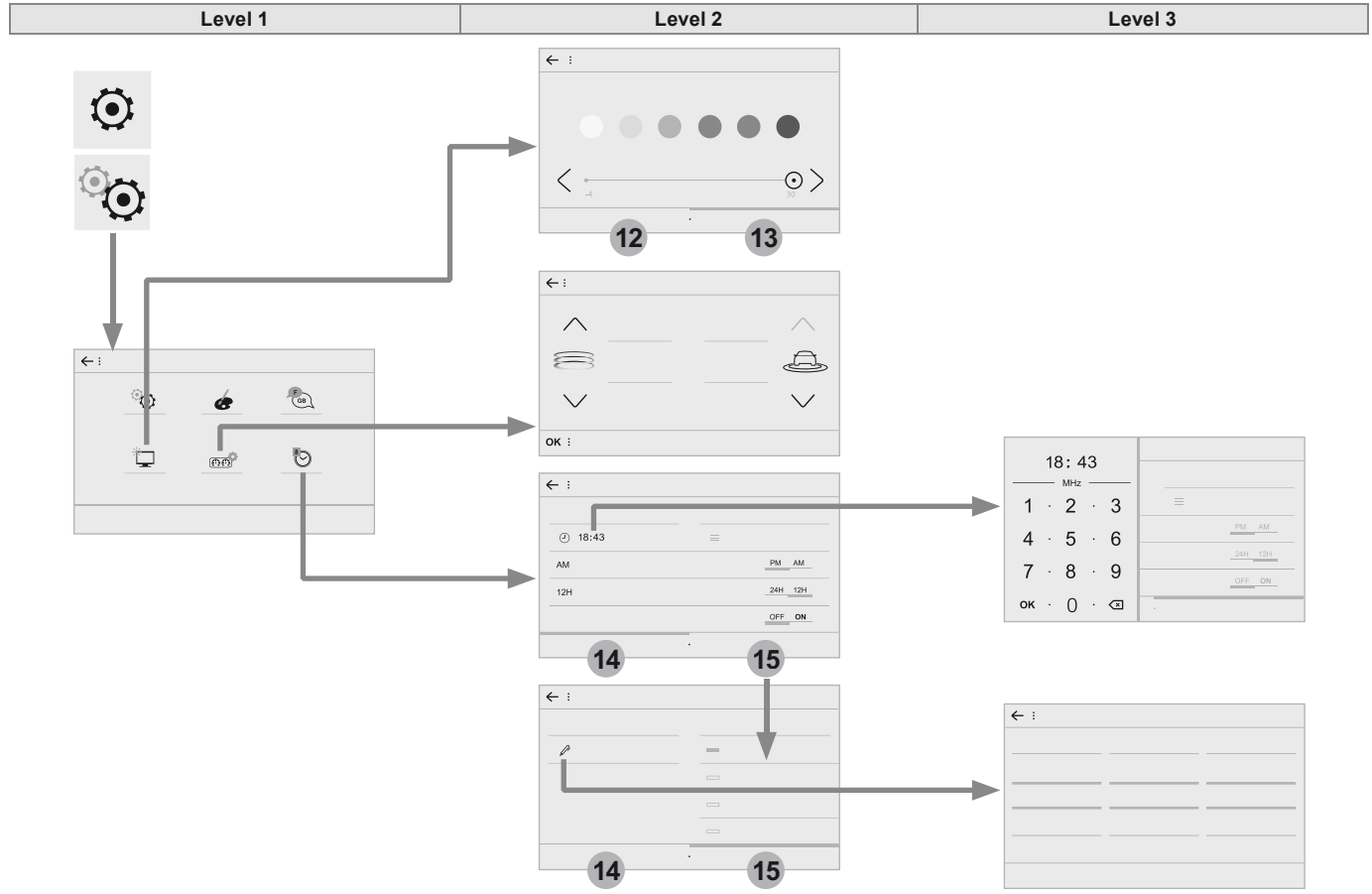


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings ↓ **Configuration**		**System configuration**	Configure certain system parameters.
			Ambience	Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.
			Language	Select the display language for the the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			Screen configuration	Set the configuration of the screen and/or the instrument panel.
			Customization	Configure the instrument panel for a personalised display.
			Date and time	Set the date and time and select the display format.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings → Configuration → System configuration	5	Units		Distance and fuel consumption	Configure the display units for the distance, consumption and temperature.
					Temperatures	
		6	Factory settings	00,0	Reset	Restore the original settings.
		7	System info		View	Consult the version of the different modules installed in the system.
		←				Save the parameters.
	Settings → Configuration → Ambience					Select an ambience for the screen integrated in the system.
		←				Confirm the selection and start the change of ambience.
	Settings → Configuration → Language	8	All			Select the display language for the screen and/or the instrument panel.
		9	Europe			
		10	Asia			
		11	America			
		←				Save the parameter.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
12
13
OK
18:43
AM
12H
PM AM
24H 12H
OFF ON
14
15
18: 43
MHz
1 · 2 · 3
4 · 5 · 6
7 · 8 · 9
OK · 0 ·
14
15

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Settings → Configuration → Screen configuration	12	Brightness			Select the display brightness level.
		13	Animation	☑	Automatic scrolling	Activate or deactivate the parameters.
				☑	Animated transitions	
		←				Save the parameters.
	Settings → Configuration → Temperature conditioning		Customization			Choose and select the display information required.
		OK	Confirm			Confirm the selections.
	Settings → Configuration → Date and time	14	Time		Time	Set the time.
					Time Zone	Set the time zone.
				—	AM	Select the display format.
				—	12h	
				—	GPS Synchronisation	Activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the satellites.
				←		Save the settings.
		15	Date		Date	Set the date and select the display format.
					Setting the date	
				←		Save the settings.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".



Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad



Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjust the brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

5 Press "**Units**" to change the units for distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

6 Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (according to version).

7 Press "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

12 Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to set the brightness of the screen and/or instrument panel (according to version).

13 Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".



Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with satellites (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".



Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.

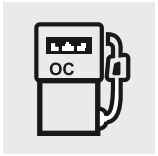
Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing a distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

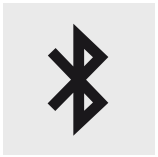
Bluetooth® audio system

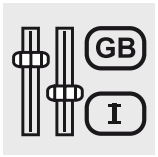












Contents

First steps	148
Steering mounted controls - Type 1	149
Steering mounted controls - Type 2	150
Menus	151
Radio	152
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	154
Media	156
Telephone	161
Frequently asked questions	166

The different functions and adjustments described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps



Press: On / Off
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC

Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activation / Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK

Confirm or display contextual menu.

1

Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a station.



Radio:
Automatic step by step search up / down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.



Radio:
Manual step by step search up / down for radio stations.
Select previous / next MP3 track.
Media:
Select previous / next folder / genre / artist / playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU

Access to main menu.

TA

Activate / Deactivate TA (traffic announcements)
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND

Select waveband: FM / DAB / AM.

 Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select of the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.

SRC /

Other than telephone calls:
Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

MENU

Access to the main menu.

Increase volume.

Mute / Restore sound.

Decrease volume.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: change audio source (Radio; USB; AUX (if a device is connected); CD; Streaming), confirm if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

Start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.



"**Multimedia**": Media settings, Radio settings.



"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, End call.



"**Trip computer**".



"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, ...



"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.



"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle settings, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.



Press the "**MENU**" button.



Move from one menu to another.



Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).

Press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search for radio stations.

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.
To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears barred in the screen.

RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

Select "**RDS**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed in the screen.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message.
When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA — Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA traffic announcements. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.

TA — Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ — Select or deselect categories.

OK — Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display RADIO TEXT

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

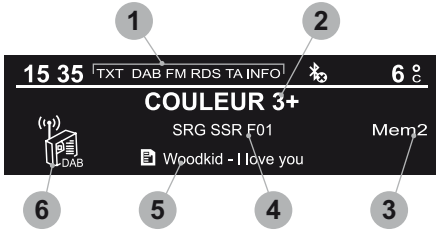
OK — With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼ — Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

According to version

i If the current "DAB" radio station is not available on "FM", "DAB FM", is struck out.



1 Display options:
if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

2 Display the name of the current radio station.

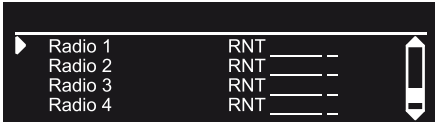
3 Preset radio station, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

4 Display the name of the multiplex service being used.

5 Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.

6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

i When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



LIST Display the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

i Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB,...)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex service".

TA Long press: select the desired categories of announcements from Transport, News, Entertainment and Flash special (availability according to the station).

DAB / FM tracking

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press on "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, ...)

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if there is one).
When "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is activated, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio, with sometimes a variation in volume.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.



Press the "**MENU**" button.



Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.



Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm

Media

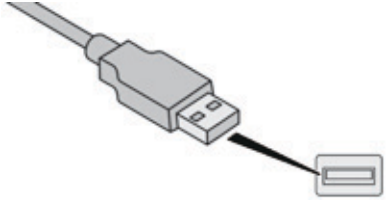
USB port

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket, depending on version.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system creates playlists (temporary memory), which can take from a few seconds to several minutes on the first connection. Reducing the number of non-music files and the number of folders reduces this waiting time. Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.



Insert a USB memory stick into the USB port or connect a USB peripheral device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

i While connected by USB, the portable device may be charged automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:
- **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ ▼ Press this button to select the play mode.

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST

Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Choose by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"*.

OK

Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST

Make a long press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK

Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.



Press one of these buttons to go to the next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"* in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Jack auxiliary (AUX) socket



Connect the portable device (MP3 player, …) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Operation of controls is via the portable device.

Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or fast back.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 CD compilation in the player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels.
However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC /

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **CD**.



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST

Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the audio system.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a telephone**" section).

SRC /

Activate the streaming source by pressing the **SOURCE*** button.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls**. Contextual information may be displayed in the screen.

* In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
** If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with .mp3, .wma, .wav and .aac file extensions, with a bit rate of of 32 to 320 Kbps.
It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).
Other file types (mp4, ...) may be played.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, the ISO 9660 level 1. 2 or Joliet file format is recommended when recording.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3, .wma, .wav, .cbr, .vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
No other file types (.mp4, ...) can be played.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

File names should have less than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g.: " ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the pairing of your a Bluetooth telephone to the Bluetooth hands-free audio system must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Refer to the instructions for your telephone and to your service provider for the services available to you.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

Press the **MENU** button.

Select the "**Connections**" menu.

Confirm with **OK**.

Select "**Search for a Bluetooth device**".

Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), check that the code displayed in the system and the telephone is the same and confirm.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**"*, "**Calls list**", "**View paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

Managing connections

The telephone connection automatically includes hands-free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU

Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Indicates that a device is connected.

A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.

Indicates the audio streaming profile.

Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.

Select a telephone.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Then select and confirm:
- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.



Confirm with **OK**.



Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Dial**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".



Confirm with **OK**.



Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**End call**".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.



During a call, press one of the buttons for more than 2 seconds.

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth, you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK

During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

Hang up



In the contextual menu, select "**End call**" to end the call.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)



In the contextual menu:
- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Telephone mode



In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Dual call



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and confirm to return to a call left on hold.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Directory

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.

Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

MENU

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.
Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.
You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR

Press this button.

Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The table below gives answers to the most frequently asked questions on your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, underground car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault in the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is broken.	The state of charge of the device may be too low.	Charge the battery of the portable device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The sound from the CD is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert a good quality CD and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (base, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manual activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call your voicemail box, via the telephone menu, using the number supplied by your service provider.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system AND of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

Optional Digital tuner (DAB) (RU-9472 variant has DAB / RU9475 does not have DAB)



4Dconcept
Diadeis
Interak

05-16
I 06-16





Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z

CITROËN



16SYSCC040
Anglais

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Compatibility of fuels



Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

E5 / E10 — Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

> The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

B7 — Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B10 — Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL — Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20 / B30 — The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a dealer of the brand or a qualified workshop.

> ! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

> The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel fuel at low temperature

In temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in the summer diesel fuels may result in abnormal operation of the fuel supply system. To avoid this, the use of winter diesel fuels is recommended, keeping the tank topped up to more than 50% of its capacity.
If in spite of this you experience difficulties starting the engine in temperatures below -15°C (+5°F), simply leave the vehicle in a garage or a heated workshop for a while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.